UNDERSTANDING
AND USING

ENGLISH

GRAMMAR
In memoriam

To my wonderful parents,
Frances Nies Schrampfer
and
William H. Schrampfer,
who set me on my path.
CONTENTS

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION ................................................................. xiii
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS .................................................................................... xv

Chapter 1 OVERVIEW OF VERB TENSES

1-1 THE SIMPLE TENSES .............................................................................. 2
1-2 THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES ................................................................. 3
1-3 THE PERFECT TENSES ........................................................................... 4
1-4 THE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES ................................................. 5
1-5 SUMMARY CHART OF VERB TENSES .................................................. 6
1-6 SPELLING OF -ING AND -ED FORMS .................................................. 10

Chapter 2 PRESENT AND PAST, SIMPLE AND PROGRESSIVE

2-1 SIMPLE PRESENT .................................................................................. 13
2-2 PRESENT PROGRESSIVE ....................................................................... 13
2-3 STATIVE VERBS .................................................................................... 15
2-4 AM/IS/ARE BEING + ADJECTIVE .......................................................... 17
2-5 REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS ..................................................... 19
2-6 REGULAR VERBS: PRONUNCIATION OF -ED ENDINGS ....................... 20
2-7 IRREGULAR VERBS: AN ALPHABETICAL LIST ..................................... 22
2-8 TROUBLESOME VERBS: RAISE/RISE, SET/SIT, LAY/LIE .................... 26
2-9 SIMPLE PAST .......................................................................................... 27
2-10 PAST PROGRESSIVE ............................................................................ 28
2-11 USING PROGRESSIVE VERBS WITH ALWAYS TO COMPLAIN ............. 30
2-12 USING EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE WITH PROGRESSIVE VERBS .......... 31

Chapter 3 PERFECT AND PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES

3-1 PRESENT PERFECT ................................................................................ 36
3-2 PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE ...................................................... 42
3-3 PAST PERFECT ...................................................................................... 45
3-4 PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE ............................................................ 47

Chapter 4 FUTURE TIME

4-1 SIMPLE FUTURE: WILL AND BE GOING TO ........................................ 51
4-2 WILL vs. BE GOING TO ......................................................................... 52
4-3 EXPRESSING THE FUTURE IN TIME CLAUSES ................................... 55
4-4 USING THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE AND THE SIMPLE PRESENT ......... 55
TO EXPRESS FUTURE TIME ...................................................................... 55
4-5 FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ....................................................................... 60
4-6 FUTURE PERFECT ................................................................................ 62
4-7 FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE ....................................................... 62
-1. =53 CLAUSES OF TIME AND REVIEW OF VERB TENSES

5-1 ADVERB CLAUSES OF TIME: FORM

5-2 USING ADVERB CLAUSES TO SHOW TIME RELATIONSHIPS

Chapter 6 SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

6-1 FINAL -S/-ES: USE, PRONUNCIATION, AND SPELLING

6-2 BASIC SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

6-3 SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT: USING EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY

6-4 SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT: USING THERE + BE

6-5 SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT: SOME IRREGULARITIES

Chapter 7 NOUNS

7-1 REGULAR AND IRREGULAR PLURAL NOUNS

7-2 POSSESSIVE NOUNS

7-3 USING NOUNS AS MODIFIERS

7-4 COUNT AND NONCOUNT NOUNS

7-5 NONCOUNT NOUNS

7-6 SOME COMMON NONCOUNT NOUNS

7-7 BASIC ARTICLE USAGE...

7-8 GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR ARTICLE USAGE

7-9 EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY

7-10 USING A FEW AND FEW; A LITTLE AND LITTLE

7-11 USING OF IN EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY

7-12 ALL (OF) AND BOTH (OF)

7-13 SINGULAR EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY: ONE, EACH, EVERY

Chapter 8 PRONOUNS

8-1 PERSONAL PRONOUNS

8-2 PERSONAL PRONOUNS: AGREEMENT WITH GENERIC NOUNS AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

8-3 PERSONAL PRONOUNS: AGREEMENT WITH COLLECTIVE NOUNS

8-4 REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

8-5 USING YOU, ONE, AND THEY AS IMPERSONAL PRONOUNS

8-6 FORMS OF OTHER

8-7 COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH OTHER

Chapter 9 MODALS, PART 1

9-1 INTRODUCTION

9-2 POLITE QUESTIONS WITH I AS THE SUBJECT

9-3 POLITE QUESTIONS WITH YOU AS THE SUBJECT

9-4 POLITE REQUESTS WITH WOULD YOU MIND

9-5 EXPRESSING NECESSITY: MUST, HAVETO, HAVE GOTTO

9-6 LACK OF NECESSITY AND PROHIBITION: HAVE TO AND MUST IN THE NEGATIVE

9-7 ADVISABILITY: SHOULD, OUGHTTO, HAD BETTER

9-8 THE PAST FORM OF SHOULD

9-9 EXPECTATIONS: BE SUPPOSED TO

9-10 MAKING SUGGESTIONS: LET'S, WHY DON'T, SHALL I WE

9-11 MAKING SUGGESTIONS: COULD VS. SHOULD
Chapter 10 MODALS, PART 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10-1</td>
<td>DEGREES OF CERTAINTY: PRESENT TIME</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-2</td>
<td>DEGREES OF CERTAINTY: PRESENT TIME NEGATIVE</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-3</td>
<td>DEGREES OF CERTAINTY: PAST TIME</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-4</td>
<td>DEGREES OF CERTAINTY: FUTURE TIME</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-5</td>
<td>PROGRESSIVE FORMS OF MODALS</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-6</td>
<td>ABILITY: CAN AND COULD</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>USING WOULD TO EXPRESS A REPEATED ACTION IN THE PAST</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-8</td>
<td>EXPRESSING PREFERENCE: WOULD RATHER</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-9</td>
<td>COMBINING MODALS WITH PHRASAL MODALS</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-10</td>
<td>SUMMARY CHART OF MODALS AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 11 THE PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11-1</td>
<td>FORMING THE PASSIVE</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-2</td>
<td>USING THE PASSIVE</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-3</td>
<td>INDIRECT OBJECTS USED AS PASSIVE SUBJECTS</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-4</td>
<td>THE PASSIVE FORM OF MODALS AND PHRASAL MODALS</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-5</td>
<td>STATIVE PASSIVE</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-6</td>
<td>COMMON STATIVE PASSIVE VERBS + PREPOSITIONS</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-7</td>
<td>THE PASSIVE WITH GET</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-8</td>
<td>PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVES</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 12 NOUN CLAUSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12-1</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-2</td>
<td>NOUN CLAUSES BEGINNING WITH A QUESTION WORD</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-3</td>
<td>NOUN CLAUSES BEGINNING WITH WHETHER OR IF</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-4</td>
<td>QUESTION WORDS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-5</td>
<td>NOUN CLAUSES BEGINNING WITH THAT</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-6</td>
<td>QUOTED SPEECH</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-7</td>
<td>REPORTED SPEECH: VERB FORMS IN NOUN CLAUSES</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-8</td>
<td>USING THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN NOUN CLAUSES</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-9</td>
<td>USING -EVER WORDS</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 13 ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13-1</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-2</td>
<td>ADJECTIVE CLAUSE PRONOUNS USED AS THE SUBJECT</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-3</td>
<td>ADJECTIVE CLAUSE PRONOUNS USED AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-4</td>
<td>ADJECTIVE CLAUSE PRONOUNS USED AS THE OBJECT OF A PREPOSITION</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-5</td>
<td>USUAL PATTERNS OF ADJECTIVE CLAUSES</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-6</td>
<td>USING WHOSE</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-7</td>
<td>USING WHERE IN ADJECTIVE CLAUSES</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-8</td>
<td>USING WHEN IN ADJECTIVE CLAUSES</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-9</td>
<td>USING ADJECTIVE CLAUSES TO MODIFY PRONOUNS</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-10</td>
<td>PUNCTUATING ADJECTIVE CLAUSES</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-11</td>
<td>USING EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY IN ADJECTIVE CLAUSES</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-12</td>
<td>USING NOUN + OF WHICH</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-13</td>
<td>USING WHICH TO MODIFY A WHOLE SENTENCE</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-14</td>
<td>REDUCING ADJECTIVE CLAUSES TO ADJECTIVE PHRASES: INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-15</td>
<td>CHANGING AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE TO AN ADJECTIVE PHRASE</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 14 GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 1

14-1 GERUNDS: INTRODUCTION .......................................................... 297
14-2 USING GERUNDS AS THE OBJECTS OF PREPOSITIONS .............. 298
14-3 COMMON PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS, 299
14-4 COMMON VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS .................................. 302
14-5 GO + GERUND. ............................................................................ 303
14-6 SPECIAL EXPRESSIONS FOLLOWED BY -ING ............................. 304
14-7 COMMON VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES ......................... 307
14-8 COMMON VERBS FOLLOWED BY EITHER INFINITIVES OR GERUNDS, 311
14-9 REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS ............. 318
14-10 REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES ........ 319
14-11 IT + INFINITIVE; GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES AS SUBJECTS .... 323

Chapter 15 GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 2

15-1 INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE: IN ORDER TO ................................. 326
15-2 ADJECTIVES FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES ............................. 328
15-3 USING INFINITIVES WITH TOO AND ENOUGH ....................... 330
15-4 PASSIVE AND PAST FORMS OF INFINITIVES AND GERUNDS .... 331
15-5 USING GERUNDS OR PASSIVE INFINITIVES FOLLOWING NEED .. 333
15-6 USING A POSSESSIVE TO MODIFY A GERUND .......................... 334
15-7 USING VERBS OF PERCEPTION ................................................ 336
15-8 USING THE SIMPLE FORM AFTER LET AND HELP .................. 338
15-9 USING CAUSATIVE VERBS: MAKE, HAVE, GET ....................... 339

Chapter 16 COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

16-1 PARALLEL STRUCTURE ............................................................. 348
16-2 USING PAIRED CONJUNCTIONS: BOTH ... AND; NOT ONLY ... 353
16-3 COMBINING INDEPENDENT CLAUSES WITH COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS .......................................................... 355

Chapter 17 ADVERB CLAUSES

17-1 INTRODUCTION ........................................................................... 359
17-2 USING ADVERB CLAUSES TO SHOW CAUSE AND EFFECT ......... 362
17-3 EXPRESSING CONTRAST (UNEXPECTED RESULT):
   USING EVENTHOUGH ................................................................. 363
17-4 SHOWING DIRECT CONTRAST: WHILE AND WHEREAS .......... 366
17-5 EXPRESSING CONDITIONS IN ADVERB CLAUSES: IF-CLAUSES .... 367
17-6 ADVERB CLAUSES OF CONDITION: USING WHETHER OR NOT
   AND EVEN IF .............................................................................. 368
17-7 ADVERB CLAUSES OF CONDITION: USING IN CASE AND
   IN THE EVENT THAT .................................................................. 369
17-8 ADVERB CLAUSES OF CONDITION: USING UNLESS ............... 370
17-9 ADVERB CLAUSES OF CONDITION: USING ONLY IF ............... 371

Chapter 18 REDUCTION OF ADVERB CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

18-1 INTRODUCTION ........................................................................... 374
18-2 CHANGING TIME CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES 375
18-3 EXPRESSING THE IDEA OF "DURING THE SAME TIME"
   IN MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES ....................................... 376
18-4 EXPRESSING CAUSE AND EFFECT IN MODIFYING
   ADVERBIAL PHRASES ............................................................. 376
18-5 USING UPON + -ING IN MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES ........ 380
Chapter 19

CONNECTIVES THAT EXPRESS CAUSE AND EFFECT, CONTRAST, AND CONDITION

19-1 USING *BECAUSE OF* AND *DUE TO* .................................................... 385
19-2 USING TRANSITIONS TO SHOW CAUSE AND EFFECT:
   *THEREFORE* AND *CONSEQUENTLY* ................................................. 387
19-3 SUMMARY OF PATTERNS AND PUNCTUATION .................................... 389
19-4 OTHER WAYS OF EXPRESSING CAUSE AND EFFECT:
   *SUCH... THAT* AND *SO... THAT* ..................................................... 391
19-5 EXPRESSING PURPOSE: USING *SO THAT* .......................................... 393
19-6 SHOWING CONTRAST (UNEXPECTED RESULT) ...................................... 395
19-7 SHOWING DIRECT CONTRAST ............................................................. 398
19-8 EXPRESSING CONDITIONS: USING *OTHERWISE* AND *OR (ELSE)* .......... 401
19-9 SUMMARY OF CONNECTIVES: CAUSE AND EFFECT, CONTRAST,
   CONDITION ......................................................................................... 402

Chapter 20

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES

20-1 OVERVIEW OF BASIC VERB FORMS USED IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES ..... 413
20-2 TRUE IN THE PRESENT OR FUTURE ...................................................... 414
20-3 UNTRUE (CONTRARY TO FACT) IN THE PRESENT OR FUTURE .............. 415
20-4 UNTRUE (CONTRARY TO FACT) IN THE PAST ....................................... 418
20-5 USING PROGRESSIVE VERB FORMS IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES ......... 423
20-6 USING "MIXED TIME" IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES ............................. 424
20-7 OMITTING IF ......................................................................................... 424
20-8 IMPLIED CONDITIONS ......................................................................... 425
20-9 USING AS IF/AS THOUGH .................................................................... 430
20-10 VERB FORMS FOLLOWING WISH ....................................................... 432
20-11 USING WOULD TO MAKE WISHES ABOUT THE FUTURE .................... 434

Appendix

SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR UNITS

Unit A: BASIC GRAMMAR TERMINOLOGY
   A-1 SUBJECTS, VERBS, AND OBJECTS .................................................... A1
   A-2 PREPOSITIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES ................................. A3
   A-3 ADJECTIVES ................................................................................. A4
   A-4 ADVERBS .................................................................................... A4
   A-5 THE VERB BE ............................................................................... A6
   A-6 LINKING VERBS ............................................................................ A6

Unit B: QUESTIONS
   B-1 FORMS OF YES/NO AND INFORMATION QUESTIONS ...................... A8
   B-2 QUESTION WORDS ........................................................................ A9
   B-3 SHORTENED YES/NO QUESTIONS ................................................ A12
   B-4 NEGATIVE QUESTIONS ................................................................ A13
   B-5 TAG QUESTIONS ........................................................................... A15

Unit C: CONTRACTIONS ........................................................................... A17

Unit D: NEGATIVES
   D-1 USING NOT AND OTHER NEGATIVE WORDS .................................. A18
   D-2 AVOIDING DOUBLE NEGATIVES .................................................... A20
   D-3 BEGINNING A SENTENCE WITH A NEGATIVE WORD ..................... A20

Unit E: PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS
   E PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS WITH ADJECTIVES AND VERBS .......... A21

Unit F: CONNECTIVES TO GIVE EXAMPLES AND TO CONTINUE AN IDEA
   F-1 CONNECTIVES TO GIVE EXAMPLES .............................................. A24
   F-2 CONNECTIVES TO CONTINUE THE SAME IDEA ............................ A26

Unit G: VERB FORM REVIEW EXERCISES.................................................. A26

INDEX ........................................................................................................ INDEX 1
Understanding and Using English Grammar is a developmental skills text for intermediate to advanced students of English as a second or foreign language. While focusing on grammar, it promotes the development of all language skills in a variety of ways. It functions principally as a classroom teaching text but also serves as a comprehensive reference text for students.

The eclectic approach and abundant variety of exercise material remain the same as in the earlier editions, but each new edition incorporates new ways and means. In particular:

- The communicative aspects of Understanding and Using English Grammar are more fully developed and explicit in the third edition. There are numerous "real communication" opportunities for the teacher to exploit. The text often uses the students' own life experiences as context and regularly introduces topics of interest to stimulate the free expression of ideas in structured as well as open discussions. The text supports the view of many experienced teachers that grammar-based and communicative approaches are not mutually exclusive, but rather mutually supportive, and can advantageously co-exist in the same language program, even in the same class, even in the same lesson.

- Similarly, the interactive aspects of the text receive greater emphasis in the third edition. Many of the exercises formerly designated ORAL or ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED) are now reformatted to be more clearly available for pair work or group work, in addition to still being viable as class work led by a teacher. This edition encourages interactivity but leaves it open for the users to decide what degree of interactivity best suits their needs.

- There is now an even wider variety of exercise types. This edition has a larger number of free-response exercises and open-ended communicative tasks, while still providing ample controlled-response exercises to aid initial understanding of the form, meaning, and usage of the target structures. It also includes more writing topics, more speaking activities, expanded error analysis exercises, and additional extended-context exercises.

- Long chapters have been broken into shorter units, and certain grammar units have been reorganized.

The bird soaring upward and forward on the cover of this new edition is a swallow. Found throughout the world, swallows are joyful, playful, energetic birds whose comings and goings announce changes in the seasons. Like the butterfly on the second edition, the swallow on this edition signals new beginnings—as student, teacher, and text writer come together in our shared journey toward the learning of a new language.
Understanding and Using English Grammar is accompanied by

- a Workbook, consisting principally of self-study exercises for independent work.
- a Chartbook, a reference book consisting of only the grammar charts.
- an Answer Key, with the answers to the exercises.
- a Teacher's Guide, with teaching suggestions and additional notes on grammar, as well as the answers to the exercises.

The Azar Grammar Series consists of

- Understanding and Using English Grammar (blue cover) for upper-level students.
- Fundamentals of English Grammar (black) for mid-level students.
- Basic English Grammar (red) for lower or beginning levels.

Supplementary works by other authors

- Fun with Grammar, a teacher resource text by Suzanne Woodward
- Azar Interactive, a CD-ROM program by Howard Beckerman
The second edition of *UUEG* was thoroughly reviewed by twenty-five ESL/EFL professionals. Their reviews were outstandingly helpful in their insights and suggestions. I studied the reviews with great care, and they greatly influenced the revision in matters large and small. I could not, unfortunately, make every change and addition that every reviewer sought (not without writing a 1000-page book—which my publisher would definitely frown upon!). I wish to express my heartfelt thanks for the care and thought these colleagues put into their reviews. They are Catherine Sajina, Hawaii Pacific University, English Foundations Program; Brian White, Lakeview Learning Center/ALSP; Anne Albarelli-Siegfried, North Harris Community College; Akabi Danielan, Glendale Career College; M. Cristina Parsons, Pueblo High School; Peter Jarvis, Pace University; Cheri Boyer, University of Arizona, CESL; Molly Burns, Wisconsin ESL Language Institute; Molly McGrath, Hunter College, IELI; James Burke, El Paso Community College; Deborah Healey, Oregon State University, ELI; Dan Manolescu, Adelphi University, Berlitz on Campus Language Institute for English; Gerald Lee Boyd, Northern Virginia Community College; Karen Richelli-Kolbert, Manhattanville College, School of Education; Marjorie Friedman, Eckerd College, ELS Language Center; Natalie Gast, Customized Language Skills Training; Anna Krauthammer, Touro College; Russell Hirsch, Touro College; Stacy Hagen, Edmonds Community College, Intensive ESL; Lida Baker, University of California, Los-Angeles; Susan Kash-Brown, Southeast Community College.

I have a topnotch professional support team. They allow me to do what I do with enjoyment and ease. Chief among them are Shelley Hartle, my managing editor, whose wide-ranging skills make her my indispensable right hand in all matters; Janet Johnston, publishing and wordsmithery expert par excellence, who cheerfully holds me to account for every dot and letter; Barbara Matthies, the teacher's guide co-author, who is my most splendid (i.e., toughest) critic; and our publisher, Mary Jane Peluso, who smooths our paths in myriad, much appreciated ways. In addition I wish to thank Robin Baliszewski, who as the new president of Prentice Hall Regents has brought a breath of fresh air and renewed dedication to quality in ESL/EFL publication; Stella Reilly, especially for the superb job she did in collating the reviews; Christine Mann, who transformed our disk into a beautifully and precisely formatted text; her colleague, Rachel Baumann; and also Julie Alexander, Aliza Greenblatt, Dom Mosco, Merle Krumper, and Eric Dawson.

I also once again thank Don Martinetti, the illustrator, whose touches of whimsy are so delightful. My appreciation also goes to graphic designer Christine Shrader, creator of the swallow that heralds this third edition.

I wish to express special acknowledgment of the contributing writers for the *Understanding and Using English Grammar Workbook*, Second Edition: Rachel Spack Koch, Susan Jamieson, Barbara Andrews, and Jeanie Francis. Some of the exercise material
originally created for the workbook has been woven into this third edition of the student book, and I thank them for the ways in which this material has enriched the text.

In addition, my thanks go to Tina Carver, Stacy Hagen, Mary Barratt, Ayse Stromsdorfer, Bonnie Arndt, Chelsea Azar, Rachel Flaherty, Nick Harris, Joy Edwards, Carolyn Cliff, Sue Van Etten, Patti Gulledge-White, R.T. Steltz, Buffy Cribbs, Bruce Morrow, and in loving memory, Holly Turner. And finally, very special thanks to Larry Harris for his support, his strength, his joie de vivre — and for opening doors.
CHAPTER 1
Overview of Verb Tenses

CONTENTS

1-1 The simple tenses 1-4 The perfect progressive tenses
1-2 The progressive tenses 1-5 Summary chart of verb tenses
1-3 The perfect tenses 1-6 Spelling of -ing and -ed forms

Note: Chapter 1 presents an overview of English verb tenses. The tenses will be studied in more detail in Chapters 2, 3, 4, and 5.

EXERCISE 1. Introductions and interviews.

Directions: Do one or more of the following activities.

ACTIVITY A. Interview another student in your class. Take notes during the interview, and then introduce this student to the rest of the class or to a small group of classmates. Possible topics for the interview follow. What questions might you ask to elicit this information?

1. name
2. spelling of name
3. country of origin
4. present residence
5. length of time in (this city or country), both past and future
6. reason for coming here
7. field of study or work
8. activities in free time
9. general well-being and adjustment to living here
10. comments on living here

ACTIVITY B. Write a brief autobiographical paragraph telling who you are, what you have done in the past two years, and what your plans are for the next two years. Then exchange your paper with a classmate. Ask each other questions to clarify your understanding and elicit further information.

Next, join two other students to form a group of four. Tell the others in the group about the classmate whose paragraph you read.

ACTIVITY C. Interview a classmate outside of class and write a biography of his/her life.

ACTIVITY D. Interview a native speaker of English and write a biography of his/her life.

ACTIVITY E. With a classmate, take a trip to a particular place, such as a museum, a theater, or a restaurant. Write a report of your excursion, or give an oral report to your classmates.
Exercise 2. Overview of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 5)

Directions: Pair up with a classmate.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask a classmate a question using what + a form of do (e.g., What are you doing? What did you do? What have you done?). Use the given time expressions.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Answer Speaker A’s questions in complete sentences.

Example: every morning
SPEAKER A (book open): What do you do every morning?
SPEAKER B (book closed): I go to classes / eat breakfast / etc. every morning.

1. every day before you leave home
2. last night
3. at (this exact time) yesterday
4. right now
5. since you got up this morning
6. for the past five minutes
7. tomorrow
8. at (this exact time) tomorrow
9. by the time you got here today
10. by the time you go to bed tonight

The diagram shown below will be used in the tense descriptions:

The diagram shown below will be used in the tense descriptions:

1-1 THE SIMPLE TENSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMPLE PRESENT</td>
<td>(a) It snows in Alaska. (b) Tom watches television every day.</td>
<td>In general, the simple present expresses events or situations that exist always, usually, habitually; they exist now, have existed in the past, and probably will exist in the future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMPLE PAST</td>
<td>(c) It snowed yesterday. (d) Tom watched television last night.</td>
<td>At one particular time in the past, this happened. It began and ended in the past.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMPLE FUTURE</td>
<td>(e) It will snow tomorrow. <strong>It is going to snow</strong> tomorrow.</td>
<td>At one particular time in the future, this will happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(f) Tom will watch television tonight. <strong>Tom is going to watch</strong> television tonight.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 3. The simple tenses. (Chart 1-1)

Directions: Answer the questions.

1. Can you think of a "general truth"? What are some other general truths?
2. What are some of the things you do every day or almost every day? Name three activities.
3. What did you do yesterday? Name three separate activities.
4. What are you going to do tomorrow?

1-2 THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES

Form: be + -ing (present participle)
Meaning: The progressive tenses* give the idea that an action is in progress during a particular time. The tenses say that an action begins before, is in progress during, and continues after another time or action.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

(a) Tom is sleeping right now. It is now 11:00. Tom went to sleep at 10:00 tonight, and he is still asleep. His sleep began in the past, is in progress at the present time, and probably will continue.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

(b) Tom was sleeping when I arrived. Tom went to sleep at 10:00 last night. I arrived at 11:00. He was still asleep. His sleep began before and was in progress at a particular time in the past. It continued after I arrived.

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

(c) Tom will be sleeping when we arrive. Tom will go to sleep at 10:00 tomorrow night. We will arrive at 11:00. The action of sleeping will begin before we arrive, and it will be in progress at a particular time in the future. Probably his sleep will continue.

*The progressive tenses are also called the "continuous" tenses: present continuous, past continuous, and future continuous.

EXERCISE 4. The progressive tenses. (Chart 1-2)

Directions: Answer the questions.

1. What are you doing right now? What are your classmates doing right now? What is happening outside the classroom right now?
2. Where were you at two o'clock this morning? What were you doing?
3. Where will you be at two o'clock tomorrow morning? What will you be doing?
1-3 THE PERFECT TENSES

Form: have + past participle
Meaning: The perfect tenses all give the idea that one thing happens before another time or event.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>(a) Tom <em>has</em> already <em>eaten</em>.</td>
<td>Tom finished eating sometime before now. The exact time is not important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>(b) Tom <em>had</em> already <em>eaten</em> when his friend arrived.</td>
<td>First Tom finished eating. Later his friend arrived. Tom's eating was completely finished before another time in the past.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>(c) Tom <em>will</em> already <em>have eaten</em> when his friend arrives.</td>
<td>First Tom will finish eating. Later his friend will arrive. Tom's eating will be completely finished before another time in the future.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tom has already eaten.

**EXERCISE 5. The perfect tenses.** (Chart 1-3)

Directions: Answer the questions.

1. Have you eaten today? When did you eat?
2. Had you eaten before you went to bed last night?
3. Will you have eaten by the time you go to bed tonight?
1-4 THE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES

Form:  
**have** + **been** + **-ing** (*present participle*)

Meaning: The perfect progressive tenses give the idea that one event is *in progress immediately before, up to, until another time or event.* The tenses are used to express the *duration* of the first event.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Event in progress</th>
<th>When?</th>
<th>How long?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>(a) Tom <em>has been studying</em> for two hours.</td>
<td>2 hrs.</td>
<td>studying</td>
<td>Before now, up to now,</td>
<td>For two hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>(b) Tom <em>had been studying</em> for two hours before his friend came.</td>
<td>2 hrs.</td>
<td>studying</td>
<td>Before another event in the past.</td>
<td>For two hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>(c) Tom <em>will have been studying</em> for two hours by the time his friend arrives.</td>
<td>2 hrs.</td>
<td>studying</td>
<td>Before another event in the future.</td>
<td>For two hours.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 6. The perfect progressive tenses. (Chart 1-4)**

*Directions:* Answer the questions.

1. What are you doing right now? How long have you been *(doing that)*?
2. What were you doing last night at nine o’clock? What time did you stop *(doing that)*? Why did you stop *(doing that)*? How long had you been *(doing that)* before you stopped?
3. What are you going to be doing at nine o’clock tomorrow night? What time are you going to stop *(doing that)*? Why? How long will you have been *(doing that)* before you stop?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tom studies</strong> every day.</td>
<td><strong>Tom is studying</strong> right now.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tom studied</strong> last night.</td>
<td><strong>Tom was studying</strong> when they came.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Future</th>
<th>Future Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tom will study</strong> tomorrow.</td>
<td><strong>Tom will be studying</strong> when you come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>Present Perfect Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom <em>has</em> already <em>studied</em> Chapter One.</td>
<td>Tom <em>has been studying</em> for two hours.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom <em>had</em> already <em>studied</em> Chapter One before he began studying Chapter Two.</td>
<td>Tom <em>had been studying</em> for two hours before his friends came.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom <em>will</em> already <em>have studied</em> Chapter Four before he studies Chapter Five.</td>
<td>Tom <em>will have been studying</em> for two hours by the time his roommate gets home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 7. Overview of verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)

Directions: In the following dialogues, many of the verbs are in *italics.* In pairs, in small groups, or as a class, discuss the meanings of the *italicized* verbs. Name the tenses of these verbs. If you wish, draw diagrams like the ones in Chart 1-5.

1. A: What *do* you *do* every morning?
   B: I *take* a bus to school.
   → The speakers are talking about habitual activities. The name of the tense is the simple present.

2. A: What *did* you *do* last night?
   B: I *watched* a movie on television.

3. A: What *are* you *doing* right now?
   B: I *am working* on English grammar.

4. A: What *were* you *doing* at this time yesterday?
   B: At this exact time yesterday, I *was walking* from the bookstore to the classroom building.

5. A: *Have* you ever *seen* a comet?
   B: I've *seen* shooting stars, but I've *never seen* a comet.

6. A: What *will* you *do* if you miss the bus tomorrow morning?
   B: I *will walk* to school.

7. A: What *will you be doing* at this exact moment tomorrow?
   B: At this exact time tomorrow, I *will be attending* my English class.

8. A: How long *have you been working* on this grammar exercise?
   B: I *have been working* on this grammar exercise for ten minutes.

9. A: How long *will you have been working* on this exercise by the time you finish it?
   B: By the time I finish this exercise, I *will have been working* on it for fifteen minutes.

10. A: What *had* you *done* by the time you got to class today?
    B: I *had eaten* lunch.

11. A: What *will you have done* by the time you go to bed tonight?
    B: I *will have finished* my homework.

12. A: *Were you asleep* when your friend called last night?
    B: Yes. I was sleeping when he called. I *had been sleeping* for almost an hour when the phone rang.

*Words that are "italicized" or "in italics" have a slanted print. Regular print looks like this. *Italic print looks like this.*
EXERCISE 8. Overview of verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)

Directions: Practice using tenses by answering the questions in complete sentences, either orally (in pairs, in groups, or as a class) or in writing.

1. What do you do every day?
2. What did you do yesterday?
3. What will you do tomorrow?
4. What are you doing right now?
5. What were you doing at this time yesterday?
6. What will you be doing at this time tomorrow?
7. What have you done since you got up this morning?
8. What had you done before you went to bed last night?
9. What will you have done by the time you go to bed tonight?
10. What are you doing? How long have you been doing that?
11. What were you doing before (name of the teacher) walked into the classroom today? How long had you been doing that?
12. What will you be doing before (name of the teacher) walks into the classroom tomorrow? How long will you have been doing that?

EXERCISE 9. Error analysis: questions and negative verb forms.
(Appendix Charts B-1, B-2, and D-1)

Directions: This exercise covers question and negative verb forms you will be using in the following chapters. Check your understanding of these forms by finding and correcting the errors in the sentences below.*

1. Does Pedro walks to work every morning?
2. What you are talking about? I'm not understand you.
3. Did you finished your work?
4. My friend doesn't liking her apartment.
5. Do you are working for this company?
6. What time your plane did it arrive?
7. How long have you are living in this city?
8. My brother don't have no job right now.
9. Ali wont to be in class tomorrow.
10. I hadn't never saw snow before I moved to Canada last year.

*For information about forming questions and negatives, see the Appendix, Units B-1 (Forms of Yes/No and Information Questions), B-2 (Question Words), and D-1 (Using Not and Other Negative Words).
EXERCISE 10. Spelling pretest. (Chart 1-6)

Directions: You will be using many verbs in their -ing and -ed forms in the following chapters. Use this pretest to check yourself on spelling rules. Close your book. On another piece of paper, write the words that your teacher says.

Example: (cry + -ed)

TEACHER: Cried. I cried because I was sad. Cried.

WRITTEN RESPONSE: cried

1. (hope + -ed)
2. (dine + -ing)
3. (stop + -ed)
4. (plan + -ing)
5. (rain + -ed)
6. (wait + -ing)
7. (listen + -ing)
8. (happen + -ed)
9. (begin + -ing)
10. (occur + -ed)
11. (start + -ing)
12. (warn + -ed)
13. (enjoy + -ed)
14. (play + -ing)
15. (study + -ing)
16. (worry + -ed)
17. (die + -ed)
18. (lie + -ing)

### 1-6 SPELLING OF -ING AND -ED FORMS

| (1) VERBS THAT END IN A CONSONANT AND -E | (a) hope hoping hoped | -ING FORM: If the word ends in -e, drop the -e and add -ing*
|----------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------
| (b) date dating dated                 | -ED FORM: If the word ends in a consonant and -e, just add -d. |
| inure injuring injured                |                       |
| ONE-SYLLABLE VERBS                     |                       |
| (b) stop stopping stopped             |                       |
| rob robbing robbed                    |                       |
| beg begging begged                    |                       |
| (c) rain raining rained               |                       |
| fool fooling fooled                   |                       |
| dream dreaming dreamed                |                       |
| TWO-SYLLABLE VERBS                     |                       |
| (d) listen listening listened         |                       |
| offer offering offered                |                       |
| open opening opened                   | 1st syllable stressed → 1 consonant |
| (e) begin beginning (began)           |                       |
| prefer preferring preferred           | 2nd syllable stressed → 2 consonants |
| control controlling controlled        |                       |
| (f) start starting started            |                       |
| fold folding folded                   |                       |
| demand demanding demanded             |                       |
| If the word ends in two consonants, just add the ending. |
| (g) enjoy enjoying enjoyed            |                       |
| pray praying prayed                   |                       |
| buy buying (bought)                   |                       |
| (h) study studying studied            |                       |
| try trying tried                      |                       |
| reply replying replied                |                       |
| If -y is preceded by a vowel, keep the -y. |
| If -y is preceded by a consonant:    |                       |
| -ING FORM: keep the -y, add -ing.    |                       |
| -ED FORM: change -y to -i, add -ed.  |                       |
| (i) die dying died                    |                       |
| lie lying lied                         | -ING FORM: Change -ie to -y, add -ing. |
| If -y is preceded by a vowel:        |                       |
| -ED FORM: Add -d.                     |                       |

*Exception: If a verb ends in -ee, the final -e is not dropped: seeing, agreeing, freeing.

**Exception: -w and -x are not doubled: plow → plowed; fix → fixed.
EXERCISE 11. Spelling of -ING and -ED forms. (Chart 1-6)

PART I. Write the correct -ing form for the following.

1. hold → holding
2. hide
3. run
4. ruin
5. come
6. write
7. eat
8. sit
9. act
10. pat
11. open
12. begin
13. earn
14. fry
15. die
16. employ

PART II. Write the correct -ing and -ed forms for the following.

1. boil → boiling, boiled
2. try
3. stay
4. tape
5. tap
6. offer
7. prefer
8. gain
9. plan
10. tie
11. help
12. study
13. admit
14. visit
15. hug
16. rage
EXERCISE 1. Preview: present and past verbs. (Chapter 2; Appendix Charts B-1, B-2, and D-1)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. I am not agree with your opinion.
2. I’m not knowing Sam’s wife.
3. A: What you are talking about?
   B: I talking about the political situation in my country.
4. My roommate usually watch television, listen to music, or going out in the evening.
5. When I turned the ignition key, the car was starting.
6. This class is consisting of students who are wanting to learn English.
7. The children drawed some pictures in school this morning.
8. While Tom’s reading in bed last night, his phone ring. When he was answering it, the caller hanged up.
9. Right now Sally in the kitchen eating breakfast.
10. When the sun raises, it is appearing from below the horizon.
2-1 SIMPLE PRESENT

| (a) Water consists of hydrogen and oxygen. |
| (b) The average person breathes 21,600 times a day. |
| (c) The world is round. |
| (d) I study for two hours every night. |
| (e) I get up at seven every morning. |
| (f) He always eats a sandwich for lunch. |

The simple present says that something was true in the past, is true in the present, and will be true in the future. It expresses general statements of fact and timeless truths.

The simple present is used to express habitual or everyday activities.

2-2 PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

| (g) John is sleeping right now. |
| (h) I need an umbrella because it is raining. |
| (i) The students are sitting at their desks right now. |
| (j) I am taking five courses this semester. |
| (k) John is trying to improve his work habits. |
| (l) Susan is writing another book this year. |

The present progressive expresses an activity that is in progress at the moment of speaking. It is a temporary activity that began in the past, is continuing at present, and will probably end at some point in the future.

Often the activity is of a general nature: something generally in progress this week, this month, this year.

Note (l): The sentence means that writing a book is a general activity Susan is engaged in at present, but it does not mean that at the moment of speaking she is sitting at her desk with pen in hand.

EXERCISE 2. Simple present vs. present progressive. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Directions: Practice using present verbs.

1. Give some examples of your daily habits. Use the simple present.
2. Give some examples of "general statements of fact or timeless truths."
3. Describe activities that are in progress in this classroom right now.
4. Describe activities that are in progress in the world right now.
5. Thumb through this text. Stop when you see an illustration. Are there any activities in progress in the illustration? Describe them.

EXERCISE 3. Activity: using the present progressive. (Chart 2-2)

Directions: On a piece of paper, write an action that a classmate can demonstrate (e.g., stand up, smile, open the door, sneeze, write on the chalkboard). Give your paper to the teacher, who will redistribute the papers at random to the class. Then everyone will take turns performing these actions for the entire class to guess and describe, using the present progressive.
EXERCISE 4. Simple present vs. present progressive. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Directions: Use either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Diane can’t come to the phone because she (wash) is washing her hair.
2. Diane (wash) her hair every other day or so.
3. Kathy (sit, usually) in the front row during class, but today she (sit) in the last row.
4. Please be quiet. I (try) to concentrate.
5. (you, lock, always) the door to your apartment when you leave?
6. I wrote to my friend last week. She hasn’t answered my letter yet. I (wait, still) for a reply.
7. After six days of rain, I’m glad that the sun (shine) again today.
8. Every morning, the sun (shine) (wake) me up.
   B: It's beautiful! This is the first time I've ever seen snow. It (snow, not) in my country.
10. A: Close your eyes. Now listen carefully. What (I, do) ?
   B: You (rub) the top of your desk with your hand.
   A: Close, but not exactly right. Try again.
   B: Aha! You (rub) your hands together.
   A: Right!

EXERCISE 5. Activity: using present verbs. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Directions: Work in pairs. Follow the directions in each item. Switch roles in each item.

1. Speaker A: Close your eyes.
   Speaker B: Make a sound.
   Speaker A: Describe what your partner is doing without opening your eyes. Use the present progressive.
2. Speaker A: Watch Speaker B carefully.
   Speaker B: Make a subtle movement, that is, a very small, slight, barely noticeable movement (e.g., blink faster, move your little finger).
   Speaker A: Describe what your partner is doing. Use the present progressive.
3. Speaker A: Describe a classmate, but do not name him or her.
   Speaker B: Identify who Speaker A is describing.
   Speaker A: Describe several other classmates for Speaker B to identify.
2-3  STATIVE VERBS

(a) Yum! This food *tastes* good.
   I *like* it very much.
(b) INCORRECT: This food *is tasting* good.
   I *am liking* it very much.

- Some English verbs have *stative* meanings. They describe states: conditions or situations that exist. When verbs have stative meanings, they are usually not used in progressive tenses.
- In (a): *tastes* and *like* have stative meanings. Each describes a state that exists.

(c) The chef is in his kitchen.
   He *is tasting* the sauce.
(d) It *tastes* too salty.
(e) He *doesn’t like* it.

- A verb such as *taste* has a *stative* meaning, but also a *progressive* meaning. In (c): *tasting* describes the action of the chef putting something in his mouth and actively testing its flavor (progressive).
- In (d): *tastes* describes the person’s awareness of the quality of the food (stative).
- A verb such as *like* has a stative meaning. It is rarely, if ever, used in progressive tenses.
- In (e): It is incorrect to say *He isn’t liking it*.

The chef is tasting the sauce. It tastes too salty. He doesn’t like it.

### COMMON VERBS THAT HAVE STATIVE MEANINGS

Note: Verbs with an asterisk (*) are like the verb *taste*: they can have both stative and progressive meanings and uses.

| 1 | MENTAL STATE | know | believe | imagine* | want* |
| 2 | EMOTIONAL STATE | love | hate | mind | astonish |
| 3 | POSSESSION | possess | have* | own | belong |
| 4 | SENSE PERCEPTIONS | taste* | hear | see* |
| 5 | OTHER EXISTING STATES | seem | cost* | be* |

- Present and Past, Simple and Progressive

15
EXERCISE 6. Verbs that have both stative and progressive meanings. (Chart 2-3)

Directions: Discuss the differences in meaning of the italicized verbs in each group of sentences.

1. a. These flowers smell good.
   b. Hiroki is smelling the flowers.

2. a. I think Roberto is a kind man.
   b. I am thinking about this grammar.

3. a. I see a butterfly. Do you see it too?
   b. Jane is seeing a doctor about her headaches.
   c. Jack and Ann are seeing each other. They go out together every weekend.

4. a. Kathy looks cold. I'll lend her my coat.
   b. Tina is looking out the window. She sees a butterfly.

5. a. Sam appears to be asleep. Let's not disturb him.
   b. My favorite actor is currently appearing at the Paramount.

6. a. Sue is feeling the cat's fur.
   b. The cat's fur feels soft.
   c. I'm not feeling well today.
   d. I feel that it is important to respect other people's opinions.

7. a. Ann has a car.
   b. I am having a hard time, but Olga is having a good time.

8. a. I remember my first teacher. Do you remember yours?
   b. Aunt Sara is looking through an old picture album. She is remembering the wonderful days of her childhood.

9. a. This piano is too heavy for me to lift. It weighs too much.
   b. The grocer is weighing the bananas.
**AM I IS I ARE BEING + ADJECTIVE**

(a) Ann *is sick* today.
   Alex *is nervous* about the exam.
   Tom *is tall* and *handsome*.

*Be + an adjective* usually expresses a stative meaning, as in the examples in (a). (See Appendix Chart A-3, p. A4, for information about adjectives.)

(b) Jack doesn't feel well, but he refuses to see a doctor. He *is being foolish*.

(c) Sue *is being* very *quiet* today. I wonder if anything is wrong.

Sometimes main verb *be + an adjective* is used in the progressive. It is used in the progressive when it describes temporary, in-progress behavior.
In (b): Jack's foolishness is temporary and probably uncharacteristic of him.

(d) **INCORRECT:** Mr. Smith *is being old.*
   **CORRECT:** Mr. Smith *is old.*

In (d): Age does not describe a temporary behavior. *Be + old* cannot be used in the progressive.

Examples of other adjectives that cannot be used with *am/is/are being*: angry, beautiful, handsome, happy, healthy, hungry, lucky, nervous, sick, tall, thirsty, young.

**ADJECTIVES THAT CAN BE USED WITH AM / IS / ARE BEING**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bad (ill-behaved)</th>
<th>good (well-behaved)</th>
<th>loud</th>
<th>responsible</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>illogical</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>rude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruel</td>
<td>impolite</td>
<td>noisy</td>
<td>serious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fair</td>
<td>irresponsible</td>
<td>patient</td>
<td>silly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foolish</td>
<td>kind</td>
<td>pleasant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td>lazy</td>
<td>polite</td>
<td>unfair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generous</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>unkind</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 7. AM / IS / ARE BEING + adjective.** (Chart 2-4)

*Directions*: Mark the adjectives that can be used to complete each sentence.

1. Don't pay any attention to Johnny. He's just being______
   - tired  ✔funny
   - foolish ✔ silly

2. A: You shouldn't act like that, Tommy. You're not being _______.
   B: Okay, Dad. I'm sorry.
   - careful  kind
   - healthy  responsible

3. A: There's something different about Tom today.
   B: What do you mean?
   A: He's being so______today.
   - handsome  quiet
   - polite    tall

4. I don't approve of Ann's behavior. She is being_______.
   - angry    unfair
   - cruel    unpleasant

5. The children are being awfully______today.
   - good    noisy
   - hungry  sick
EXERCISE 8. Simple present vs. present progressive. (Charts 2-1 > 2-4)

Directions: Use either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

1. I can't afford that ring. It (cost) __________ too much.

2. Look. It (begin) ___________ to rain. Unfortunately, I (have, not*) ___________ my umbrella with me. Tom is lucky. He (wear) ___________ a raincoat.

3. I (own, not) ___________ an umbrella. I (wear) ___________ a waterproof hat on rainy days.

4. As a rule, I (sleep) ___________ until 6 o'clock in the morning, and then I (get) ___________ up and (study) ___________ for my classes.

5. Shhh. Grandpa (take) ___________ a nap in the living room. We (want, not) ___________ to wake him up. He (need) ___________ his rest.

6. Right now I (look) ___________ at Janet. She (look) ___________ angry. I wonder what's the matter. She (have) ___________ a frown on her face. She certainly (have, not) ___________ any fun right now.

7. Right now I (look) ___________ around the classroom. Yoko (write) ___________ in her book. Carlos (bite) ___________ his pencil. Wan-Ning (scratch) ___________ his head. Ahmed (stare) ___________ out the window. He (seem) ___________ to be daydreaming, but perhaps he (think) ___________ hard about verb tenses. What (you, think) ___________ Ahmed (do) ___________?

*A form of do is usually used in the negative when the main verb is have (especially in American English but also commonly in British English): I don't have a car. Using have without a form of do is also possible but less common: I haven't a car.
8. I (want) __________ to figure out the meaning of this saying: "The pen is mightier than the sword." I (know) ___________ that "mightier" (mean) ____________ "more powerful," but what's a "sword"? What ("sword," mean) ________________?

9. Right now Martha is in the science building.
The chemistry experiment she (do) ___________ is dangerous, so she (be) __________ very careful.

She (want, not) ________________ to spill any of the acid. She (be, always) ________________ careful when she does a chemistry experiment.

EXERCISE 9. Activity: using present verbs in writing. (Charts 2-1 → 2-4)

Directions: Go to a place where there are many people (such as a zoo, a hotel lobby, a street corner) or imagine yourself to be there. Describe what you see. Let your reader "see" what you see by drawing a picture in words. Use present tenses. Begin with a description of what you are doing: I am sitting on a bench at the zoo.

2-5 REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGULAR VERBS:</th>
<th>The simple past and past participle end in -ed.</th>
<th>English verbs have four principal parts:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMPLE FORM</td>
<td>SIMPLE PAST</td>
<td>(1) simple form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>hoped</td>
<td>(2) simple past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>stopped</td>
<td>(3) past participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen</td>
<td>listened</td>
<td>(4) present participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>studied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>started</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>hoped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>hoping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stopping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>listening</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>studying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>starting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IRREGULAR VERBS:</th>
<th>The simple past and past participle do not end in -ed.</th>
<th>Some verbs have irregular past forms. Most of the irregular verbs in English are given in the alphabetical list in Chart 2-7, p. 22.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMPLE FORM</td>
<td>SIMPLE PAST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>breaking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>coming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>finding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hitting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>swimming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Final -ed has three different pronunciations: /t/, /d/, and /ad/.

(a) looked ➔ look/t/
dapped ➔ claplll
missed ➔ miss/t/
watched ➔ watch/t/
finished ➔ finish/t/
laughed ➔ laugh/t/

Final -erf is pronounced /t/ after voiceless sounds.
Voiceless sounds are made by pushing air through your mouth; no sound comes from your throat. Examples of voiceless sounds: "k," "p," "s," "ch," "sh," "f."

(b) smell ➔ smell/d/
saved ➔ saveldl
cleaned ➔ clean/dl
robbed ➔ robldl
played ➔ play/dl

Final -erf is pronounced /d/ after voiced sounds.
Voiced sounds come from your throat. If you touch your neck when you make a voiced sound, you can feel your voice box vibrate. Examples of voiced sounds: "l," "v," "n," "b," and all vowel sounds.

(c) decided ➔ decide/ad/
needed ➔ need/ad/
wanted ➔ want/ad/
invited ➔ invite/ad/

Final -ed is pronounced /ad/ after "t" and "d" sounds. The sound /ad/ adds a whole syllable to a word.

COMPARE: looked = one syllable ➔ look/t/
smelled = one syllable ➔ smell/d/
needed = two syllables ➔ need/ad/
wanted = two syllables ➔ want/ad/

D EXERCISE 10. Pronunciation of -ED endings. (Chart 2-6)
Directions: Practice pronouncing the words. Write the pronunciation of the -ed ending after each word.

1. talked ➔ talk/t/
2. sobbed ➔
3. graded ➔
4. asked ➔
5. helped ➔
6. watched ➔
7. filled ➔
8. defended ➔
9. poured ➔
10. waited ➔
11. enjoyed ➔
12. loaded ➔
13. roamed ➔
14. kissed ➔
15. halted ➔
16. laughed ➔
17. dried ➔
18. believed ➔
19. judged ➔
20. counted ➔
21. added ➔
22. boxed ➔
23. rested ➔
24. pushed ➔
EXERCISE 11. Pronunciation of -ED endings. (Chart 2-6)

Directions: Practice the sentences aloud. Write the pronunciation of the -ed endings.

/ɪ/ /əd/
1. Jane blinked and yawned.
2. We hoped for the best.
3. She mopped the kitchen floor, vacuumed the carpet, and dusted the furniture.
4. The concert lasted for two hours.
5. She tapped the top of her desk.
6. He described his house.
7. They demanded to know the answer.
8. Alice pushed and I pulled.
9. He handed me his dictionary.
10. Jack tooted his horn.
11. They asked us to help them.
12. With the coming of spring, the river flooded.
13. The airplane departed at six and landed at eight.
14. My friend jumped up and down and shouted when she got the news.

EXERCISE 12. Activity: pronunciation of -ED endings. (Chart 2-6)

Directions: On a separate sheet of paper draw three vertical columns. At the top of the columns, write /ɪ/ /d/ and /əd/. Using words of their own choosing, your classmates in turn will say a word that has a final -ed. Write that word in the appropriate column according to how the ending is pronounced.

Example:
SPEAKER A: Number one. wanted
SPEAKER B: Number two. reached
SPEAKER C: Number three. licked
SPEAKER D: Number four. spilled
Etc.
**IRREGULAR VERBS: AN ALPHABETICAL LIST**

Note: Verbs followed by a bullet (•) are defined at the end of the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE FORM</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
<th>SIMPLE FORM</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arise</td>
<td>arose</td>
<td>arisen</td>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>forbade</td>
<td>forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was, were</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>forecast•</td>
<td>forecast</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear</td>
<td>bore</td>
<td>borne/born</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten/beat</td>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forsaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>forsake•</td>
<td>forsook</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend</td>
<td>bent</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bet•</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bid•</td>
<td>bid</td>
<td>bid</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bind•</td>
<td>bound</td>
<td>bound</td>
<td>grind•</td>
<td>ground</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleed</td>
<td>bled</td>
<td>bled</td>
<td>hang**</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breed•</td>
<td>bred</td>
<td>bred</td>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcast•</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burned/burnt</td>
<td>burned/burnt</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst•</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>kneel</td>
<td>kneeled/knelt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cast•</td>
<td>cast</td>
<td>cast</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
<td>lean</td>
<td>leaned/leant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cling•</td>
<td>clung</td>
<td>clung</td>
<td>leap</td>
<td>leaped/leapt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creep•</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal•</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>light</td>
<td>lighted/lit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamed/</td>
<td>dreamt</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dreamt</td>
<td></td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td>mislay</td>
<td>mislaid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
<td>mistake</td>
<td>mistook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>quit***</td>
<td>quit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>fit/fitted</td>
<td>fit/fitted</td>
<td>rid</td>
<td>rid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flee-</td>
<td>fled</td>
<td>fled</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fling-</td>
<td>flung</td>
<td>flung</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Hang** is a regular verb when it means to kill someone with a rope around his/her neck. COMPARE: *I hung my clothes in the closet. They hunged the murderer by the neck until he was dead.*

***Also possible in British English: quit-quit-quit.
### Definitions of Some of the Less Frequently Used Irregular Verbs:

- **Bet** . . . . wager; offer to pay money if one loses
- **Bind** . . . . fasten or secure
- **Breed** . . . . bring animals together to produce young
- **Broadcast** . . . send information by radio waves; announce
- **Burst** . . . . explode; break suddenly
- **Cast** . . . . . throw
- **Cling** . . . . hold on tightly
- **Creep** . . . . crawl close to the ground; move slowly and quietly
- **Deal** . . . . distribute playing cards to each person; give attention to (deal with)
- **Flee** . . . . escape; run away
- **Fling** . . . . throw with force

- **Forecast** . . . predict a future occurrence
- **Forfeit** . . . abandon or desert
- **Grind** . . . crush, reduce to small pieces
- **Seek** . . . . look for
- **Shed** . . . . drop off or get rid of
- **Shrink** . . . become smaller
- **Sink** . . . . move downward, often under water
- **Slide** . . . . glide smoothly; slip or skid
- **Split** . . . . divide into two or more parts
- **Spread** . . . push out in all directions (e.g., butter on bread, news)

- **Spring** . . . jump or rise suddenly from a still position
- **Sting** . . . cause pain with a sharp object (e.g., pin) or bite (e.g., by an insect)
- **Stink** . . . have a bad or foul smell
- **Strike** . . . hit something with force
- **Strive** . . . try hard to achieve a goal
- **Swing** . . . move back and forth
- **Thrust** . . . push forcibly; shove
- **Weave** . . . form by passing pieces of material over and under each other (as in making baskets, cloth)
- **Weep** . . . cry
- **Wind** . . . (sounds like find) turn around and around
EXERCISE 13. Oral review of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

NOTE: Exercises 13 through 16 are quick oral reviews of the simple past of irregular verbs. Although a short answer is usually given to a yes/no question (Did you sit down? Yes, I did.), in this exercise, answer with "yes" and a complete sentence. Which irregular verbs come easily for you? Which ones are a little more troublesome? Which ones don't you know?

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask the questions in the text.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Begin each answer with "Yes . . . ."

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): Did you sit down?

1. Did you drink some coffee before class?
2. Did you bring your books to class?
3. Did you forget your briefcase?
4. Did you shake your head?
5. Did you catch the bus this morning?
6. Did you drive to school?
7. Did you lose your book?
8. Did you mislay your book?
9. Did you find your book?
10. Did you understand what I said?
11. Did you tell your friend the news?
12. Did you spread the news?
13. Did you fall on the ice?
14. Did you hurt yourself when you fell?
15. Did you fly to (this city)?
16. Did you wear a coat to class?
17. Did you hang your bookbag on a hook?
18. Did you eat lunch?
19. Did you take chemistry in high school?
20. Did you ride the bus to school?
21. Did you swear to tell the truth?
22. I made a mistake. Did you forgive me?
23. Did you write a letter to your family?
24. Did you bite the dog???

EXERCISE 14. Oral review of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask the questions in the text.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Begin each answer with "No, someone else . . . ."

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): Did you shut the door?
SPEAKER B (book closed): No, someone else shut it.

1. Did you make that cake?
2. Did you break that window?
3. Did you steal my wallet?
4. Did you take my piece of paper?
5. Did you draw that picture?
6. Did you sweep the floor this morning?
7. Did you teach class yesterday?
8. Did you dig that hole in the garden?
9. Did you feed the cat?
10. Did you hide my book from me?
11. Did you blow that whistle?
12. Did you throw a piece of chalk out the window?
13. Did you tear that piece of paper?
14. Did you build that house?
15. Did you speak to ( . . . )?
16. Did you weave that cloth?
EXERCISE 15. Oral review of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask the questions in the text.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Begin your answer with "yes."

Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): Did you sit down?

1. Did you give me some money?
2. Did you stand at the bus stop?
3. Did you choose the blue pen?
4. Did you run to class this (morning)?
5. Did you sleep well last night?
6. Did you hear that noise outside the window?
7. Did you withdraw some money from the bank?
8. Did you wake up at seven this morning?
9. Did you swim in the ocean?
10. Did you go home after class yesterday?
11. Did you bend over to pick up a pencil?
12. Did you send a letter?
13. Did you sing a song?
14. Did you stick your hand in your pocket?
15. Did you grind the pepper?
16. Did you strike the desk with your hand?
17. Did you light a match?
18. Did you mean what you said?
19. Did you hold your hand up?
20. Did you speak to (...)?

EXERCISE 16. Oral review of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask the questions in the text.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Begin your answer with "yes."

Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): Did the students come to class?
SPEAKER B (book closed): Yes, they came to class.

1. Did class begin at (nine)?
2. Did the sun rise at six this morning?
3. Did you cut your finger?
4. Did it bleed when you cut it?
5. Did the grass grow after the rain?
6. Did a bee sting you?
7. Did the telephone ring?
8. Did the water freeze?
9. Did your friend quit school?
10. Did the soldiers fight?
11. Did the thief creep into the room?
12. Did the policeman shoot at the thief?
13. Did the thief flee?
14. Did your team win the game yesterday?
15. Did your car slide on the ice?
16. Did the door swing open?
17. Did the children blow up some balloons?
18. Did the balloons burst?
19. Did the radio station broadcast the news?
20. Did you know all of the irregular verbs?
**TROUBLESOME VERBS: RAISE I RISE, SET I SIT, LAY I LIE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRANSITIVE</th>
<th>INTRANSITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) raise, raised, raised</td>
<td>(b) rise, rose, risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom raised his hand.</td>
<td>The sun rises in the east.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) set, set, set</td>
<td>(d) sit, sat, sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I will set the book on the desk.</td>
<td>I sit in the front row.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) lay, laid, laid</td>
<td>(f) lie, lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am laying the book on the desk.</td>
<td>He is lying on his bed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Raise, set, and lay are transitive verbs; they are followed by an object. Rise, sit, and lie are intransitive; i.e., they are NOT followed by an object.*

In (a): raised is followed by the object hand.

In (b): rises is not followed by an object.

Note: Lay and lie are troublesome for native speakers too and are frequently misused.

*See Appendix Chart A-1, p. A1, for information about transitive and intransitive verbs.

**Lie** is a regular verb (lie, lied) when it means "not tell the truth": He lied to me about his age.

**EXERCISE 17. Troublesome verbs.** (Chart 2-8)

_Directions:_ Choose the correct word in parentheses.

1. The student _raised, rose_ his hand in class.

2. Hot air _raises, rises_.

3. Ann _set, sat_ in a chair because she was tired.

4. I _set, sat_ your dictionary on the table a few minutes ago.

5. Hens _lay, lie_ eggs.

6. Sara is _laying, lying_ on the grass in the park right now.

7. Jan _laid, lay_ the comb on top of the dresser a few minutes ago.

8. If you are tired, you should _lay, lie_ down and take a nap.

9. San Francisco _lay, lies_ to the north of Los Angeles.

10. Mr. Faust _raises, rises_ many different kinds of flowers in his garden.

11. The student _raised, rose_ from her seat and walked to the front of the auditorium to receive her diploma.

12. Hiroki is a very methodical person. Every night before going to bed, he _lays, lies_ his clothes for the next day on his chair.

13. Where are my keys? I _lay, laid_ them here on the desk five minutes ago.

14. Fred _set, sat_ the table for dinner.

15. Fred _set, sat_ at the table for dinner.

16. The fulfillment of all your dreams _lies, lays_ within you—if you just believe in yourself.
EXERCISE 18. Troublesome verbs. (Chart 2-8)

Directions: Follow the directions.

1. Name things that rise.
2. Lift something above your head. Use raised or rose in a sentence to describe that action.
3. Put something on your desktop. Use set or sat in a sentence to describe this action. Then use laid or lay to describe this action.
4. Look at the object on your desktop. What is it doing? Describe its "activity in progress" by using setting or sitting in a sentence. Then use laying or lying in a similar sentence to describe this object.
5. Describe the geographical location of your country by naming at least two countries or bodies of water that border it on the north, south, east, or west. Use lies or lays. For example, Canada (lies/lays?) to the north of the United States.

2-9 SIMPLE PAST

| (a) I walked to school yesterday.            | The simple past indicates that an activity or situation began and ended at a particular time in the past. |
| (b) John lived in Paris for ten years, but now he lives in Rome. |
| (c) I bought a new car three days ago.     | If a sentence contains when and has the simple past in both clauses, the action in the when clause happens first. In (d): 1st: The rain began. 2nd: She stood under a tree. |
| (d) Rita stood under a tree when it began to rain. |
| (e) When Mrs. Chu heard a strange noise, she got up to investigate. |
| (f) When I dropped my cup, the coffee spilled on my lap. |

1st: It began to rain.
2nd: Rita stood under a tree.

Rita stood under a tree when it began to rain.
### 2-10 PAST PROGRESSIVE

| (g) | I was walking down the street when it began to rain. |
| (h) | While I was walking down the street, it began to rain. |
| (i) | Rita was standing under a tree when it began to rain. |
| (j) | At eight o’clock last night, I was studying. |
| (k) | Last year at this time, I was attending school. |
| (l) | While I was studying in one room of our apartment, my roommate was having a party in the other room. |

**In (g):** 1st: I was walking down the street. 2nd: It began to rain. Both actions occurred at the same time, but one action began earlier and was in progress when the other action occurred. In (j): My studying began before 8:00, was in progress at that time, and probably continued. Sometimes the past progressive is used in both parts of a sentence when two actions are in progress simultaneously.

---

**D EXERCISE 19.** Simple past vs. past progressive. (Charts 2-9 and 2-10)

*Directions:* Use the simple past or the past progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

1. I am sitting in class right now. I *(sit)* **was sitting** in class at this exact same time yesterday.

2. I don’t want to go to the zoo today because it is raining. The same thing happened yesterday. I *(want, not)* **to go to the zoo because it** *(rain)* .

3. I *(call)* **Roger at nine last night, but he (be, not)** **at home. He (study) at the library.**

4. I *(hear, not)* **the thunder during the storm last night because I (sleep) .**
5. It was beautiful yesterday when we went for a walk in the park. The sun (**shine**) A cool breeze (**blow**) The birds (**sing**).

6. My brother and sister (**argue**) about something when I (**walk**) into the room.

7. I got a package in the mail. When I (**open**) it, I (**find**) a surprise.

8. While Mrs. Emerson (**read**) the little boy a story, he (**fall**) asleep, so she (**close**) the book and quietly (**tiptoe**) out of the room.

9. A: Why weren't you at the meeting?
   B: I (**wait**) for an overseas call from my family.

10. A: (**you, hear**) what she just said?
    B: No, I (**listen, not**) about something else.

11. A: How (**you, break**) your arm?
    B: I (**slip**) on the ice while I (**cross**) the street in front of the dorm.

12. A: I’m sure you met Carol Jones at the party last night.
    B: I don’t remember her. What (**she, wear**)?

13. It was my first day of class. I (**find, finally**) the right room. The room (**be, already**) full of students. On one side of the room, students (**talk, busily**) to each other in Spanish. Other students (**speak**) Japanese, and some (**converse**) in Arabic. It sounded like the United Nations. Some of the students, however, (**sit, just**) quietly by themselves. I (**choose**) an empty seat in the last row and (**sit**) down. In a few minutes, the teacher (**walk**) into the room and all the multilingual conversation (**stop**) .
14. I really enjoyed my vacation last January. While it **snow**ed in Toronto, the **sun** **shine**d in Florida. While you **shovel**ed snow in Iowa, I **lie**d on the beach in Florida.

☐ **EXERCISE 20.** Activity: using past verbs in speaking. (Charts 2-9 and 2-10)

*Directions:* Come to class prepared to do a pantomime. While you are doing your pantomime, your classmates will try to determine what you are doing and then, when you are finished, will describe what you did, step by step.

*Examples of subjects for a pantomime:*
1. threading a needle and sewing on a button
2. washing dishes, and perhaps breaking one
3. bowling
4. reading a newspaper while eating breakfast

☐ **EXERCISE 21.** Activity: using past verbs in writing. (Charts 2-9 and 2-10)

*Directions:* In writing, describe one or more of the pantomimes that were performed by your classmates. Give a title to the pantomime and identify the pantomimist. Use a few "time words" to show the order in which the actions were performed: **first, next, then, after that, before, when, while, etc.**

☐ **EXERCISE 22.** Activity: using present and past verbs in writing. (Chapter 2)

*Directions:* Describe your first day or two in this country or city. What did you do? What did you think? What did you see? Who did you meet? Did you have any interesting experiences? How did you feel about this place?

Then write about how you feel about this place now. In what ways are your present experiences here different from your earlier experiences?

---

**2-11 USING PROGRESSIVE VERBS WITH **always** TO COMPLAIN**

| (a) Mary always leaves for school at 7:45. | In sentences referring to present time, usually the simple present is used with **always** to describe habitual or everyday activities, as in (a). |
| (b) Mary is always leaving her dirty socks on the floor for me to pick up! Who does she think I am? Her maid? | In special circumstances, a speaker may use the present progressive with **always** to complain, i.e., to express annoyance or anger, as in (b).* |
| (c) I am always/forever/constantly picking up Mary's dirty socks! | In addition to **always**, the words **forever** and **constantly** are also used with the present progressive to express annoyance. |
| (d) I didn't like having Sam for my roommate last year. He was always leaving his dirty clothes on the floor. | **Always**, **forever**, and **constantly** can also be used with the past progressive to express annoyance or anger. |

*COMPAR**E:  
(1) "Mary is always leaving her dirty socks on the floor" expresses annoyance.  
(2) "Mary always leaves her dirty socks on the floor" is a statement of fact in which the speaker is not necessarily expressing an attitude of annoyance. Annoyance may, however, be shown by the speaker's tone of voice.
EXERCISE 23. Using progressive verbs with ALWAYS. (Chart 2-11)

Directions: Your roommate, Jack, has many bad habits. These bad habits annoy you! Pretend you are speaking to a friend and complaining about Jack. Use the present progressive of a verb in Column A and complete the sentence with a phrase from Column B. Use always, constantly, or forever in each sentence. Say your sentence aloud with annoyance, impatience, or anger in your voice.

Example: He's always messing up the kitchen!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN A</th>
<th>COLUMN B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. mess up</td>
<td>a. about himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. leave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. borrow</td>
<td>c. my clothes without asking me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. brag</td>
<td>d. to give me my phone messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. try</td>
<td>e. his dirty dishes on the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. crack</td>
<td>f. to show me he's smarter than me*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. forget</td>
<td>g. his knuckles while I'm trying to study</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complete the following with your own words.

A: I really don't know if I can stand to have Sue for a roommate one more day. She's driving me crazy.

B: Oh? What's wrong?

A: Well, for one thing she's always ____________________________!

B: Really?

A: And not only that. She's forever ____________________________!

B: That must be very inconvenient for you.

A: It is. And what's more, she's constantly ____________________________!

Can you believe that? And she's always ____________________________!

B: I think you're right. You need to find a new roommate.

2-12 USING EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE WITH PROGRESSIVE VERBS

(a) — What is Kay doing?  
— She's studying in her room.

(b) — Where's Kay?  
— She's in her room studying.

(c) — What was Jack doing when you arrived?  
— He was reading a book in bed.

(d) — Where was Jack when you arrived?  
— He was in bed reading a book.

An expression of place can sometimes come between the auxiliary be and the -ing verb in a progressive tense, as in (b) and (d):

| is + in her room + studying |
| was + in bed + reading |

In (a): The focus of both the question and the answer is on Kay's activity in progress, i.e., on what she is doing.

In (b): The focus of both the question and the answer is on Kay's location, i.e., on where Kay is.

*In formal English, a subject pronoun follows than: He's older than I (am). In everyday informal English, an object pronoun is frequently used after than: He's older than me.
EXERCISE 24. Using expressions of place with progressive verbs. (Chart 2-12)

PART I. Use the given verbs and expressions of place to complete the dialogues. Use usual word order if the focus is on an activity in progress. Use inverted word order if the focus is on the person's location.

1. listen to music \ in her room
   A: Where's Sally?
   B: She's in her room listening to music.

2. listen to music \ in the living room
   A: What's Surasuk doing?
   B: He's listening to music in the living room.

3. watch TV \ in his bedroom
   A: Where was Jack when you got home?
   B: He was watching TV in his bedroom.

4. watch TV \ in his bedroom
   A: What was Jack doing when you got home?
   B: He was watching TV in his bedroom.

5. take a nap \ on the couch in the living room
   A: What's Roy doing?
   B: He's taking a nap on the couch in the living room.

6. take a nap \ on the couch in the living room
   A: Where's Roy?
   B: He's taking a nap on the couch in the living room.

7. attend a conference \ in Singapore
   A: Where's Ms. Chang this week?
   B: She's attending a conference in Singapore.

PART II. Answer the questions, using the present progressive or the past progressive. Use the expression of place in parentheses and add your own words.

8. A: Where's Joan? (at the library)
   B: She's at the library studying for a test.

   B: Yes. 

10. A: Have you seen Professor Marx? (in her office)
    B: Yes. 

11. A: Where's your mother, Jimmy? (in the kitchen)
   B: ________________________________________________________________

12. A: Ahmed was absent yesterday. Where was he? (at home)
   B: ________________________________________________________________

13. A: Was Mr. Rivera out of town last week? (in New York)
   B: Yes. __________________________________________________________

PART III. Add expressions of place between be and the -ing verb.

14. My sister is visiting some relatives.
   My sister is in Chicago visiting some relatives.

15. I'm back to work now, but a month ago I was lying in the sun.

16. We are studying English grammar.

17. No one could see the thief because he was hiding from the police.

18. When I saw Diana, she was trying to find out what she was supposed to do.

☐ EXERCISE 25. Error analysis: present and past verbs. (Chapter 2)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Breakfast is an important meal. I'm always eating breakfast.

2. During I was working in my office yesterday, my cousin stops by to visit me.

3. Portugal lays to the west of Spain.

4. Yuki staied home because she catched a bad cold.

5. My brother is looking like our father, but I am resembling my mother.

6. As a verb, "sink" is meaning "move downward." What it means as a noun?

7. Sang-Joon, are you listen to me? I am talk to you!

8. I rewinded the rented video before I return it to the store yesterday.

9. Abdallah is want a snack. He's being hungry.

10. Anna rose her eyebrows in surprise.

11. Yesterday I was working at my computer when Shelley was coming to the door of my office. I wasn't knowing she was there. I was concentrate hard on my work. When she suddenly speak, I am jump. She startle me.

12. While I was surfing the net yesterday, I was finding a really interesting Web site.
EXERCISE 1. Review of irregular past participles. (Charts 2-5 and 2-7)

**Directions:** Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask a question that begins with "Have you ever . . . ."
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Answer the question, beginning with "No, I haven't. I've never . . . ."

**Example:** see that movie
SPEAKER A (book open): Have you ever seen that movie?

1. buy an airplane
2. break a window
3. hide from the police
4. teach English
5. make an apple pie
6. win a lottery
7. fly an airplane
8. speak to (name of a local person)
9. steal anything
10. fall off a mountain
11. hold a snake
12. feed a lion
13. build a house
14. forget your name
15. understand quantum physics
16. eat an ostrich egg

*Switch roles.*
EXERCISE 2. Review: regular and irregular past participles. (Charts 2-5 and 2-7)

Directions: Work in pairs.

Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask a question that begins with "Have you ever . . . ?"
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Answer the question.

Example: break your arm

Speaker A (book open): Have you ever broken your arm?
Speaker B (book closed): Yes, I have. OR No, I haven't.

1. climb a mountain
2. write a book
3. be to (a particular country)*
4. tell a lie
5. smoke a cigar
6. ride a motorcycle
7. teach (a particular subject)
8. see (title of a movie)
9. meet ( . . . )’s** parents
10. give a speech in English
11. eat (Thai) food
12. study biology
13. play a violin
14. go to (a particular place in this city)
15. walk on the moon
16. watch (a particular TV show)
17. take a course in chemistry
18. drive (a particular kind of car)

Switch roles.

19. fall asleep during class
20. have (a particular kind of food)
21. drive a truck
22. read (name of a book)
23. draw a picture of yourself
24. ride a horse
25. catch a butterfly
26. sleep in a tent
27. write a letter to (a famous person)
28. lose your wallet
29. have a car accident
30. bring a friend to class
31. wear a kimono
32. drink Turkish coffee
33. leave your umbrella at a restaurant
34. dig a hole to plant a tree
35. shake ( . . . )’s hand
36. sing in public

*Supply your own words for the expressions in parentheses.
**Supply the name of a classmate.
### 3-1 PRESENT PERFECT

The present perfect expresses the idea that something happened (or never happened) before now, at an unspecified time in the past. The exact time it happened is not important.

If there is a specific mention of time, the simple past is used: *They moved into a new apartment last month.*

Notice in the examples: the adverbs *ever, never, already, yet, still,* and *just* are frequently used with the present perfect.

The present perfect also expresses the repetition of an activity before now. The exact time of each repetition is not important.

Notice in (h): *so far* is frequently used with the present perfect.

The present perfect, when used with *for* or *since,* also expresses a situation that began in the past and continues to the present.*

In the examples, notice the difference between *since* and *for:*

- *since* + a particular time
- *for* + a duration of time

*The verbs used in the present perfect to express a situation that began in the past and still exists are typically verbs with a stative meaning (see Chart 2-3, p. 15).*

The present perfect progressive, rather than the present perfect, is used with action verbs to express an activity that began in the past and continues to the present (see Chart 3-2, p. 42):

*I've been sitting at my desk for an hour. Jack has been watching TV since seven o'clock.*

---

**EXERCISE 3. Present perfect vs. simple past. (Charts 2-9 and 3-1)**

*Directions:* Use the simple past or the present perfect. In some sentences, either tense is possible but the meaning is different.

1. I *(attend, not)* haven't *attended* any parties since I came here.

2. Al *(go)* _____________ to a party at Sally's apartment last Saturday night.

3. Bill *(arrive)* _____________ here three days ago.

4. Bill *(be) _____________ here since the 22nd.

5. Try not to be absent from class again for the rest of the term. You *(miss, already)* _____________ too many classes. You *(miss) _____________*

6. So far this week, I *(have) _____________ two tests and a quiz.
7. Alex is an artist. He **draw**ed many beautiful pictures in his lifetime. Last week he **draw**ed a beautiful mountain scene.

8. Jack really needs to get in touch with you. Since this morning, he **call**ed here four times trying to reach you. He **call**ed at 9:10, 10:25, 12:15, and 1:45.

9. Janet **wear**ed her new blue dress only once since she bought it. She **wear**ed it to her brother’s wedding last month.

10. The night has ended, and it’s daylight now. The sun **rise**d at 6:08.

11. Last January, I **see**d snow for the first time in my life.

12. Fatima **see**, **never** **see**d snow in her entire lifetime.

13. I **know**ed Greg Adams for ten years.

   B: Yes. He **arrive**d **just**.

15. A: I **be**, **not** **be** able to reach Mr. Chang yet. So far he **respond**, **not** **respond** to any of my attempts to reach him.
   B: Oh?
   A: I **start**ed trying to reach him three days ago. Since then, I **fax**ed him twice. I **phone**ed him four times. And I **send**ed at least six e-mails.
   B: I guess modern communications don’t mean much if there’s no one at the other end.

**EXERCISE 4. Present perfect. (Chart 3-1)**

*Directions:* Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

**Speaker A:** Your book is open. Ask the questions.

**Speaker B:** Your book is closed. Answer in complete sentences.

*Example:*

**SPEAKER A (book open):** How many tests have you taken since you started coming to this class?

**SPEAKER B (book dosed):** I have taken **three**, **several**, **many** tests since I started coming to this class. OR I haven’t taken any tests since I started coming to this class.

*Just can indicate that something happened a very short time ago, very close in time to the present moment, but still in the past. When just expresses this meaning, it is frequently used with the present perfect. However, in informal English the simple past is also often used. Both (a) and (b) are correct:*

(a) *I’ve just finished a letter to my parents.*

(b) *Just finished a letter to my parents.*
1. How many books have you bought since the beginning of the year / this term?
2. How many letters / e-mails have you gotten so far this month / week?
3. How many letters / e-mails have you written since the beginning of the month / week?
4. How many questions have I asked so far?
5. How many times have you flown in an airplane?
6. How many times have you . . . ?

7. How many people have you met since you came here?
8. How many classes have you missed since the beginning of the (semester)?
9. How many cups of coffee have you had since you got up this morning?
10. How many classes have you had so far today?
11. How many times have you eaten (your native) food / eaten at a restaurant since you came here?
12. How many times have you . . . ?

exercise 5. present perfect. (chart 3-1)
directions: complete the sentences with any appropriate time expressions.

1. today is the 14th of june. i bought this book two weeks ago.
   i have had this book since the first of june.
   i have had this book for two weeks.

2. i have a pen. i bought it ago.
   i have had this pen for.
   i have had this pen since.

3. today is.
   i moved to this city.
   i have been in this city since.
   i have been here for.

4. it is the year .
   i started going to school in the year.
   i have been a student for.
   i have been a student since.

5. i first met our teacher.
   i have known her/him for.
   i have known her/him since.
EXERCISE 6. Present perfect. (Chart 3-1)

Directions: The person who gives the cues has an open book. (This person can be the teacher or the leader of a small group.) Everyone else's books are closed. Answer the questions in complete sentences, first using for and then using since.

Example:
To SPEAKER A: When did you come to (this city I country)?
—I came here on June 2nd.
To SPEAKER B: How long has (Speaker A) been here?
—He/She has been here for two weeks.
Or, using since?
—He/She has been here since June 2nd.

1. To A: When did you arrive (in this city I country)?
   To B: How long has ( . . . ) been here?
2. To A: When did you get to class today?
   To B: How long has ( . . . ) been in class?
3. To A: What time did you get up this morning?
   To B: How long has ( . . . ) been up?
4. To A: Who in this class owns a car/bicycle? When did you buy it?
   To B: How long has ( . . . ) had a car/bicycle?
5. To A: Who is wearing a watch? When did you get it?
   To B: How long has ( . . . ) had his/her watch?
6. To A: Who is married? When did you get married?
   To B: How long has ( . . . ) been married?
7. To A: Do you know ( . . . )? When did you meet him/her?
   To B: How long has ( . . . ) known ( . . . )?
8. To A: Is that your pen/notebook/pencil sharpener? When did you buy it?
   To B: How long has ( . . . ) had his/her pen/notebook/pencil sharpener?
9. To A: Is that your . . . ? When did you get it?
   To B: How long has ( . . . ) had . . .?

EXERCISE 7. Present perfect. (Chart 3-1)

Directions: Have and has (when used as auxiliary verbs, not as main verbs) are usually contracted with personal pronouns in both speaking and informal writing. Have and has are often contracted with nouns and other words in informal speaking, but not usually in writing. (See Appendix Chart C, p. A17.) Practice pronouncing contracted have and has in the sentences.

1. You've been there. They've been there. She's been there. We've all been there.
2. Mary has never been there. → "Mary's" never been there.
3. The weather has been nice lately.
4. My neighbors have asked me over for dinner.
5. The teacher has never eaten hot Vietnamese food.
6. The teacher has a red dog. (No contraction; has is the main verb.)
7. My parents have lived in the same house for over thirty years.
8. My parents have a house.
9. Where have you been?
10. What have you done with my books?
EXERCISE 8. Present perfect vs. simple past. (Charts 2-9 and 3-1)

Directions: Use the simple past or the present perfect.

1. What **have you learned** since you **come** here?
   And how many new friends **make** you?

2. Since classes began, I **have, not** much free time. I **have** several big tests to study for.

3. Last night my friend and I **have** some free time, so we **go** to a show.

4. I admit that I **get** older since I last **see** you, but with any luck at all, I **get** wiser.

5. The science of medicine **advance** a great deal in the 19th century.

6. In the last fifty years, medical scientists **make** many important discoveries.

7. Libraries today are different from those in the 1800s. For example, the contents of libraries **change** greatly through the years. In the 1800s, libraries **be** simply collections of books. However, today most libraries **become** multimedia centers that contain tapes, computers, disks, films, magazines, music, and paintings. The role of the library in society **change, also** In the 1800s, libraries **be** open only to certain people, such as scholars or the wealthy. Today libraries serve everyone.

8. A: Are you taking Chemistry 101 this semester?
   B: No, I **take, already** it. I **take** it last semester. This semester I’m in 102.

*COMPARE:

(a) **I have gotten** OR **have got** four letters so far this week. In this sentence, **have gotten / have got** is present perfect.
   (NOTE: Got is used as the past participle of get in both American English and British English. **Gotten** occurs only in American English.)

(b) **I have got a problem**. In this sentence, **have got** is NOT present perfect. **I've got a problem / I have a problem**. The expression **have got** means "have" and is common in informal spoken English. Its meaning is present; it has no past form.

**Typically, the present perfect is used in sentences with already, yet, and just, but in some situations the simple past is also commonly used with these adverbs in informal English, with no difference in meaning.
9. A: Hi, Judy. Welcome to the party, (you, meet, ever) __________________________ my
cousin?
   B: No, T ________________.

10. A: Do you like lobster?
    R: T don’t know. T (eat, never) __________________________ it.

11. A: (you, eat) __________________________ yet?
    B: No. You?
    A: Yeah. T (eat, already) __________________________. I (finish, just) ________________.

12. A: Do you do much traveling?
    B: Yes. I like to travel.
    A: What countries (you, visit) __________________________?
    B: Well, T (be) __________________________ to India, Turkey, Afghanistan, and Nepal, among others.
    A: T (be, never) __________________________ to any of those countries. When (you, be) ________________ in India?
    B: Two years ago. I (visit, also) __________________________ many of the countries in Central America. I (take) __________________________ a tour of Central America about six years ago.
    A: Which countries (you, visit) __________________________?
    B: Guatemala, El Salvador, Honduras, and Nicaragua.
    A: I (want, always) __________________________ to travel to other countries, but I (have, not) __________________________ the opportunity to travel extensively. I (go) ________________ to England six years ago, but I (go, not) ________________ anywhere since then.

□ EXERCISE 9. Activity: using the present perfect. (Chart 3-1)

Directions: Discuss and/or write answers to some or all of the following questions.

1. What significant changes have taken place in your life since you were thirteen years old?
2. What are some interesting experiences you have had in your lifetime?
3. What are some things you have not yet done in your lifetime but would like to do?
4. Who are some of the people you have met, and what are some of the things you have done in the past couple of months?
5. What are some of the places you have visited in the world or in your country, and when did you visit them?
### 3-2 PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(a)</th>
<th>Right now I am sitting at my desk.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td><em>I have been sitting</em> here since seven o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td><em>You have been studying</em> for five straight hours. Why don't you take a break?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td><em>It has been raining</em> all day. It is still raining right now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e)</td>
<td><em>I have known</em> Alex since he was a child.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f)</td>
<td>INCORRECT: <em>I have been knowing</em> Alex since he was a child.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g)</td>
<td><em>I have been thinking</em> about changing my major.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h)</td>
<td>All of the students <em>have been studying</em> hard. Final exams start next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>My back hurts, so <em>I have been sleeping</em> on the floor lately. The bed is too soft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j)</td>
<td><em>I have lived</em> here since 1995. <em>I have been living</em> here since 1995.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k)</td>
<td><em>He has worked</em> at the same store for ten years. <em>He has been working</em> at the same store for ten years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**EXERCISE 10. Error analysis: present perfect progressive.** (Chart 3-2)

**Directions:** Which verbs in these sentences should be present perfect progressive? Correct the errors in verb tense usage.

1. The boys are playing soccer right now. They are playing for almost two hours. They must be getting tired.

2. Alex is talking on the phone. He talked on the phone for more than half an hour. He should hang up soon. Long distance is expensive.

3. I'm trying to study. I try to study for the last hour, but something always seems to interrupt me. I think I'd better go to the library.
4. Mr. Ford is waiting in the dentist's office. He was waiting there for the last twenty minutes. He hopes the dentist can see him soon because he has a bad toothache.

EXERCISE 11. Present perfect vs. present perfect progressive. (Charts 3-1 and 3-2)

Directions: Use the present perfect or the present perfect progressive. In some sentences, either tense may be used with little or no change in meaning.

1. It (snow) _______________ all day. I wonder when it will stop.

2. We (have) _______________ three major snowstorms so far this winter. I wonder how many more we will have.

3. It's ten P.M. I (study) _______________ for two hours and probably won't finish until midnight.

4. I (write) _______________ them three times, but I still haven't received a reply.

5. The telephone (ring) _______________ four times in the last hour, and each time it has been for my office mate.

6. The telephone (ring) _______________ for almost a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?

7. A: (you, be) _______________ able to reach Bob on the phone yet?
   B: Not yet. I (try) _______________ for the last twenty minutes, but all I get is a busy signal.

8. A: Hi, Jenny. I (see, not) _______________ you for weeks. What (you, do) _______________ lately?
   B: Studying.
9. A: What are you going to order for dinner?  
B: Well, I (have, never) __________________________ vegetarian pizza, so I think I'll order that.

10. A: What's the matter? Your eyes are red and puffy. (you, cry) __________________________

B: No. I just finished peeling some onions.

11. A: Dr. Jones is a good teacher. How long (he, be) __________________________ at the university?  
B: He (teach) __________ here for twenty-five years.

12. The little girl is dirty from head to foot because she (play) __________________________ in the mud.

EXERCISE 12. Present perfect and present perfect progressive with SINCE and FOR.  
(Charts 3-1 and 3-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

1. . . . since eight o'clock this morning.
   → I have been sitting in class since eight o'clock this morning.
   → I have had three classes since eight o'clock this morning.

2. . . . since I came to . . . .

3. . . . since (year).

4. . . . since (month).

5. . . . since (day).

6. . . . since . . . o'clock this morning / afternoon / evening.

7. . . . since the beginning of this century.

8. . . . since . . . .

9. . . . for (number of years).

10. . . . for a long time.

11. . . . for several months.

12. . . . for the last ten minutes.
EXERCISE 13. Activity: using the present perfect and present perfect progressive in writing. (Charts 3-1 and 3-2)

Directions: Choose one to write about.

1. Write about your first day in this class. What did you see, hear, feel, think? Then write about what you have done and have been doing in this class since the first day.
2. Describe your last week at home before you came to this city/country. Then describe what you have done and have been doing since you arrived here.

### 3-3 PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Past Perfect Expression</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>Sam had already left by the time Ann got there.</td>
<td>The past perfect expresses an activity that was completed before another activity or time in the past.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>The thief simply walked in. Someone had forgotten to lock the door.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>Sam had already left when Ann got there.</td>
<td>In (c): First: Sam left. Second: Ann got there.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td>Sam had left before Ann got there.</td>
<td>If either before or after is used in the sentence, the past perfect is often not necessary because the time relationship is already clear. The simple past may be used, as in (e) and (g). Note: (d) and (e) have the same meaning; (f) and (g) have the same meaning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e)</td>
<td>Sam left before Ann got there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f)</td>
<td>After the guests had left, I went to bed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g)</td>
<td>After the guests left, I went to bed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Sam had already left when Ann got to the cafeteria.
EXERCISE 14. Contracting HAD. (Appendix Chart C)

Directions: The auxiliary verb had (but not the main verb had) is usually contracted with personal pronouns in both speaking and informal writing. Had is also often contracted with nouns and other words in informal speaking, but not in writing. (See Appendix Chart C, p. A17.) Practice pronouncing contracted had in these sentences.

1. We'd never seen it before. He'd never seen it. They'd never seen it.
2. I'd never seen it before. I'd like to see it again.*
3. We got home late. The children had already fallen asleep.
4. My roommates had finished dinner by the time I got home.
5. My roommates had dinner early.
6. We couldn't cross the river. The flood had washed away the bridge.
7. You were at Jim's at eight. Where had you been before that?
8. Who had been there before you?

EXERCISE 15. Simple past vs. past perfect. (Charts 2-9 and 3-3)

Directions: Use the simple past or the past perfect to complete the sentences. Are there some blanks where either tense is possible?

1. Sam (be) _____________ a newspaper reporter before he (become) _____________ a businessman.
2. I (feel) _____________ a little better after I (take) _____________ the medicine.
3. I was late. The teacher (give, already) _____________ a quiz when I (get) _____________ to class.
4. It was raining hard, but by the time class (be) _____________ over, the rain (stop) _____________
5. Millions of years ago, dinosaurs (roam) _____________ the earth, but they (become) _____________ extinct by the time humankind first (appear) _____________

*COMPARE: I'd seen = I had seen ('d + past participle = past perfect)
I'd like = I would like ('d + simple form = would)
6. I (see, never) ______________ any of Picasso's paintings before I (visit) ______________ the art museum.

7. Yesterday at a restaurant, I (see) ______________ Pam Donnelly, an old friend of mine. I (see, not) ______________ ______________ her in years. At first, I (recognize, not) ______________ ______________ her because she (lose) ______________ a great deal of weight.

8. In 1980, my parents (emigrate) ______________ to the United States from China. They (travel, never) ______________ ______________ outside of China and were, of course, excited by the challenge of relocating in a foreign country. Eventually, they (settle) ______________ in California. My sister and I were born there and (grow) ______________ ______________ up there. Last year, I (go) ______________ to China for the first time to study at Beijing University. I (want, always) ______________ ______________ to visit China and learn more about my own family background. My dream was finally realized.

EXERCISE 16. Past perfect. (Chart 3-3)
Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

1. I had never . . . before I . . .
2. By the time . . . , he had already . . .
3. I had never . . . until I . . .
4. My . . . after I had already . . .
5. The movie had . . . by the time we . . .
6. In (year), I . . . Prior to that time, I had . . .
7. When I . . . , someone else had already . . .
8. Last (month), I . . . Before that, I had never . . .

3-4 PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

(a) The police had been looking for the criminal for two years before they caught him.
(b) Eric finally came at six o'clock. I had been waiting for him since four-thirty.
(c) When Judy got home, her hair was still wet because she had been swimming.
(d) I went to Jane's house after the funeral. Her eyes were red because she had been crying.

The past perfect progressive emphasizes the duration of an activity that was in progress before another activity or time in the past.

This tense also may express an activity in progress close in time to another activity or time in the past.
EXERCISE 17. Present perfect progressive and past perfect progressive.
(Charts 3-2 and 3-4)
Directions: Use the present perfect progressive or the past perfect progressive to complete the sentences.

1. We have been waiting for Nancy for the last two hours, but she still hasn't arrived.
2. We had been waiting for Nancy for over three hours before she finally arrived yesterday.
3. It is midnight. I have studied for five straight hours. No wonder I'm getting tired.
4. It was midnight. I studied for five straight hours. No wonder I was getting tired.
5. Jack suddenly realized that the teacher was asking him a question. He couldn't answer because he had been daydreaming for the last ten minutes.
6. Wake up! You have slept long enough. It's time to get up.

EXERCISE 18. Review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 3)
Directions: In pairs or groups, discuss the meaning of the verb forms and answer the questions about the pairs of sentences.

1. a. Dan was leaving the room when I walked in.
   b. Sam had left the room when I walked in.
   QUESTION: Who did I run into when I walked into the room?
   ANSWER: Dan.

2. a. When the rain stopped, Gloria was riding her bicycle to work.
   b. When the rain stopped, Paul rode his bicycle to work.
   QUESTION: Who got wet on the way to work?

3. a. Ken went to the store because he was running out of food.
   b. Ann went to the store because she had run out of food.
   QUESTION: Who is better at planning ahead?

4. a. Ms. Lincoln taught at this school for nine years.
   b. Mr. Sanchez has taught at this school for nine years.
   QUESTION: Who is teaching at this school now?

5. a. Alice was walking to the door when the doorbell rang.
   b. George walked to the door when the doorbell rang.
   QUESTION: Who had been expecting the doorbell to ring?

6. a. When I got there, Marie had eaten.
   b. When I got there, Joe ate.
   QUESTION: Who was still hungry when I got there?

7. a. Donna lived in Chicago for five years.
   b. Carlos has been living in Chicago for five years.
   QUESTION: Who still lives in Chicago?
8. a. Jane put some lotion on her face because she had been lying in the sun.
   b. Sue put some lotion on her face because she was lying in the sun.
   QUESTION: Who put lotion on her face after she finished sunbathing?

9. a. I looked across the street. Mr. Fox was waving at me.
   b. I looked across the street. Mrs. Cook waved at me.
   QUESTION: Who began to wave at me before I looked across the street?

EXERCISE 19. Error analysis: present and past verbs. (Chapters 1 → 3)
Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Since I came to this country, I am learning a lot about the way of life here.
2. Before I come here, I never was buying anything from a vending machine.
3. I arrive here only a short time ago. I am here only since last Friday.
4. When I arrived here, I hadn't known much about the United States. I saw many movies about America, but that wasn't enough.
5. My understanding of this country changed a lot since I arrived.
6. When I was in my country, I had coached a children's soccer team. When I came here, I had wanted to do the same thing. Now I am coaching a soccer team at a local elementary school. I am coaching this team for the last two months.
7. My grandfather had lived in a small village in Italy when he was a child. At nineteen, he had moved to Rome, where he had met and had married my grandmother in 1947. My father had been born in Rome in 1950. I am born in Rome in 1979.
8. I'm living in my cousin's apartment since I have arrived here. I'm not able to find my own apartment yet. I look at several places for rent, but I don't find one that I can afford.
9. How long you been living here? I been here for almost two year.
10. Why you no have been in class the last couple of days?

EXERCISE 20. Activity: using verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 3)
Directions: From the given situation, make up a "chain story." One person begins the story; then others continue the story in turn, using the cue words in the given list. Work in groups or as a class.

Example: (Pierre) had a terrible day yesterday. The trouble began early in the morning.
   His alarm clock rang at 7:00.
   CUE: when
   SPEAKER A: When his alarm clock rang, he got out of bed and stepped on a snake. He was nearly frightened to death, but the snake slithered away without biting him.
CUE: after
SPEAKER B: After the snake left, Pierre got dressed in a hurry and ran downstairs to have breakfast.
CUE: while
SPEAKER C: While he was running downstairs, he fell and broke his arm.
Etc.

Possible situations to begin chain stories:
1. (...) had a terrible day yesterday.
2. (...) had a great vacation last summer.
3. (...) got into a lot of trouble a couple of days ago.
4. (...) had an interesting experience last week.
5. (Make up the beginning of a story.)

Cue words (may be used in any order):
1. when 6. as soon as 11. after that
2. after 7. already 12. later
3. before 8. never 13. for (a length of time)
4. while 9. then 14. since
5. by the time 10. next 15. because

☐ EXERCISE 21. Activity: using verb tenses. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)
Directions: Form a group and sit in a circle. Take out a piece of paper and write the following sentence, using the name of the person sitting to your right.
(...) had a strange experience yesterday.

Then write two or three additional sentences, and pass your paper to the person sitting to your left, who will continue the story. Continue to pass the papers to the left until everyone in the group has had a chance to write part of the story.

Then decide which story in your group is the most entertaining or the most interesting. As a group, make any necessary corrections in grammar or spelling. Read the story aloud to the rest of the class.

NOTE: You may wish to establish a time limit for each contribution to the story. When the time limit is up, each person must pass on his/her paper even if it contains an unfinished sentence. The next person will then have to finish the sentence and continue writing the story.

☐ EXERCISE 22. Using verb tenses in writing. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)
Directions: Choose one to write about.

1. Describe the state of the world in the year of your birth. What significant or historical events occurred or were occurring at that time? Who were the leaders of your country? Then describe the changes that have occurred since that time and discuss the state of the world today.

2. Describe your family in the year you were born. Where were they living and working? Were they in a good situation? Who did your family consist of? Who in your family hadn't been born yet? Then describe the changes in your family that have occurred since the year of your birth and your family's current situation.
CHAPTER 4
Future Time

CONTENTS

4-1 Simple future: will and be going to
4-2 Will vs. be going to
4-3 Expressing the future in time clauses
4-4 Using the present progressive and the simple present to express future time
4-5 Future progressive
4-6 Future perfect
4-7 Future perfect progressive

4-1 SIMPLE FUTURE: WILL AND BE GOING TO

(a) Jack will finish his work tomorrow.
(b) Jack is going to finish his work tomorrow.
(c) Anna will not be here tomorrow.
(d) Anna won't be here tomorrow.

Will or be going to is used to express future time.* In speech, going to is often pronounced "gonna." In (d): The contracted form of will + not is won't.

*The use of shall with / or we to express future time is possible but uncommon in American English. Shall is used more frequently in British English than in American English.

EXERCISE 1. Simple future. (Chart 4-1)

Directions: Will is usually contracted with personal pronouns in both speaking and informal writing. Will is often contracted with nouns and with other words in speaking, but not in writing. Practice pronouncing contracted will in these sentences.

1. I'll come. He'll come. You'll come.
2. She'll help us. They'll help us too.
3. I'm sure we'll do well on the test.
4. It'll probably rain tomorrow.
5. Bob will ("Bob'll") be here soon.
6. The weather will be hot in August.
7. Mary will come tomorrow.
8. Bill will be here too.
9. The children will be home at 3:00.
10. Who will be at the meeting?
11. Where will you be around five?
12. How long will Tom be here?
13. Nobody will recognize you in that wig.
14. That will be a lot of fun.
15. What will you do?
### 4-2 WILL vs. BE GOING TO

To express a PREDICTION: Use either WILL or BE GOING TO.

(a) According to the weather report, it **will** be cloudy tomorrow.
(b) According to the weather report, it **is going to be** cloudy tomorrow.
(c) Be careful! You **will** hurt yourself!
(d) Watch out! You're **going to hurt** yourself!

When the speaker is making a prediction (a statement about something s/he thinks will be true or will occur in the future), either will or be going to is possible. There is no difference in meaning between (a) and (b). There is no difference in meaning between (c) and (d).

To express a PRIOR PLAN: Use only BE GOING TO.

(e) A: Why did you buy this paint?
   B: I'm **going to paint** my bedroom tomorrow.
(f) I talked to Bob yesterday. He is tired of taking the bus to work. He's **going to buy** a car. That's what he told me.

When the speaker is expressing a prior plan (something the speaker intends to do in the future because in the past s/he has made a plan or decision to do it), only be going to is used.*

In (e): Speaker B has made a prior plan. Last week she decided to paint her bedroom. She intends to paint it tomorrow.
In (f): The speaker knows Bob intends to buy a car. Bob made the decision in the past, and he plans to act on this decision in the future.
Will is not appropriate in (e) and (f).

To express WILLINGNESS: Use only WILL.

(g) A: The phone's ringing.
   B: I'll **get** it
(h) A: I don't understand this problem.
   B: Ask your teacher about it. She **will help** you.

In (g): Speaker B is saying "I am willing; I am happy to get the phone." He is not making a prediction. He has made no prior plan to answer the phone. He is, instead, volunteering to answer the phone and uses will to show his willingness.
In (h): Speaker B feels sure about the teacher's willingness to help. Be going to is not appropriate in (g) and (h).

*COMPARE:

**Situation 1:**
A: Are you busy this evening?
   B: Yes. I'm **going to meet** Jack at the library at seven. We're **going to study** together.
In Situation 1, only be going to is possible. The speaker has a prior plan, so he uses be going to.

**Situation 2:**
A: Are you busy this evening?
   B: Well, I really haven't made any plans. I'll **eat** OR I'm **going to eat** dinner, of course. And then I'll probably watch OR I'm probably going to watch TV for a little while.
In Situation 2, either will or be going to is possible. Speaker B has not planned his evening. He is "predicting" his evening (rather than stating any prior plans), so he may use either will or be going to.

### EXERCISE 2. WILL vs. BE GOING TO. (Chart 4-2)

**PART I. EXPRESSING PREDICTIONS**

Use will and/or be going to with the verb in parentheses.

1. Sue **(graduate)** **will graduate/is going to graduate** in June. After that, she **(begin)** **will begin/is going to begin** work at an electronics firm.
2. Fred **(be)** **at the meeting tomorrow. I think Jane **(come)** too.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation 1: Are you busy this evening?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A: Are you busy this evening?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: Yes. I'm going to meet Jack at the library at seven. We're going to study together.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Situation 1, only be going to is possible. The speaker has a prior plan, so he uses be going to.

**Situation 2:**
A: Are you busy this evening?
   B: Well, I really haven't made any plans. I'll eat OR I'm going to eat dinner, of course. And then I'll probably watch OR I'm probably going to watch TV for a little while.
In Situation 2, either will or be going to is possible. Speaker B has not planned his evening. He is "predicting" his evening (rather than stating any prior plans), so he may use either will or be going to.
3. A: Can you give Ed a message for me?
   B: Sure. I (see, probably) ________________ him at the meeting this evening.

4. A: Mr. Swan (be, not) ________________, here next term. He has resigned. Who (be) ________________ the new teacher? Do you know?
   B: Yes. Ms. Mary Jefferson. Ms. Jefferson (teach) ________________ the same courses Mr. Swan taught: English, algebra, and geometry. I (be) __________ __________ in her algebra class.

5. In what ways (the damage we do to our environment today, affect) ________________ the quality of life for future generations?

PART II. EXPRESSING PRIOR PLAN VS. WILLINGNESS
Use be going to if you think the speaker is expressing a prior plan. If you think she/he has no prior plan, use will.

6. A: This letter is in French, and I don't speak French. Can you help me?
   B: Sure. I (translate) __________ will translate __________ it for you.

7. A: Do you want to go shopping with me? I (go) __________ am going to __________ go __________ to the shopping mall downtown.
   B: Sure. What time do you want to leave?

8. A: Who wants to erase the board?
   Are there any volunteers?
   B: I (do) ______________ it!
   C: I (do) ______________ it!

9. A: Why does he have an eraser in his hand?
   B: He (erase) ______________ the board.
10. A: How about getting together for dinner after work?
   B: Sounds good. Where?
   A: How about Alice's Restaurant or the Gateway Cafe? You decide.
   B: Alice's Restaurant. I (meet)____________________you there around six.
   A: Great.

11. A: Do you have plans for dinner?
   B: Yes. I (meet*)____________________ a co-worker for dinner at Alice's Restaurant.
      Want to join us?

12. A: This light doesn't work. The bulb is probably burned out. Do we have any new
    light bulbs?
   B: I (get)_____________________________one for you.
   A: Thanks.

13. A: I (enroll) ______________in the community college next spring.
    B: Oh? I didn't know you wanted to go back to school.
    A: I need to sharpen my skills so I can get a better job. I (take)______________
       a course in word processing.

14. A: Uh, oh! I've spilled coffee on my shirt!
    B: Just a minute. I (get)_____________________________a damp cloth for you.

15. A: Janice, do you want to come with us?
    B: I can't. I have to study.
    A: Oh, c'mon! You can't study all day and all night.
    B: All right, I (go)_____________________________with you. I guess I can finish this stuff
       tomorrow.

16. A: I (sell)___________________________my bicycle. I have to.
    B: What? Why? You need your bicycle to get to work.
    A: I know. But I need money right now to pay for my baby's doctor and medicine.
    I can walk to work.

17. A: How do you spell "accustomed"?
    B: I'm not sure. I (look)________________________it up for you.
   A: Thanks.

*When be going to expresses a prior plan, it is often also possible to use the present
progressive with no change in meaning. See Chart 4-4, p. 57. There is no difference in meaning
between these sentences:
I am going to meet Larry at Alice's Restaurant at six.
I am meeting Larry at Alice's Restaurant at six.
## 4-3 EXPRESSING THE FUTURE IN TIME CLAUSES

| (a) | Bob will come soon. *When Bob comes,* we will see him. |
| (b) | Linda is going to leave soon. *Before she leaves,* she is going to finish her work. |
| (c) | I will get home at 5:30. *After I get home,* I will eat dinner. |
| (d) | The taxi will arrive soon. *As soon as it arrives,* we’ll be able to leave for the airport. |
| (e) | They are going to come soon. I’ll wait here *until they come.* |

| In (a): *When Bob comes* is a time clause.*  |
| *when + subject + verb = a time clause*  |
| Will or *be going to* is NOT used in a time clause. The meaning of the clause is future, but the **simple present** tense is used. |

| (f) | *While I am traveling in Europe next year,* I’m going to save money by staying in youth hostels. |

| A time clause begins with such words as *when, before, after, as soon as, until, while* and includes a subject and a verb. The time clause can come either at the beginning of the sentence or in the second part of the sentence:  |
| *When he comes,* we’ll see him. OR  |
| We’ll see him *when he comes.* |

| (g) | I will go to bed *after I finish* my work.  |
| (h) | I will go to bed *after I have finished* my work.  |

| Occasionally, the present perfect is used in a time clause, as in (h). Examples (g) and (h) have the same meaning. The present perfect in the time clause emphasizes the completion of the act before the other act occurs in the future. |

*A "time clause" is an adverb clause. See Charts 5-1 (p. 70), 5-2 (p. 72), and 17-1 (p. 359) for more information.*

### EXERCISE 3. Expressing the future in time clauses. (Chart 4-3)

**Directions:** Find the time clause in each sentence. Draw brackets [* . . *] around it and underline the verb in the time clause. Identify and discuss the use of verb tenses.

1. *We’ll be here* [when you *arrive tomorrow.*]  
2. After the rain stops, I’m going to sweep the front porch.  
3. I’m going to start making dinner before my wife gets home from work today.  
4. I’m going to wait right here until Jessica comes.  
5. As soon as the war is over, there will be great joy throughout the land.  
6. Right now the tide is low, but when the tide comes in, the ship will leave the harbor.  
7. While I’m driving to work tomorrow, I’m going to listen to my Greek language tapes.

### EXERCISE 4. Expressing the future in time clauses. (Chart 4-3)

**Directions:** Use *will I be going to* or the simple present. (In this exercise, both *will* and *be going to* are possible when a future tense is necessary, with little or no difference in meaning.)

1. Peter is going to leave in half an hour. He *(finish) will finish / is going to finish* all of his work before he *(leave) leaves*  
2. I’m going to eat lunch at 12:30. After I *(eat) eat* , I *(take, probably) take, probably* a nap.
3. I'll get home around six. When I (get) _________ home, I (call) _________ Sharon.

4. I'm going to watch a TV program at nine, but before I (watch) _____________ the program, I (write) _____________ a letter to my parents.

5. Gary will come soon. I (wait) _____________ here until he (come) _____________.

6. I'm sure it will stop raining soon. As soon as the rain (stop) _____________, I (walk) _____________ to the store to get some film.

7. I'm a junior in college this year. After I (graduate) _____________ with a B.A. next year, I (intend) _____________ to enter graduate school and work for an M.A. Perhaps I (go) _____________ on for a Ph.D. after I (get) _____________ my Master's degree.

8. I (listen) _____________ to English language tapes while I (sleep) _____________ tonight. Do you think it will help me learn English faster?

9. A: How long (you, stay) _____________ in this country?

B: I (plan) _____________ to be here for about one more year. I (hope) _____________ to graduate a year from this June.

A: What (you, do) _____________ after you (leave) _____________?

B: I (return) _____________ home and (get) _____________ a job. How about you?

A: I (be) _____________ here for at least two more years before I (return) _____________ home and (get) _____________ a job.
Exercise 5. Expressing the future in time clauses. (Chart 4-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

1. When I . . . later this afternoon, I . . .
   → When I go downtown later this afternoon, I'm going to go to the bank and the post office.

2. After I . . . tomorrow morning, I . . .

3. Tomorrow, I . . . before I . . .

4. I . . . when . . . next year.

5. As soon as class . . ., I'm going to . . .

6. I'm not going to . . . until my friend . . .

7. When I . . . tomorrow, I . . .

8. While I'm visiting . . . next week, I . . .

---

4-4 Using the Present Progressive and the Simple Present to Express Future Time

**Present Progressive**

(a) My wife has an appointment with a doctor. She is seeing Dr. North next Tuesday.

(b) Sam has already made his plans. He is leaving at noon tomorrow.

(c) A: What are you going to do this afternoon?
   B: After lunch I am meeting a friend of mine. We are going shopping. Would you like to come along?

**Simple Present**

(d) The museum opens at ten tomorrow morning.

(e) Classes begin next week.

(f) John's plane arrives at 6:05 P.M. next Monday.

The present progressive may be used to express future time when the idea of the sentence concerns a planned event or definite intention.

(COMPARE: A verb such as rain is not used in the present progressive to indicate future time because rain is not a planned event.)

A future meaning for the present progressive tense is indicated either by future time words in the sentence or by the context.

The simple present can also be used to express future time in a sentence concerning events that are on a definite schedule or timetable. These sentences usually contain future time words. Only a few verbs are used in this way: e.g., open, close, begin, end, start, finish, arrive, leave, come, return.

---

Exercise 6. Using the present progressive and the simple present to express future time. (Chart 4-4)

Directions: Indicate the meaning expressed by the italicized verbs by writing in the future, now, or habitually in the blanks.

1. I am taking four courses next semester.  ____________

2. I am taking four courses this semester.  ____________

3. Students usually take four courses every semester.  ____________

4. I'll mail this letter at the corner when I take Susan home.  ____________

5. My brother's birthday is next week. I am giving him a sweater.  ____________

6. Shhh. The broadcaster is giving the latest news about the crisis in England. I want to hear what she's saying.  ____________

Future Time 57
7. When I *graduate*, I'm going to return home.

8. When students *graduate*, they receive diplomas.

9. I'm tired. *I am going to bed* early tonight.

10. When *I am* in New York, I'm going to visit the Museum of Modern Art.

11. When *I am* home alone in the evening, I like to read or watch television.

12. A: Are you busy?  
   B: Not really.  
   A: *What are you doing?*  
   B: *I'm writing* a letter to my folks.  
   A: When you *finish* your letter, do you want to play a game of chess?

13. A: *What are you doing* after work today?  
   B: *I'm playing* tennis with Brown at the health club.  
   *And you?*  
   A: *I'm meeting* Smith for a round of golf.

14. Tony *will arrive* at eight tomorrow evening.

15. Tony *is going to arrive* at eight tomorrow night.

16. Tony *is arriving* at eight tomorrow evening.

17. Tony *arrives* at eight tomorrow evening.

18. When Tony *arrives*, we'll have a party.
EXERCISE 7. Using the present progressive to express future time. (Chart 4-4)

Directions: Use the present progressive to complete the sentences. Use any verb that makes sense.

1. A: How about going across the street for a cup of coffee?
   B: I can't. I am meeting Jennifer at the library at 5:00.

2. A: Why are you in such a hurry?
   B: I have to be at the airport in an hour. I am taking the 4 o'clock plane to New York. I have an important meeting there tomorrow.

3. A: We got an invitation in the mail from Ron and Maureen. They are having a dinner party next Saturday evening. Do you want to go? I'd like to.
   B: Sure. I always enjoy spending time with them. Let's call and tell them we are going.

4. A: Your cough sounds terrible! You should see a doctor.
   B: I know. It just won't go away. I am going to see Dr. Murray later this afternoon.

5. A: Have you seen Jackie?
   B: She just left. She has some shopping to do, and then she is going to the health club for her yoga class. She should be back around 4:30.

6. A: Where are you and your family going for your vacation this summer?
   B: Ontario.
   A: Are you planning to fly?
   B: No, we are driving so we can take our time and enjoy the scenery.

7. A: We're going to a soccer match next week.
   B: Who are you going to see?
   A: A team from Brazil and a team from Argentina. It ought to be a really exciting game.

8. A: I see you're smoking. I thought you stopped last month.
   B: I did. I don't know why I started again. I am going to quit again tomorrow, and this time I mean it.

*When who is used as the subject of a question, the verb is singular. See Appendix Chart B-2, p. A9.
EXERCISE 8. Using the present progressive to express future time. (Chart 4-4)

Directions: Answer the questions. Practice using the present progressive to express future time.

1. What are your plans for the rest of today?
2. What are your plans for tomorrow?
3. Do you have any travel plans? What are they?
4. Think of someone you know. Does this person have any plans that you are aware of?

EXERCISE 9. Using the present progressive and the simple present to express future time. (Chart 4-4)

Directions: Pretend that you are going to take your ideal vacation next week. All of your plans are made, and your itinerary is in front of you. Write your travel plans. Use present tenses where appropriate.

Example: This coming Saturday I am beginning my "vacation of a lifetime." The first place I'm going to is Bali. My plane leaves at six-thirty Saturday morning. I arrive in Bali late that afternoon. I'm staying at the Nusa Dua Beach Hotel. I leave Bali on the fifteenth and travel to the Philippines. While I'm there, I'm staying with some friends. Etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4-5 FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) I will begin to study at seven. You will come at eight. <strong>I will be studying</strong> when you come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Right now I am sitting in class. <strong>At this same time tomorrow, I will be sitting</strong> in class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Don't call me at nine because I won't be home. <strong>I am going to be studying</strong> at the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Don't get impatient. She <strong>will be coming</strong> soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Don't get impatient. She <strong>will come</strong> soon.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The future progressive expresses an activity that will be in progress at a time in the future.

The progressive form of **be going to**: **be going to + be + -ing**

Sometimes there is little or no difference between the future progressive and the simple future, especially when the future event will occur at an indefinite time in the future, as in (d) and (e).

EXERCISE 10. Using the future progressive. (Chart 4-5)

Directions: Use the future progressive or the simple present.

1. Right now I am attending class. Yesterday at this time, I was attending class. Tomorrow at this time, I **(attend)______________________** class.

2. Tomorrow I'm going to leave for home. When I **(arrive)______________________** at the airport, my whole family **(wait)______________________** for me.
3. When I (get) ______ up tomorrow morning, the sun (shine) _______, the birds (sing) ________, and my roommate (lie, still) ________, in bed fast asleep.

4. A: When do you leave for Florida?
   B: Tomorrow. Just think! Two days from now
   I (lie) ________ on the beach in the sun.
   A: Sounds great! I (think) ________ about you.

5. A: How can I get in touch with you while you're out of town?
   B: I (stay) ________ at the Pilgrim Hotel. You can reach me there.

6. Next year at this time, I (do) ________ exactly what I am doing now. I (attend) ________ school and (study) ________ hard next year.

7. Look at those dark clouds. When class (be) ________ over, it (rain, probably) ________.

8. A: Are you going to be in town next Saturday?
   B: No. I (visit, in Chicago)* ________ my aunt.

9. A: Where are you going to be this evening?
   B: I (work, at the library) ________ on my research paper.

10. A: Do you think life will be very different 100 years from now?
    B: Of course. I can picture it in my mind. People (live) ________ in modular mobile residential units that they can take with them if they have to move, and they (drive) ________ air cars that can go at tremendous speeds.
    A: That sounds pretty far-fetched to me. Why would people want to take their houses with them when they move?

*Expressions of place can often be used between the helping verb and the main verb in progressive tenses. See Chart 2-12, p. 31.
4-6 FUTURE PERFECT

(a) I will graduate in June. I will see you in July. By the time I see you, I will have graduated. The future perfect expresses an activity that will be completed before another time or event in the future. (Note: by the time introduces a time clause; the simple present is used in a time clause.)

(b) I will have finished my homework by the time I go out on a date tonight.

4-7 FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

(c) I will go to bed at ten P.M. Ed will get home at midnight. At midnight I will be sleeping. I will have been sleeping for two hours by the time Ed gets home. The future perfect progressive emphasizes the duration of an activity that will be in progress before another time or event in the future.

(d) When Professor Jones retires next month, he will have taught for 45 years.

(e) When Professor Jones retires next month, he will have been teaching for 45 years. Sometimes the future perfect and the future perfect progressive have the same meaning, as in (d) and (e). Also, notice that the activity expressed by either of these two tenses may begin in the past.

Exercise 11. Perfect and perfect progressive tenses. (Chapter 3; Charts 4-6 and 4-7)
Directions: Use any appropriate tense.

1. Ann and Andy got married on June 1st.
   Today is June 14th. They (be) ______________ married for two weeks.
   By June 7th, they (be) ______________ married for one week.
   By June 28th, they (be) ______________ married for four weeks.

2. This traffic is terrible. We're going to be late. By the time we (get) __________ to the airport, Bob's plane (arrive, already*)__________________________, and he'll be wondering where we are.

3. The traffic was very heavy. By the time we (get) __________ to the airport, Bob's plane (arrive, already)__________________________.

*With the future perfect, already has two possible midsentence positions:
   I will already have finished.
   I will have already finished.
4. This morning I came to class at 9:00. Right now it is 10:00, and I am still in class. I (sit) ______________ at this desk for an hour. By 9:30, I (sit) ______________ here for a half an hour. By 11:00, I (sit) ______________ here for two hours.

5. I'm getting tired of sitting in the car. Do you realize that by the time we arrive in Phoenix, we (drive) ______________ for twenty straight hours?

6. Margaret was born in 1975. By 1995, she (live) ______________ on this earth for 20 years. By the year 2025, she (live) ______________ on this earth for 50 years.

7. Go ahead and leave on your vacation. Don't worry about this work. By the time you (get) ______________ back, we (take) ______________ care of everything.

8. I don't understand how those marathon runners do it! The race began more than an hour ago. By the time they reach the finish line, they (run) ______________ steadily for more than two hours. I don't think I can run more than two minutes!

9. What? He got married again? At this rate, he (have) ______________ a dozen wives by the time he (die) ______________.

10. We have been married for a long time. By our next anniversary, we (be) ______________ married for 43 years.

EXERCISE 12. Review: future time. (Charts 4-1 → 4-7)

Directions: These sentences describe typical events in a day in the life of a man named Bill. The sentences are in the past, but all of these things will happen in Bill's life tomorrow. Change all of the sentences to the future.

1. When Bill got up yesterday morning, the sun was shining. And tomorrow?
   → When Bill gets up tomorrow morning, the sun will be shining.

2. He shaved and showered, and then made a light breakfast. And tomorrow?

3. After he ate breakfast yesterday, he got ready to go to work. And tomorrow?

4. By the time he got to work yesterday, he had drunk three cups of coffee. And tomorrow?

5. Between 8:00 and 9:00, Bill answered his e-mail and planned his day. And tomorrow?

6. By 10:00 yesterday, he had called new clients. And tomorrow?

7. At 11:00 yesterday, he was attending a staff meeting. And tomorrow?

8. He went to lunch at noon and had a sandwich and a bowl of soup. And tomorrow?

9. After he finished eating, he took a short walk in the park before he returned to the office. And tomorrow?
10. He worked at his desk until he went to another meeting in the middle of the afternoon. And tomorrow?
11. By the time he left the office, he had attended three meetings. And tomorrow?
12. When Bill got home, his children were playing in the yard. And tomorrow?
13. They had been playing since 3:00 in the afternoon. And tomorrow?
14. As soon as he finished dinner, he took the children for a walk to a nearby playground. And tomorrow?
15. Afterward, the whole family sat in the living room and discussed their day. And tomorrow?
16. They watched television for a while, and then he and his wife put the kids to bed. And tomorrow?
17. By the time Bill went to bed yesterday, he had had a full day and was ready for sleep. And tomorrow?

EXERCISE 13. Review: future time. (Chapter 4)

Directions: What do you think the world will be like a hundred years from now? What changes will have occurred between then and now? Use your imagination and make some predictions.

Possible topics:

1. means of transportation
2. sources of energy
3. population growth
4. food sources
5. extinction of animal species
6. architecture
7. clothing styles
8. exploration of the oceans; of the earth's interior
9. space exploration; contact with beings from outer space
10. weapon technology
11. role of computers in daily life
12. long-term solutions to today's political crises
13. international language
14. international world government

NOTE: You may wish to make comparisons among the past, the present, and the future. For example:

A hundred years ago, the automobile hadn't been invented. Today it is one of the most common means of transportation and has greatly changed the way people lead their lives. By the year________, the automobile will have become obsolete. A hundred years from now, people will use small, jet-propelled, wingless flying machines in place of cars.
EXERCISE 1. Error analysis: review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 4)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. I am studying here since last January.

2. By the time I return to my country, I am away from home for more than three years.

3. As soon as I will graduate, I going to return to my hometown.

4. By the end of the 21st century, scientists will had discovered the cure for the common cold.

5. I want to get married, but I don’t meet the right person yet.

6. I have been seeing that movie three times, and now I am wanting to see it again.

7. Last night, I have had dinner with two friend. I knew both of them for a long time.

8. I am not like my job at the restaurant. My brother wants me to change it. I am thinking he is right.

9. So far this week, the teachers are giving us a lot of homework every day.

10. There are more than forty presidents of the United States since it became a country.

    George Washington had been the first president. He was become the president in 1789.

11. While I will be studying tonight, I’m going to listen to Beethoven’s Seventh Symphony.

12. We washed the dishes and clean up the kitchen after our dinner guests were leaving.

13. My neighbors are Mr. and Mrs. Jones. I know them ever since I am a child.

15. Many scientists believe there is a major earthquake in California in the next few years.

16. When I got home to my apartment last night,

   I use my key to open the door as usual. But the door didn't open. I trying my key again and again with no luck. So I am knocking on the door for my wife to let me in. Finally the door opens, but I don't saw my wife on the other side. I saw a stranger. I had been try to get into the wrong apartment! I quickly apologizing and am went to my own apartment.

EXERCISE 2. Review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 > 4)

Directions: Discuss the differences (if any) in meaning in these groups of sentences. Some of the sentences need to be completed to make their meanings clear.

1. a. He watches television.
   b. He is watching television.

2. a. I am sitting in class ....
   b. I was sitting in class ....

3. a. I have finished my homework.
   b. I had finished my homework ....
   c. I will have finished my homework ....

4. a. The students had left before the teacher arrived.
   b. The students left before the teacher arrived.
   c. The students had left when the teacher arrived.
   d. The students left when the teacher arrived.
   e. The students were leaving when the teacher arrived.

5. a. I have been waiting for her for two hours.
   b. I had been waiting for her for two hours ....
   c. I will have been waiting for her for two hours ....

6. a. Ali has been studying Chapter Five.
   b. He has studied Chapter Two.
   c. He studied Chapter Two ....

7. a. She has been doing a lot of research on that project.
   b. She has done a lot of research on that project.
8. a. I will study when you come.
b. I am going to study when you come.
c. I will be studying when you come.
d. I am going to be studying when you come.
e. I will have studied by the time you come.
f. I will have been studying for two hours by the time you come.

9. a. He worked for that company for two years.
b. He has been working for that company for two years.

10. a. The train will leave at 10:00 tomorrow morning.
b. The train is going to leave at 10:00 tomorrow morning.
c. The train leaves at 10:00 tomorrow morning.
d. The train is leaving at 10:00 tomorrow morning.

□ EXERCISE 3. Review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 4)

Directions: In order to practice verb tenses, answer the questions in complete sentences.
The questioner's book is open. The answerer's book is closed. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class. If you use this exercise in pairwork, switch roles after Item 9.

1. What have we been studying? What is one tense we have studied since the beginning of the term? When, to the best of your recollection, did we study it?
2. What else will we have studied in this class by the time the term ends?
3. This class began on (date). Had you studied verb tenses before that?
4. We're going to finish studying Chapter 5 on (day or date). How long will we have been studying Chapter 5 by that time?
5. What were you doing at this time yesterday? What did you do after that?
6. What are you doing right now? How long have you been doing that?
7. What are you going to be doing at this time tomorrow?
8. What will you be doing tonight at midnight? What were you doing last night at midnight?
9. Where will you be living three years from now? Where were you living three years ago? Can you name one specific thing you did three years ago? Can you name one specific thing you will do three years from now?
10. What places have you been to since you came to (this city)?
11. Make some generalizations about things you do.
12. What are some things you have done many times since you came to (this city)?
13. What are some of the things you have done in your lifetime? When did you do them?
14. What have you done that no one else in this class (or in the world) has ever done?
15. What is the exact place you are sitting right now?
   How long have you been sitting there today?
   How long will you have been sitting there by the time class is over?
   How often do you sit there during class?
   How many times have you sat there?
   Before today, when did you last sit there?
   Had you sat there before that?
   Where were you sitting at this time yesterday?
   Where are you going to be sitting at this time tomorrow?
EXERCISE 4. Review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 4)

Directions: Use any appropriate tense of the verbs in parentheses.

1. John is in my English class. He (study)_________________________ English this semester. He (take, also)____________________________ some other classes.
   His classes (begin)________________________ at 9:00 every day.

2. Yesterday John ate breakfast at 8:00. He (eat, already)_________________________ breakfast when he (leave)_________________________ for class at 8:45. He (eat, always)_________________________ breakfast before he (go)_________________________ to class.
   Tomorrow before he (go)_________________________ to class, he (eat)_________________________ breakfast.

3. John is in class every morning from 9:00 to 12:00. Two days ago, I (call)__________ him at 11:30, but I could not reach him because he (attend)_________________________.

4. Don't try to call John at 11:30 tomorrow morning because he (attend)_________________________ class at that time.

5. Yesterday John took a nap from 1:00 to 2:00. I arrived at 1:45. When I (get)_________________________ there, John (sleep)_________________________. He (sleep)________________________ for 45 minutes by the time I got there.

6. Right now John (take)_________________________ a nap. He (fall)_________________________ asleep an hour ago. He (sleep)_________________________ for an hour.

7. Three days ago, John (start)_________________________ to read A Farewell to Arms, a novel by Ernest Hemingway. It is a long novel. He (finish, not)_________________________.
   reading it yet. He (read)_________________________ it because his English teacher assigned it.

8. Since the beginning of the semester, John (read)_________________________ three novels. Right now he (read)_________________________ A Farewell to Arms. He (read)_________________________ that novel for the past three days. He (intend)_________________________ to finish it next week. In his lifetime, he (read)_________________________ many novels, but this is the first Hemingway novel he (read, ever)_________________________.

9. Tomorrow, after he (eat)_________________________ dinner, John (go)_________________________ to a movie. In other words, he (eat)_________________________ dinner by the time he (go)_________________________ to the movie.
EXERCISE 5. Review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 4)

Directions: Work in pairs.

SPEAKER A:
- Use the questions in this exercise to initiate conversation with Speaker B.
- Do not simply read the questions. Look at the text briefly, then look directly at Speaker B each time you ask a question.
- If Speaker B does not answer fully or if you would like more information, ask your own questions in addition to those suggested.
- Pay special attention to verb tense usage in both the questions and the responses.

SPEAKER B:
- Your book is closed.
- Answer the questions fully. Often your response will consist of more than one sentence.
- Answer in complete sentences in order to practice using verb tenses.

PART I.
1. What is happening in this room?
   What else is happening?
2. What was happening in this room when you walked in today?
   What else was happening?
3. What did you do yesterday? (Speaker A: Listen carefully for past tense verbs)
   What else did you do? in the responses.
   And what else did you do?
4. How long have you been living in (this city)?
   How long will you have been living here by the end of (the semester/term, etc.)?
5. Where did you eat dinner last night?
   What did you have?
   How was it?
   What did you do after you had eaten?
6. What were you doing at 8 o'clock last night?
   What will you be doing at 8 o'clock tomorrow night?
7. Are you taking any courses besides English?
   How is everything going?
   What are you doing in one of your (other courses/other English classes)?
8. How long have we been talking to each other?
   What have we been talking about?
9. How do you like living here?
   Have you had any interesting experiences since you came here?
   Have you met any interesting people?
10. What do you think the world will be like when you are seventy years old?

PART II. Switch roles.
11. What are you doing right now?
    What are you going to be doing for the next ten minutes or so?
12. What did you do last weekend? (Speaker A: Listen carefully for past tense verbs)
    What else did you do? in the responses.
    And what else did you do?
13. What is the teacher doing?
    How long has he/she been (doing that)?
14. What are you going to do for the rest of today?
    What will you be doing at midnight?
15. What will you have done by the time you go to bed tonight?
16. How long have you been studying English since you came here?
   How long had you studied English before you came here?
   What have you been doing outside of class to improve your English?
17. What have we been doing for the past ten minutes or so?
   Why have we been (doing that)?
18. What are some of the things you have done since you came to (this city)?
19. Have you read a newspaper lately?
   What is happening in the world?
20. What countries have you visited?
   When did you visit (a particular country)? Why did you go there?
   What did you like about that country? What did you dislike about that country?
   Are you planning to go there again someday?

### 5-1 ADVERB CLAUSES OF TIME: FORM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adverb clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>(a)</strong> When the phone rang, the baby woke up.</td>
<td>In (a): When the phone rang is an adverb clause of time. An adverb clause is one kind of dependent clause. A dependent clause must be attached to an independent, or main, clause. In (a): the baby woke up is the main clause.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(b)</strong> INCORRECT: When the phone rang. The baby woke up.</td>
<td>Example (b) is incorrect because the adverb clause is not connected to the main clause. Example (c) is correct because there is no adverb clause. The two main clauses are both independent sentences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) The phone rang. The baby woke up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(d)</strong> When the phone rang, the baby woke up.</td>
<td>Examples (d) and (e) have the same meaning. An adverb clause can come in front of a main clause, as in (d), or follow the main clause, as in (e). Notice that a comma is used to separate the two clauses when the adverb clause comes first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(e)</strong> The baby woke up when the phone rang.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 6. Adverb clauses of time.** (Chart 5-1)

*Directions:* Add necessary punctuation and capitalization. Identify adverb clauses and main clauses. Do not add or delete any words.

*Example:* when Sam was in New York he stayed with his cousins

→ When Sam was in New York, he stayed with his cousins.

1. we went inside when it began to rain
2. it began to rain we went inside
3. when it began to rain we went inside
4. when the mail comes my assistant opens it
5. my assistant opens the mail when it comes
6. the mail comes around ten o'clock every morning my assistant opens it

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words. Then, put brackets around the adverb clause in each sentence.

1. I will call you [before I come over.]

2. Last night I went to bed after I finished my homework.

3. Tonight I will go to bed after I have completed my homework.

4. Ever since I was a child, I have been afraid of dogs.

5. Jane's contact lens popped out while she was playing basketball.

6. Be sure to reread your composition for errors before you hand it in to the teacher tomorrow.

7. By the time I left my apartment this morning, the mail carrier had delivered the mail.

8. I have known Jim Bates since he was ten years old.

9. A black cat ran across the road as I drove my car to work this morning.

10. By the time I leave this city, I will have been here for four months.

11. Whenever Mark gets angry, his nose gets red.

12. I go to the beach whenever the weather is nice, but now I don't have time to do that because I have to study.

13. We will have a big party when the time is right.

14. The next time I go to Hawaii, I'm going to visit Mauna Loa, the world's largest active volcano.

15. I had fried chicken the last time I ate at that restaurant.
### 5-2 Using Adverb Clauses to Show Time Relationships

| After* | (a) After she graduates, she will get a job.  
| (b) After she (had) graduated, she got a job.  |
| Before* | (c) I will leave before he comes.  
| (d) I (had) left before he came.  |
| When | (e) When I arrived, he was talking on the phone.  
| (f) When I got there, he had already left.  
| (g) When it began to rain, I stood under a tree.  
| (h) When I was in Chicago, I visited the museums.  
| (i) When I see Mr. tomorrow, I will ask him.  |
| While as | (j) While I was walking home, it began to rain.  
| (k) As I was walking home, it began to rain.  |
| By the time | (l) By the time he arrived, we had already left.  
| (m) By the time he comes, we will have already left.  |
| Since | (n) I haven't seen him since he left this morning.  
| (o) I've known her ever since I was a child.  |
| Until till | (p) We stayed there until we finished our work.  
| (q) We stayed there till we finished our work.  |
| As soon as once | (r) As soon as it stops raining, we will leave.  
| (s) Once it stops raining, we will leave.  |
| As long as so long as | (t) I will never speak to him again as long as I live.  
| (u) I will never speak to him again so long as I live.  |
| Whenever every time | (v) Whenever I see her, I say hello.  
| (w) Every time I see her, I say hello.  |
| The first time | (x) The first time (that) I went to New York, I went to an opera.  
| (y) I saw two plays the last time (that) I went to New York.  
| (z) The next time (that) I go to New York, I'm going to see a ballet.  |

A present tense, NOT a future tense, is used in an adverb clause of time, as in examples (a) and (c). (See Chart 4-3, p. 55, for tense usage in future time clauses.)

When = at that time

Notice the different time relationships expressed by the tenses.

While, as = during that time

By the time = one event is completed before another event

Notice the use of the past perfect and future perfect in the main clause.

Since = from that time to the present

In (o): ever adds emphasis.

Note: The present perfect is used in the main clause.

Until, till = to that time and then no longer (Till is used more in speaking than in writing; it is generally not used in formal English.)

As soon as, once — when one event happens, another event happens soon afterward

As long as, so long as = during all that time, from beginning to end

Whenever = every time

Adverb clauses can be introduced by the following:

```
{first  
second third, etc.}  
last  
next etc.
```
EXERCISE 8. Using adverb clauses to show time relationships.
(Chapters 1 → 4; Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Combine each pair of sentences. Use the given time words if they are possible and appropriate to the meaning. Cross out inappropriate ones.

In the new sentences, omit unnecessary words, make any necessary changes (paying special attention to verb forms), and punctuate carefully.

1. The other passengers will get on the bus soon. Then we'll leave.
   a. while  b. as soon as  c. the last time
   → As soon as the other passengers get on the bus, we'll leave.

2. I turned off the lights. After that, I left the room.
   a. before  b. by the time  c. after
   → I turned off the lights before I left the room.
   → By the time I left the room, I had turned off the lights.
   → After I turned off the lights, I left the room.

3. Susan sometimes feels nervous. Then she chews her nails.
   a. whenever  b. before  c. every time

4. The frying pan caught on fire. I was making dinner at that time.
   a. by the time  b. while  c. as soon as

5. We were sitting down to eat. Someone knocked on the door at that moment.
   a. just as*  b. just after*  c. just before*

6. The singer finished her song. The audience immediately burst into applause.
   a. as long as  b. as soon as  c. immediately after

7. We have to wait here. Nancy will come.
   a. as soon as  b. after  c. until

8. Nancy will come. We can leave for the theater.
   a. after  b. as soon as  c. when

9. My roommate walked into the room yesterday. I immediately knew that something was wrong.
   a. just as soon as  b. when  c. whenever

10. I stood up to give my speech. Immediately before that, I got butterflies in my stomach.
    a. until  b. while  c. just before

11. I saw the great pyramids of Egypt in the moonlight. I was speechless.
    a. until  b. the first time  c. before

12. Jane has gotten three promotions in the last six months. She started working at this company six months ago.
    a. before  b. since  c. when •

13. I had gone to bed. The phone rang.
    a. shortly after  b. not long after  c. a short time after

---

*Just adds the idea of "immediately":
just as = at that immediate or same moment
just before = immediately before
just after = immediately after
14. The weather will get warmer soon. Then we can start playing tennis again.
   a. while       b. when       c. once

15. Shakespeare died in 1616. He had written more than 37 plays before then.
   a. while       b. once       c. by the time

16. Sam will go to the movies again. He'll remember to take his glasses then.
   a. the next time b. as long as c. by the time

17. I will not forget Mr. Tanaka. I will live for a long time.
   a. as           b. as long as c. so long as

18. Mohammad had never heard about Halloween.*
   Then he came to the U.S.
   a. before      b. until       c. since

EXERCISE 9. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time. (Chart 5-2)
   Directions: Choose the best completion. Give yourself seven minutes to complete this exercise.

1. As soon as Martina saw the fire, she ______ the fire department.
   A. was telephoning  B. telephoned    C. had telephoned   D. has telephoned

2. Before Jennifer won the lottery, she ______ any kind of contest.
   A. hasn't entered    B. doesn't enter C. wasn't entering D. hadn't entered

3. Every time Prakash sees a movie made in India, he ______ homesick.
   A. will have felt    B. felt         C. feels            D. is feeling

4. Since I left Venezuela six years ago, I ______ to visit friends and family several times.
   A. return           B. will have returned C. am returning D. have returned

5. While he was washing his new car, Mr. De Rosa ______ a small dent in the rear fender.
   A. has discovered B. was discovering C. is discovering D. discovered

6. Yesterday while I was attending a sales meeting, Matthew ______ on the company's annual report.
   A. was working      B. had been working C. has worked    D. works

7. Tony ______ to have children until his little daughter was born. After she won his heart, he decided he wanted a big family.
   A. doesn't want    B. hadn't wanted C. wasn't wanting D. hasn't wanted

---

*Halloween (which occurs every year on October 31) is a holiday celebrated in the U.S., Canada, Great Britain, and Ireland. Children dress up in costumes and go from house to house, asking for a "treat" such as candy or fruit.
8. After the horse threw her to the ground for the third time, Jennifer picked herself up and said, "I________on another horse as long as I live."
   A. never ride    B. have never ridden    C. will never ride    D. do not ride

9. The next time Paul ______ to New York, he will visit the Metropolitan Museum's famous collection of international musical instruments.
   A. will fly    B. flies    C. has flown    D. will have flown

10. Ever since Maurice arrived, he______quietly in the corner. Is something wrong?
    A. sat    B. has been sitting    C. had been sitting    D. will have sat

11. After Nancy______for twenty minutes, she began to feel tired.
    A. jogging    B. had been jogging    C. has been jogging    D. has jogged

12. Peter,________since you got home from football practice?
    A. have you eaten    B. will you eat    C. are you eating    D. do you eat

13. By the time the young birds______the nest for good, they will have learned how to fly.
    A. will leave    B. will have left    C. are leaving    D. leave

14. The last time I ______ in Athens, the weather was hot and humid.
    A. had been    B. was    C. am    D. will have been

ID EXERCISE 10. Using adverb clauses to show time relationships. (Chart 5-2)

Directions: Create a sentence from the given words. Do not change the order of the words. Use any appropriate verb forms and punctuate correctly.

Examples: as soon as + I + finish + I
           →As soon as I finish my report, I'll call you and we'll go out to dinner.
           I + after + I + climb
           →I was exhausted after I climbed the stairs to the eighth floor.

1. whenever + I + go + I
2. by the time + I + get + I
3. I + since + I + leave
4. just as + I + open + I
5. I + as soon as + I + eat
6. I + when + I + be
7. the first time + I + see + I
8. I + until + I + be
9. while + I + look + I
10. I + before + I + drive
EXERCISE 11. Review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 5)

Directions: Use any appropriate tense for the verbs in parentheses. In some instances, more than one tense is possible.*

1. A: There is something I have to tell you.
   B: Go ahead. I (listen) _________________.

2. A: Hi, Ann. (you, meet) ________________ my friend George Smith?
   B: No, I (have, never) ________________ the pleasure.
   A: Then let me introduce you.

3. A: Stop! What (you, do) ________________?
   B: I (try) ________________ to get this piece of toast out of the toaster. It's stuck.
   A: Well, don't use a knife. You (electrocute) ________________ yourself!
   B: What do you suggest I do?
   A: Unplug it first.

   B: Where?
   A: He (lie) ________________ on the grass under that tree over there.
   B: Oh, yes. I (see) ________________ him. He (look, certainly) ________________ comfortable. Let's go talk to him.

5. A: I (go) ________________ to a play last night.
   B: (it, be) ________________ any good?
   A: I thought so. I (enjoy) ________________ it a lot.
   B: What (you, see) ________________?
   A: Arsenic and Old Lace. I (see, never) ________________ it before.
   B: Oh, I (see) ________________ that play too. I (see) ________________ it a couple of years ago. It (be) ________________ good, (be, not) ________________ it?

6. A: I was in your hometown last month. It looked like a nice town. I (be, never) ________________ there before.
   B: What (you, do) ________________ in that part of the country?
   A: My wife and I (drive) ________________ to Washington, D.C., to visit her family.

*Your teacher can tell you if one tense is more idiomatic, i.e., more likely to be used by a native speaker.
7. A: \( (you, \text{take}) \) ________________ Econ 120 this semester?
   B: No, T ____________.
   A: \( (you, \text{take}, \text{ever}) \) ________________ it?
   B: Yes, T ____________.
   A: When \( (you, \text{take}) \) ________________ it?
   B: Last semester.
   A: Who \( (be) \) ________________ your professor?
   B: Dr. Lee.
   A: Oh, I have the same professor. What \( (he, be) \) ________________ like?
   R: He \( (be) \) ________________ very good.

8. A: May I borrow some money? My check \( (be) \) ________________ supposed to arrive yesterday, but I still \( (receive, not) \) ________________ it. I need to buy a book for one of my classes, but I \( (have, not) \) ________________ any money.
   B: Sure. I'd be happy to lend you some. How much \( (you, need) \) ________________?
   A: How about five dollars? Thanks. I \( (pay) \) ________________ you back as soon as I \( (get) \) ________________ my check.

9. A: Hello?
   B: Hello. May I speak to Sue?
   A: She \( (be, not) \) ________________ in right now. May I take a message?
   B: Yes. This is Art O'Brien. Would you please ask her to meet me at the library this afternoon? I \( (sit) \) ________________ at one of the study booths on the second floor.

10. A: Alex, \( (you, \text{know}) \) ________________ where Ms. Rodriguez is? I \( (look) \) ________________ for her for the past hour.
    B: She \( (see) \) ________________ Mr. Frost at the moment about the shipment of parts which we \( (receive) \) ________________ earlier today. Some of the parts are missing.
    A: Uh, oh. That \( (sound) \) ________________ like trouble. Please tell Ms. Rodriguez to phone me when she \( (have) \) ________________ some free time. I \( (work) \) ________________ in my office all afternoon.
EXERCISE 12. Review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 5)

Directions: Use any appropriate tense.

JOSE: Hi, my name is Jose.

ALI: Hi, my name is Ali.

1. JOSE: (you, study)__________________________at this university?

2. ALI: Yes, I (be)_________________ And you?

3. JOSE: Yes, I (be)____________________here since last September. Before that I (study)________________________English at another school.

4. ALI: What (you, take)________________________this term?

5. JOSE: I (take)________________________chemistry, math, psychology, and American history. What (you, take)________________________?

6. ALI: I (study)________________________English. I (need)______________to improve my English before I (take)________________regular academic courses next semester.

7. JOSE: How long (you, be)________________________here?

8. ALI: I (be)________________________here since the beginning of this semester. Actually, I (arrive)________________________in the United States six months ago, but I (study)________________________English at this university only since January. Before that I (live)________________________with my brother in Washington, D.C.

9. JOSE: You (speak)________________________English very well. (you, study)________________________a lot of English before you (come)________________________to the United States?

10. ALI: Yes. I (study)________________________English for ten years in my own country. And also, I (spend)________________________some time in Canada a couple of years ago. I (pick)________________________up a lot of English while I (live)________________________there.

11. JOSE: You (be)_____________________lucky. When I (come)____, __________to the United States, I (study, never)________________________any English at all. So I had to spend a whole year studying nothing but English before I (start)________________________school.

12. ALI: How long (you, plan)________________________to be in the United States?

13. JOSE: I (be, not)________________________sure. Probably by the time I (return)________________________home, I (be)________________________here for at least five years. How about you?

14. ALI: I (hope)________________________to be finished with all my work in two and a half years.
Dear Ann,

(1) I received your letter about two weeks ago and tried to find time to write you back ever since. I have been very busy lately. In the past two weeks, I have had four tests, and I have another one next week. In addition, a friend has been with me since last Thursday. She wanted to see the city, so we spent a lot of time visiting some of the interesting places here. We went to the zoo, the art museum, and the botanical gardens. Yesterday we went to the park and watched a balloon race. Between showing her the city and studying for my exams, I have barely had enough time to breathe.

(10) Right now it is 3:00 A.M. and I am sitting at my desk. I have been sitting here five hours doing my studying. My friend's plane leaves at 6:05, so I decided not to go to bed. That's why I am a little sleepy, but I would rather stay up.

(15) I am going to take a nap after I get back from taking her to the airport.

(16) How are you getting along? How are your classes going?

Please write soon.

Yours,
Janet
EXERCISE 15. Review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 5)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

1. Almost every part of the world *experience* an earthquake
2. in recent years, and almost every part of the world *experience*
3. earthquakes in the years to come. Since the ancient Chinese *begin* to keep
4. records several thousand years ago, more than 13 million earthquakes *occur*
5. *occur* worldwide by some estimates. What *cause*
6. earthquakes? Throughout time, different cultures *develop*
   myths to explain these violent earth movements.
   According to a Japanese myth, a playful catfish lives in the mud under the earth. Whenever it
7. feels like playing, it *wave* its fat tail around in the mud. The result?
8. *Earthquakes.* From India comes the story of six strong elephants who *hold* up
9. the earth on their heads. Whenever one elephant *move* its head, the earth trembles.
10. Nowadays, although scientists *know* more about the causes of
    earthquakes, they still cannot prevent the terrible damage. One of the strongest quakes in the
11. 20th century *happen* in Anchorage, Alaska, on March 24, 1964, at
12. about six o'clock in the evening. When the earthquake *strike* that
13. evening, many families *sit* down to eat dinner. People in the city
14. *find, suddenly* themselves in the dark because most of
    the lights in the city went out when the earthquake occurred. Many people *die*
15. *instantly* when tall buildings *collapse* and *send*
16. tons of brick and concrete crashing into the streets.
17. When *(the next earthquake, occur)*? No one really knows for sure.
18. Interestingly enough, throughout history animals *help, often* people predict earthquakes shortly before they happen. At present, some scientists *(study)
19. *catfish* because catfish swim excitedly just before an earthquake.
20. According to some studies, snakes, monkeys, and rodents *(appear, also)
21. *to be sensitive to the approach of violent movement in the earth's
22. surface. Some animals *(seem)* to know a great deal more than humans

*NOTE: When an earthquake will occur is a noun clause, not an adverb clause of time. See Chapter 12 for
information about noun clauses.*
In recent years, scientists have developed many extremely sensitive instruments. Perhaps someday the instruments will be able to give us a sufficiently early warning so that we can be waiting calmly in a safe place when the next earthquake strikes.

EXERCISE 16. Activity: review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 5)
Directions: Before you come to class, think of an interesting, dangerous, or amusing experience you have had. You will then tell the story to a classmate, who will report that experience in a composition.

EXERCISE 17. Activity: review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 5)
Directions: In a short speech (two or three minutes), summarize an article in a recent newspaper. You may speak from notes if necessary, but your notes should contain no more than fifteen words. Use your notes only for a very brief outline of important information. Present your speech to a small group or to the class. Listeners can write one- or two-sentence summaries of each speech.

EXERCISE 18. Activity: review of verb tenses. (Chapters 1 → 5)
Directions: Form a small group. Discuss the past, present, and future of one (or more) of the topics. As a group, write a summary of the discussion.
Topics:
1. means of transportation
2. clothes
3. agriculture
4. medical science
5. means of communication

EXERCISE 19. Error analysis: general review. (Chapters 1 → 5)
Directions: The following sentences are adapted from student writing and contain typical errors of different kinds. See how many of these errors you can find and correct.
1. I am living at 3371 grand avenue since last September.
2. I have been in New York city two week ago.
3. My country have change its capital city five time.
4. Dormitory life is not quiet. Everyone shouted and make a lot of noise in the halls.
5. My friends will meet me when I will arrive at the airport.
6. Hasn't anyone ever tell you to knock on the door before you enter someone else's room? Didn't your parents taught you that?
7. When I was a child, I viewed things from a much lower height. Many physical objects around me appear very large. When I want to move something such as a chair, I need help.

8. I will intend to go back home when I will finish my education.

9. The phone rung while I doing the dishes. I dry my hands and answer it. When I am hear my husband voice, I very happy.

10. I am in the United States for the last four months. During this time, I had done many thing and saw many place.

11. When the old man started to walk back to his cave, the sun has already hided itself behind the mountain.

12. While I am writing my composition last night, someone knocks on the door.

13. I'm studing English at an English conversation school two time a week.

14. Getting accustomed to a different cultures are not easy.

15. I'm really glad you to visit my hometown this year.

16. While I was visitting my cousin in Los Angeles. We went to a restaurant and eat Thai food.

17. We ate dinner. We watched TV after.

18. When I was in my country, I am afraid to come to the United States. I thought I couldn't walk outside at night because of the terrible crime. But now I am having a different opinion. I live in this small town for three month and learn that there is very little crime here.

19. Before I came to the United State. I pictured the U.S. as an exciting place with honesty, hard-working, well-mannered peoples. After I came to United State since four month ago this picture had changed. The manners of the students while they are in the cafeteria. They are really bad. I am also thinking that office workers here lazy. People in my country works a lot harder.
EXERCISE 1. Preview: using -s/-es. (Charts 2-1, 6-1, 6-2, and 7-4)

Directions: In the following sentences, add final -s/es. Do not change or omit any other words. Discuss spelling and pronunciation. Discuss why you need to add -s/es. All of the sentences are simple present.

1. I have two pens. (pens = a plural noun)
2. Tom works hard every day.
3. Our solar system consists of nine planets.
4. The earth rotates around the sun.
5. All animals need water.
6. A dog needs fresh water every day.
7. Students take tests.
8. A swallow is a small, graceful bird with a long tail and powerful wing.
9. Swallows are joyful creatures.
10. Butterflies are beautiful.
11. Hawaii has beautiful sunsets.
12. A library contains a lot of books.
14. Martha watches TV every evening.
15. Alex almost never changes his mind.
### 6-1 FINAL -SI-ES: USE, PRONUNCIATION, AND SPELLING

(a) **NOUN + -s:** Friends are important.  
**NOUN + -ES:** I like my classes.

A final -s or -es is added to a noun to make the noun plural.  
friend = a singular noun  
friends = a plural noun

(b) **VERB + -s:** Mary works at the bank.  
**VERB + -ES:** John watches birds.

A final -s or -es is added to a simple present verb when the subject is a singular noun (e.g., Mary, my father, the machine) or third person singular pronoun (she, he, it).

Mary works = singular  
The students work = plural  
She works - singular  
They work = plural

### PRONUNCIATION OF -SI-ES

| (c) seats → seat/s/ | Final -s is pronounced /s/ after voiceless sounds, as in (c): “t,” “p,” and “k” are examples of voiceless sounds.* |
| ropes → rope/s/ | |
| backs → back/s/ | |

| (d) seeds → seed/z/ | Final -s is pronounced /z/ after voiced sounds, as in (h): “d,” “b,” “g,” and “ee” are examples of voiced sounds.* |
| robes → robe/z/ | |
| bags → fea^/z/ | |
| sees → see/z/ | |

| (e) dishes → dish/az/ | Final -s and -es are pronounced /az/ after “-sh,” “-ch,” “-s,” “-z,” and “-ge”/“-dge” sounds. The /az/ ending adds a syllable. All of the words in (e) are pronounced with two syllables. COMPARE: All of the words in (c) and (d) are pronounced with one syllable. |
| catches → catch/az/ | |
| kisses → kiss/az/ | |
| mixes → mix/az/ | |
| prizes → prize/az/ | |
| edges → edge/az/ | |

### SPELLING: FINAL -S vs. -ES

| (f) sing → sings | For most words (whether a verb or a noun), simply a final -s is added to spell the word correctly. |
| song → songs | |

| (g) wash → washes | Final -es is added to words that end in -sh, -ch, -s, -z, and -x. |
| watch → watches | |
| class → classes | |
| buzz → buzzes | |
| box → boxes | |

| (h) toy → toys | For words that end in -y: |
| buy → buyys | In (h): If -y is preceded by a vowel, only -s is added. |
| (i) baby → babies | In (i): If -y is preceded by a consonant, the -y is changed to -i and -es is added. |
| cry → cries | |

*See Chart 2-6, p. 20, for an explanation of voiced vs. voiceless sounds.*
EXERCISE 2. Pronunciation of final -S/-ES. (Chart 6-1)

Directions: Practice pronouncing the following words. Say the final -s/-es sounds loudly and clearly. Then write the pronunciation of final -s/-es after each word. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

GROUP A.
1. cats → /s/  
2. feeds  
3. hates  
4. lids  
5. sleeps  
6. robs  
7. trips  
8. grabs  
9. wishes  
10. matches  
11. guesses  

GROUP B.
12. books  
13. homes  
14. occurs  
15. fixes  
16. sizes  
17. pages  
18. unlocks  
19. fills  
20. ashes  
21. sniffs  
22. miles  
23. rugs  

GROUP C.
24. arranges  
25. itches  
26. relaxes  
27. rises  
28. laughs  
29. days  
30. pies  
31. agrees  
32. faces  
33. quizzes  
34. judges  
35. asks  

EXERCISE 3. Spelling of final -S/-ES. (Chart 6-1)

Directions: Add -s or -es to these words to spell them correctly, and give the pronunciation of the ending.

1. passenger  
2. tax  
3. talk  
4. blush  
5. discover  
6. develop  
7. season  
8. flash  
9. hall  
10. touch  
11. cough  
12. press  
13. method  
14. mix  
15. try  
16. tray  
17. enemy  
18. guy
EXERCISE 4. Pronunciation and spelling of final -S/-ES. (Chart 6-1)

Directions: On a separate sheet of paper, draw three vertical columns. Write /s/ at the top of the first column, /z/ at the top of the second, and /æz/ at the top of the third. Using words of their own choosing, your teacher and/or your classmates in turn will say a word that has a final -s/-es. Write that word in the appropriate column according to how the ending is pronounced.

Example:

SPEAKER A: Number one: windows
SPEAKER B: Number two: reaches
SPEAKER C: Number three: students
SPEAKER D: Number four: passes
Etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/s/</th>
<th>/z/</th>
<th>/æz/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>windows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>reaches</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>students</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>passes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 5. Pronunciation of final -S/-ES. (Chart 6-1)

Directions: Practice the pronunciation of final -s/-es by reading these sentences aloud.

1. The teacher encourages the students to speak freely.
2. Chickens, ducks, and turkeys lay eggs.
3. He possesses many fine qualities.
4. My wages are low, but my taxes are high.
5. The cafeteria serves good sandwiches.
6. He coughs, sneezes, and wheezes.
7. People come in many shapes and sizes.
8. He practices pronunciation by reading sentences aloud.
9. She bought some shirts, shoes, socks, dresses, slacks, blouses, earrings, and necklaces.
10. She scratches her chin when it itches.
EXERCISE 6. Use of final -s/ -es. (Chart 6-1)

Directions: What do the following people or things do? Follow the pattern in the example. Say final -s/-es sounds loudly and clearly. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

Example: a birdwatcher

SPEAKER A (book open): What does a birdwatcher do?

1. a stamp collector
2. an animal trainer
3. a bank robber
4. a dog catcher
5. a book publisher
6. a tax collector
7. a ticket taker
8. a fire extinguisher
9. a mind reader
10. a bullfighter
11. a wage earner
12. a storyteller

EXERCISE 7. Use of final -s/-es. (Chart 6-1)

Directions: What do these people, animals, and things do? Respond in complete sentences. Say the final -s/-es sounds loudly and clearly.

Example: a bird

SPEAKER A (book open): What does a bird do?
SPEAKER B (book closed): A bird flies /sings /builds nests /etc.

1. a baby
2. a telephone
3. a star
4. a dog
5. a duck
6. a ball
7. a heart
8. a river
9. a cat
10. a door
11. a clock
12. an airplane
13. a doctor
14. a teacher
15. a psychologist

EXERCISE 8. Preview: subject-verb agreement. (Charts 6-2 → 6-5)

Directions: Choose the correct answer in parentheses.

1. The results of Dr. Noll's experiment (was, were) published in a scientific journal.
2. The weather in the southern states (gets, get) very hot during the summer.
3. A woman and her child (is, are) waiting to see Dr. Chang.
4. Every man, woman, and child (is, are) protected under the law.
5. Washing the dishes (is, are) the children's job.
6. A lot of the students (is, are) already here.
7. Some of the furniture in our apartment (is, are) secondhand.
8. Some of the desks in the classroom (is, are) broken.
9. At least three-quarters of that book on famous Americans (is, are) about people who lived in the nineteenth century.
10. One of the countries I would like to visit (is, are) Italy.
11. Some of the cities I would like to visit (is, are) Rome and Venice.
12. Each student in the class (has, have) to have a book.
13. Each of the students (has, have) a notebook.
14. None of the students (was, were) late today.
15. The number of students in this room right now (is, are) twenty.
16. A number of students in the class (*speaks, speak*) English very well.
17. There (*is, are*) some interesting pictures in today's paper.
18. There (*is, are*) an incorrect statement in that newspaper article.
19. The United States (*is, are*) located in North America.
20. Economics (*is, are*) Dan's favorite subject.
21. Ten minutes (*is, are*) more than enough time to complete this exercise.
22. Most people (*likes, like*) to go to the zoo.
23. The police (*is, are*) coming. I've already called them.
24. Japanese (*is, are*) very difficult for English speakers to learn.
25. The Japanese (*has, have*) a long and interesting history.
26. The elderly in my country (*is, are*) cared for by their children and grandchildren.
27. My cousin, along with my aunt and uncle, (*works, work*) in my grandpa's hardware store.
28. Cattle (*is, are*) considered sacred in India.
29. Anna, as well as her two older sisters, (*is, are*) in college.
30. This exercise on singular-plural agreement of subjects and verbs (*is, are*) easy.

### 6-2 BASIC SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR VERB</th>
<th>PLURAL VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) My friend lives in Boston.</td>
<td>(b) My friends live in Boston.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) My brother and sister live in Boston.</td>
<td>(d) My brother, sister, and cousin live in Boston.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Every man, woman, and child needs love.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Each book and magazine is listed in the card catalog.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) That book on political parties is interesting.</td>
<td>(h) The ideas in that book are interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) My dog, as well as my cats, likes cat food.</td>
<td>(j) My dogs, as well as my cat, like cat food.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) The book that I got from my parents was very interesting.</td>
<td>(l) The books I bought at the bookstore were expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m) Growing flowers is her hobby.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 9. Subject-verb agreement. (Chart 6-2)

Directions: Choose the correct answer in parentheses.

1. The extent of Jane's knowledge on various complex subjects *(astounds, astound)* me.
2. The subjects you will be studying in this course *(is, are)* listed in the syllabus.
3. Lettuce *(is, are)* good for you.
4. Oranges, tomatoes, fresh strawberries, cabbage, and lettuce *(is, are)* rich in vitamin C.
5. The professor and the student *(agrees, agree)* on that point.
6. Almost every professor and student at the university *(approves, approve)* of the choice of Dr. Brown as the new president.
7. Each girl and boy in the sixth-grade class *(has, have)* to do a science project.
8. Making pies and cakes *(is, are)* Mrs. Reed's specialty.*
9. Getting to know students from all over the world *(is, are)* one of the best parts of my job.
10. Annie had a hard time when she was coming home from the store because the bag of groceries *(was, were)* too heavy for her to carry.
11. Where *(does, do)* your parents live?
12. Why *(was, were)* Susan and Alex late for the meeting?
13. *(Is, Are)* having the responsibility for taking care of pets good for young children?
14. Alex, as well as his two older brothers, *(has, have)* a good full-time job.

---

### 6-3 SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT: USING EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR VERB</th>
<th>PLURAL VERB</th>
<th>EXCEPTIONS: One of, each of, and every one of take singular verbs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>(a)</em> Some of the book is good.</td>
<td><em>(b)</em> Some of the books are good.</td>
<td><em>(g)</em> One of my friends is here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(c)</em> A lot of the equipment is new.</td>
<td><em>(d)</em> A lot of my friends are here.</td>
<td><em>(h)</em> Each of my friends is here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(e)</em> Two-thirds of the money is mine.</td>
<td><em>(f)</em> Two-thirds of the pennies are mine.</td>
<td><em>(i)</em> Every one of my friends is here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(j)</em> None of the boys is here.</td>
<td><em>(k)</em> None of the boys are here. (informal)</td>
<td><em>(l)</em> The number of students in the class is fifteen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(m)</em> A number of students were late for class.</td>
<td></td>
<td>COMPARE: In (1): The number is the subject. In (m): A number of is an expression of quantity meaning &quot;a lot of.&quot; It is followed by a plural noun and a plural verb.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Specialty = American English; speciality = British English.
EXERCISE 10. Using expressions of quantity. (Chart 6-3)

Directions: Choose the correct answer in parentheses.

1. Some of the fruit in this bowl (is, are) rotten.
2. Some of the apples in that bowl (is, are) rotten.
3. Half of the students in the class (is, are) from Arabic-speaking countries.
4. Half of this money (is, are) yours.
5. A lot of the students in the class (is, are) from Southeast Asia.
6. A lot of clothing in those stores (is, are) on sale this week.
7. One of my best friends (is, are) coming to visit me next month.
8. Each boy in the class (has, have) his own notebook.
9. Each of the boys in the class (has, have) his own notebook.
10. Every one of the students (is, are) required to take the final test.
11. None of the animals at the zoo (is, are) free to roam. All of them (is, are) in enclosures.
12. A number of students (is, are) absent today.
13. The number of employees in my company (is, are) approximately ten thousand.
14. One of the chief materials in bones and teeth (is, are) calcium.
15. (Does, Do) all of the children have their books?
16. (Does, Do) all of this homework have to be finished by tomorrow?
17. Why (was, were) some of the students excused from the examination?
18. Why (was, were) one of the students excused from the examination?
19. What percentage of the people in the world (is, are) illiterate?
20. What percentage of the earth's surface (is, are) covered by water?
21. (Does, Do) any of you know the answer to that question?

6-4 SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT: USING THERE + BE

(a) There are twenty students in my class.
(b) There's a fly in the room.
(c) There are seven continents.

In the structure there + be, there is called an "expletive." It has no meaning as a vocabulary word. It introduces the idea that something exists in a particular place.

Pattern: there + be + subject + expression of place

Sometimes the expression of place is omitted when the meaning is clear. In (c): The implied expression of place is clearly in the world.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR VERB</th>
<th>PLURAL VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(d) There is a book on the shelf.</td>
<td>(e) There are some books on the shelf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The subject follows be when there is used.</td>
<td>In (d): The subject is book. In (e): The subject is books.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(f) INFORMAL: There's some books on the shelf.

In very informal spoken English, some native speakers use a singular verb even when the subject is plural, as in (f). The use of this form is fairly frequent but is not generally considered to be grammatically correct.
EXERCISE 11. Using THERE and BE. (Chart 6-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer in parentheses.

1. There (isn't, aren't) any letters in the mail for you today.
2. There (isn't, aren't) any mail for you today.
3. There (is, are) a lot of problems in the world.
4. There (is, are) a hole in his sock.
5. There (is, are) over 600,000 kinds of insects in the world.
6. How many kinds of birds (is, are) there in the world?
7. Why (isn't, aren't) there a hospital close to those villages?
8. There (was, were) a terrible earthquake in Iran last year.
9. Why (is, are) there a shortage of available apartments for rent in this city at present?
10. There (is, are) more women than men in my office.
11. There (has been, have been) a line in front of that theater every night for the past two weeks.
12. How many wars do you suppose there (has been, have been) in the history of the world since the dawn of civilization?

EXERCISE 12. Using THERE and BE. (Chart 6-4)

Directions: Using there and be, name some things that exist:

1. in this room
2. in this city
3. in this country
4. in the world
5. in the universe
### SINGULAR VERB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(a) The United States is big.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b) The Philippines consists of more than 7,000 islands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) The United Nations has its headquarters in New York City.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Sears is a department store.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) The news is interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Mathematics is easy for her. Physics is easy for her too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Diabetes is an illness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Eight hours of sleep is enough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Ten dollars is too much to pay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j) Five thousand miles is too far to travel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR VERB</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL VERB**

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### PLURAL VERB

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### SINGULAR VERB

| (P) English is spoken in many countries. |
| (r) Chinese is his native language. |
| (q) The English drink tea. |
| (s) The Chinese have an interesting history. |
| (t) The poor have many problems. |
| (u) The rich get richer. |

**SINGULAR VERB**

| **PLURAL VERB** |

**PLURAL VERB**

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### PLURAL VERB

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### SINGULAR VERB

| (P) English is spoken in many countries. |
| (r) Chinese is his native language. |
| (q) The English drink tea. |
| (s) The Chinese have an interesting history. |
| (t) The poor have many problems. |
| (u) The rich get richer. |

**PLURAL VERB**

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### PLURAL VERB

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### SINGULAR VERB

| (P) English is spoken in many countries. |
| (r) Chinese is his native language. |
| (q) The English drink tea. |
| (s) The Chinese have an interesting history. |
| (t) The poor have many problems. |
| (u) The rich get richer. |

**PLURAL VERB**

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### PLURAL VERB

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### SINGULAR VERB

| (P) English is spoken in many countries. |
| (r) Chinese is his native language. |
| (q) The English drink tea. |
| (s) The Chinese have an interesting history. |
| (t) The poor have many problems. |
| (u) The rich get richer. |

**PLURAL VERB**

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### PLURAL VERB

| (m) Those people are from Canada. |
| (n) The police have been called. |
| (o) Cattle are domestic animals. |

### SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT: SOME IRREGULARITIES

Sometimes a proper noun that ends in -s is singular. In the examples, if the noun is changed to a pronoun, the singular pronoun it is used (not the plural pronoun they) because the noun is singular. In (a): The United States = it (not they).

News is singular.

Fields of study that end in -ics require singular verbs.

Certain illnesses that end in -s are singular: diabetes, measles, mumps, rabies, rickets, shingles.

Expressions of time, money, and distance usually require a singular verb.

Arithmetic expressions require singular verbs.

People, police, and cattle do not end in -s, but are plural nouns and require plural verbs.

In (p): English = language. In (q): The English = people from England. Some nouns of nationality that end in -sh, -ese, and -ch can mean either language or people, e.g., English, Spanish, Chinese, Japanese, Vietnamese, Portuguese, French.

A few adjectives can be preceded by the and used as a plural noun (without final -s) to refer to people who have that quality. Other examples: the young, the elderly, the living, the dead, the blind, the deaf, the disabled.

*The word "people" has a final -s (peoples) only when it is used to refer to ethnic or national groups: All the peoples of the world desire peace.
EXERCISE 13. Irregularities in subject-verb agreement. (Chart 6-5)

Directions: Choose the correct answer in parentheses.

1. The United States (has, have) a population of around 250 million.
2. The news about Mr. Hogan (is, are) surprising.
3. Massachusetts (is, are) a state in the northeastern part of the United States.
4. Physics (seeks, seek) to understand the mysteries of the physical world.
5. Statistics (is, are) a branch of mathematics.
6. The statistics in that report on oil production (is, are) incorrect.*
7. Fifty minutes (is, are) the maximum length of time allowed for the exam.
8. Twenty dollars (is, are) an unreasonable price for the necklace.
9. Six and seven (is, are) thirteen.
10. Many people in the world (does, do) not have enough to eat.
11. The police (is, are) prepared in case there is a riot.
12. Rabies (is, are) an infectious and often fatal disease.
13. The English (is, are) proud, independent people.
14. English (is, are) not my native language.
15. Many Japanese (commutes, commute) to their places of work.
16. Portuguese (is, are) somewhat similar to Spanish, (isn't, aren't) it?
17. The poor (is, are) helped by government programs.
18. The effect of a honeybee's sting on a human being (depends, depend) on that person's susceptibility to the bee's venom. Most people (is, are) not in danger if they are stung, but there (has, have) been instances of allergic deaths from a single honeybee sting.

EXERCISE 14. Review: subject-verb agreement. (Charts 6-2 → 6-5)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

Speaker A: Your book is open. Read the cue.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Respond with is or are.

Examples:

SPEAKER B (book closed): . . . are

SPEAKER B (book closed): . . . is

1. His idea . . .
2. His ideas . . .
3. People . . .
4. Each of the students . . .
5. Most of the fruit . . .
6. Most of the students . . .
7. The United States . . .
8. The news in this morning's paper . . .
9. One of the girls . . .
10. French . . .
11. The Vietnamese . . .
12. Two-thirds of the food . . .
13. The number of students . . .
14. Some of the people . . .
15. Ninety-three million people . . .
16. The story about his adventures . . .
17. A lot of the chairs . . .
18. A lot of the furniture . . .

*Statistics is singular when it refers to a field of study: e.g., Statistics is an interesting field of study. When it refers to particular numbers, it is used as a count noun: singular = one statistic (no final -s); plural = two statistics. For example: This statistic is correct. Those statistics are incorrect.
19. Everyone in the English classes ... 
20. The clothes in that store ... 
21. Most of the information in those books ... 
22. The news from home ... 
23. Fifty percent of the people in the world ... 
24. Fifty percent of the world's population ... 
25. The clothing in those stores ... 
26. Her husband's relatives ... 
27. Over half of the books by that author ... 
28. A million dollars ... 
29. The rich ... 
30. His method of doing things ... 
31. A number of people ... 
32. Most of the stores in this city ... 
33. Mathematics ... 
34. The police ... 
35. Everybody in the whole world ... 

EXERCISE 15. Error analysis: subject-verb agreement. (Charts 6-2 → 6-5)

Directions: Correct the errors in subject-verb agreement. Some sentences contain no errors.

1. The books in my office is very valuable to me.
2. All of the windows in our house were broken in the earthquake. (no errors)
3. All of the employees in that company is required to be proficient in a second language.
4. A lot of the people in my class works during the day and attends class in the evening.
5. Listening to very loud music at rock concerts have caused hearing loss in some teenagers.
6. Many of the satellites orbiting the earth is used for communications.
7. The news about the long-range effects of air pollution on the development of children's lungs is disturbing.
8. Chinese have more than fifty thousand written characters.
10. A number of planes were delayed due to the snowstorm in Denver.
11. The number of passengers affected by the delays was great.
12. More men than women are left-handed.
13. Every girl and boy are required to have certain immunizations before enrolling in public school.
14. Seventy-five percent of the people in New York City lives in upstairs apartments, not on the ground floor.
15. Unless there are a profound and extensive reform of government policies in the near future, the economic conditions in that country will continue to deteriorate.

16. While I was in Paris, some of the best food I found were not at the well-known eating places, but in small out-of-the-way cafes.

17. Where's my gloves? Have you seen them anywhere? I can't find them.

18. Where's Kenya? Can you find it for me on the map?

19. Approximately 80 percent of all the data* in computers around the world is in English.

20. Why are the police here?

21. Studying a foreign language often lead students to learn about the culture of the countries where it is spoken.

22. Two hours is too long to wait, don't you think?

23. Some of the movie about the gangsters were surprisingly funny.

*Data is an irregular plural noun. (See Chart 7-1, p. 100.) Even though it is grammatically plural, it typically takes a singular verb, but a plural verb is also used, especially in very formal English:

The data in the census report is very interesting. OR The data in the census report are very interesting.
24. Some of the movies these days contain too much violence.

25. How many people is there in Canada?

26. What is the population of Canada?

27. Which one of the continents in the world are uninhabited?

28. One of the most common names for dogs in the United States are "Rover."

29. Everybody in my family enjoy music and reading.

30. Most of the mountain peaks in the Himalayan Range is covered with snow the year round.

EXERCISE 16. Review: subject-verb agreement. (Charts 6-2 – 6-5)

Directions: Write the correct form of the given verb. Use only the simple present.

1. My alarm clock _______ rings _______ at seven every morning. (ring)
2. There _______ a lot of sheep in the field. (be)
3. One of my friends _______ a goldfish bowl on her kitchen table. (keep)
4. Sensitivity to other people's feelings _______ him a kind and understanding person. (make)
5. Each car, truck, and motorcycle _______ stopped at the border by customs officials. (be)
6. My driver's license _______ in my wallet. (be)
7. _______ John's uncle live in the suburbs? (do)
8. _______ most of the students live in the dormitories? (do)
9. An orange and black bird _______ sitting in that tree. (be)
10. An orange bird and a black bird _______ sitting in that tree. (be)
11. The insurance rates on our car _______ high because we live in a city. (be)
12. _______ January and February the coldest months of the year in the Northern Hemisphere? (be)
13. Almost two-thirds of the land in the southwestern areas of the country _______ unsuitable for farming. (be)
14. A hummingbird's heart _______ 600 times a minute. (beat)
15. Four hours of skiing _______________ plenty of exercise. (provide)

16. In many respects, this magazine article on wild animals in North America _______________ the very real danger of extinction that many species face. (oversimplify)

17. A car with poor brakes and no brake lights___________ dangerous. (be)

18. A number of people from the company______________ to attend the conference. (plan)

19. Most of the news on the front pages of both daily newspapers______________ the progress of the peace conference. (concern)

20. The northernmost town in the forty-eight contiguous states__________ Angle Inlet, Minnesota. (be)

21. The number of human skeletons found at the archaeological site ________ seven. (be)

22. Almost all the information in those texts on the Aztec Indians and their civilization ________________ to be well researched. (appear)

23. Every day there_________ more than a dozen traffic accidents in the city. (be)

24. No news _________ good news. (be)

25. Every member of this class ________________ English very well. (speak)
Directions: Complete the following sentences with your own words. Use only PRESENT tenses. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

Examples:
SPEAKER A (book open): One of my ....
SPEAKER A (book open): Some of my ....
SPEAKER B (book closed): Some of my friends are coming to visit me.

1. All of the rooms in ....
2. In my country, there ....
3. A lot of ____
4. The people in my country ....
5. The number of students ....
6. A number of students ....
7. Each of ____
8. The United States ....
9. The English language ....
10. The English____

11. English ....
12. One of my ....
13. Most of the food ....
14. Most of my classmates ....
15. Linguistics ....
16. Linguists ....
17. The news about ....
18. There are ....
19. Greece, as well as Italy and Spain, ....
20. Fish____
EXERCISE 1. Preview: plural nouns.

Directions: Write the plural form of the following nouns.

1. child
2. zero
3. mouse
4. monkey
5. industry
6. woman
7. fox
8. goose
9. sheep
10. series
11. belief
12. leaf
13. self
14. echo
15. photo
16. analysis
17. hypothesis
18. curriculum
19. phenomenon
20. stimulus
21. offspring
22. bacterium
### 7-1 REGULAR AND IRREGULAR PLURAL NOUNS

| (a) | song-songs | The plural of most nouns is formed by adding final -s* |
| (b) | box-boxes | Final -es is added to nouns that end in -sh, -ch, -s, -z, and -x.* |
| (c) | baby-babies | The plural of words that end in a consonant + -y is spelled -ies.* |
| (d) | man-men woman-women child-children ox-oxen tooth-teeth mouse-mice | The nouns in (d) have irregular plural forms that do not end in -s. |
| (e) | echo-echoes hero-heroes goose-geese potato-potatoes tomato-tomatoes | Some nouns that end in -o add -es to form the plural. |
| (f) | auto-autos ghetto-ghettos kangaroo-kangaroos hilo-kilos memo-memos | Some nouns that end in -o add only -s to form the plural. |
| (g) | memento-mementoes/mementos mosquito-mosquitoes/mosquitos tornado-tornadoes | Some nouns that end in -o add either -es or -s to form the plural (with -es being the more usual plural form). |
| (h) | calf-calves half-halves knife-knives leaf-leaves | Some nouns that end in -f or -fe are changed to -ves to form the plural. |
| (i) | belief-beliefs chief-chiefs cliff-cliffs life-lives loaf-loaves self-selves shelf-shelves | Some nouns that end in -f simply add -s to form the plural. |
| (j) | one deer-two deer one fish-two fish** one means-two means one offspring-two offspring | Some nouns have the same singular and plural form: e.g., *One deer is . . . Two deer are . . .* |
| (k) | criterion-criteria phenomenon -phenomena | Some nouns that English has borrowed from other languages have foreign plurals. |
| (l) | cactus-cacti/cactuses fungus-fungi nucleus-nuclei stimulus-stimuli syllabus-syllabi/syllabuses | |
| (m) | formula-formulae I formulas vertebra-vertebrae | |
| (n) | appendix-appendices/indexes | |

*For information about the pronunciation and spelling of words ending in -s/-es, see Chart 6-1, p. 84.

**Fishes** is also possible, but rarely used.

***Especially in British English, but also occasionally in American English, the plural of *shrimp* can be *shrimps.*
EXERCISE 2. Plural nouns. (Chart 7-1)

Directions: Write the correct form of the nouns in parentheses.

1. I met some interesting __________ men __________ at the meeting last night. (man)
2. I need some __________ matches __________ to light the fire. (match)
3. The baby got two __________ new __________. (tooth)
4. The farmer loaded his cart with __________ of fresh vegetables to take to market. His cart was pulled by two __________. (box, ox)
5. Alex saw some __________ running across the floor. (mouse)
6. The north side of the island has no __________. There are only steep __________. No one can climb these steep walls of __________. (beach, cliff)
7. If a __________ is given too much water, its lower __________ turn yellow. (leaf)
8. Before Marie signed the contract, she talked to two __________. (attorney)
9. New scientific __________ are made every day in __________ throughout the world. (discovery, laboratory)
10. I caught several __________ in the lake. (fish)
11. On our trip in the mountainous countryside, we saw some __________, __________, __________, and wild __________. (wolf, fox, deer, sheep)
12. When we spoke in the cave, we could hear __________ of our voices. (echo)
13. The music building at the university has 27 __________. Students need to sign up for practice __________. (piano)
14. Thunder and lightning are __________ of nature. (phenomenon)
15. People get most of their news about the world through the mass __________, that is, through radio, television, the Internet, newspapers, and __________. (medium)
EXERCISE 3. Plural nouns. (Chart 7-1)

*Directions:* Make the nouns plural where necessary. Do not change any other words.

**Bacteria**

1. Bacterium are the smallest living thing. They are simple organisms that consist of one cell.

2. Bacterium exist almost everywhere. They are in the air, water, and soil,* as well as in the body of all living creatures.

3. There are thousands of kinds of bacterium. Most of them are harmless to human beings, but some cause diseases such as tuberculosis and pneumonia.

4. Virus are also microscopic organisms, but viruses live in the cell of other living things. By themselves, they are lifeless particles that cannot reproduce, but inside a living cell they become active and can multiply hundreds of times.

5. Virus cause many diseases. They infect human beings with illnesses such as influenza, the common cold, measles, and AIDS (Acquired ImmunoDeficiency Syndrome).

6. Virus are tiny. The virus that causes AIDS is so small that 230 million** of them could fit on the period at the end of this sentence.

7. Today, health officials are expressing great concern about our health* in the future. They feel that today there is an epidemic of infectious conditions that are difficult or impossible to treat, such as AIDS.

8. In addition to this concern about new life-threatening viral infections, health officials have discovered that bacterial infections that were once easily handled by antibiotics now pose a serious threat to our health. Many common bacterial have developed resistance to antibiotics and are evolving into forms that are unaffected by all known medications.

9. In a world where antibiotics don't work, the simplest infections are capable of escalating into fatal illnesses. Every year more people are dying of infections that resist every drug doctors try. The potential ineffectiveness of antibiotics is a frightening prospect.

---

*Air, water, soil, and health are used as noncount nouns and thus have no plural form. See Chart 7-4, p. 107, for information about noncount nouns.

**When the words hundred, thousand, million, and billion are used with numerals, they remain in their singular form: Six hundred employees will attend the company picnic this year. There are three thousand entrants in the photo contest. When they are used without numerals to indicate an indefinite but large number of something, they are used in their plural form: Hundreds of people came to the concert. There are thousands of earthquakes in the world every year. Millions of people in the world are starving.
### 7-2 POSSESSIVE NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR NOUN</th>
<th>POSSESSIVE FORM</th>
<th>To show possession, add an apostrophe ('), and -s to a singular noun: The girl's book is on the table.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) the girl</td>
<td>the girl's</td>
<td>If a singular noun ends in -s, there are two possible forms: 1. Add an apostrophe and -s: Thomas's book. 2. Add only an apostrophe: Thomas' book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Tom</td>
<td>Tom's</td>
<td>Add only an apostrophe to a plural noun that ends in -s: The girls' books are on the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) my wife</td>
<td>my wife's</td>
<td>Add an apostrophe and -s to plural nouns that do not end in -s: The men's books are on the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) a lady</td>
<td>a lady's</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Thomas</td>
<td>Thomas's/Thomas'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL NOUN</th>
<th>POSSESSIVE FORM</th>
<th>Add only an apostrophe to a plural noun that ends in -s: The girls' books are on the table.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(f) the girls</td>
<td>the girls'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) their wives</td>
<td>their wives'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) the ladies</td>
<td>the ladies'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) the men</td>
<td>the men's</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j) ray children</td>
<td>my children's</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EXERCISE 4. Possessive nouns. (Chart 7-2)

**Directions:** Complete the sentences with the possessive form of the nouns in parentheses.

1. (Mrs. Smith) __Mrs. Smith's__ husband often gives her flowers.
2. (boy) The __________ hat is red.
3. (boys) The __________ hats are red.
4. (children) The __________ toys are all over the floor.
5. (child) I fixed the __________ bicycle.
6. (baby) The __________ toys are in the crib.
7. (babies) The __________ toys are in their cribs.
8. (wives) Tom and Bob are married. Their __________ names are Cindy and Judy, respectively.
9. (wife) That is my __________ coat.
10. (Sally) __________ last name is White.
11. (Phyllis) __________ last name is Young.
12. (boss) That's my __________ office.
13. (bosses) Those are my __________ offices.
14. (woman) This is a __________ purse.
15. (women) That store sells __________ clothes.
16. (sister) Do you know my __________ husband?
17. (sisters) Do you know my __________ husbands?
18. (yesterday) Did you read __________ newspaper?
19. (today) There are many problems in __________ world.
20. (month) It would cost me a __________ salary to buy that refrigerator.
EXERCISE 5. Possessive nouns. (Chart 7-2)
Directions: Correct the mistakes in the use of possessive nouns by adding apostrophes and final -s/-es as necessary.

1. I enjoy visiting friend houses.  
   **friends'**

2. When I was in Chicago, I stayed at a friend house.  
   **friend's**

3. My uncle is my father brother.  

4. I have four aunts. All of my aunt homes are within walking distance of my mother apartment.  

5. Mike's aunt oldest son is a violinist.  

6. Five astronauts were aboard the space shuttle. The astronaut safe return to earth was a welcome sight to millions of television viewers.  

7. The children favorite part of the circus was the trapeze act.  

8. When the child toy broke, I fixed it.  

9. I borrowed the secretary pen to fill out the application form.  

10. It is the people right to know what the city is going to do about the housing problem.  

11. Bill wife is a factory worker.  

12. Bess husband is a housepainter.  

13. Quite a few diplomats are assigned to our city. Almost all of the diplomat children attend a special school.  

14. A diplomat work invariably involves numerous meetings.

EXERCISE 6. Using apostrophes. (Chart 7-2; Appendix Chart C)
Directions: Add apostrophes as necessary to mark a possessive noun or a contraction.

1. I borrowed my sister's car. It's old but reliable.  
   **A**  **A**

2. A polar bears sense of smell is keen. Its ability to smell prey over a mile away is important to its survival in the vast expanses of snow and ice where it lives.  

3. Texas is a leading producer of petroleum and natural gas. Its one of the worlds largest storage areas for petroleum.  

4. Psychologists have developed many different kinds of tests. A "personality test" is used to evaluate an individuals personal characteristics, such as friendliness or trustworthiness.
5. Many mythological stories tell of heroes encounters with giants or dangerous animals. In one story, the hero's encounter with a dragon saves a village from destruction.

6. Children's play is an important part of their lives. It teaches them about their environment while they're having fun. For instance, they can learn that boats float and can practice ways to make boats move across water. Toys are not limited to children. Adults have their own toys, such as pleasure boats, and children have theirs, such as miniature boats. Adults toys are usually much more expensive than children's toys.

7-3 USING NOUNS AS MODIFIERS

| The soup has vegetables in it. | When a noun is used as a modifier, it is in its singular form.*  
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| (a) It is **vegetable soup.** | In (a): **vegetable** modifies **soup.**  
| (b) The building has **offices** in it. | In (b): **office** modifies **building.**  
| (c) The test lasted two hours. | When a noun used as a modifier is combined with a number expression, the noun is singular and a hyphen (-) is used.  
| (d) Her son is five years old. | **INCORRECT:** She has a **five years old son.**  
| (e) She has a **five-year-old son.** |  

*Adjectives never take a final -s. (INCORRECT: beautiful pictures) See Appendix Chart A-3, p. A4. Similarly, nouns used as adjectives never take a final -s. (INCORRECT: vegetables soup)

EXERCISE 7. Using nouns as modifiers. (Chart 7-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the singular or plural form as appropriate. Include hyphens (-) as necessary.

1. (shoe) They sell _____________ at that store. It is a _____________ store.
2. (flower) My garden has _____________ in it. It is a _____________ garden.
3. (bean) This soup is made from black _____________ . It is black _____________ soup.
4. (baby) People can buy special food in small jars for _____________ . It is called _____________ food.
5. (child) Dr. Adams is trained as a psychologist for _____________ . She is a _____________ psychologist.
6. (salad) At a formal dinner, there are usually two forks on the table. The smaller fork is for _____________ . It is a _____________ fork.
7. (fax) In our office we have a machine that sends and receives _____________ . It is called a _____________ machine.
8. (can) A kitchen tool that opens _____________ is called a _____________ opener.  
   (potato) A tool that peels _____________ is called a _____________ peeler.
9. (airplane) Seats on ___________ are uncomfortable. ___________ seats should be made more comfortable and convenient for the passengers.

10. (mosquito) In tropical climates, sometimes it is necessary to hang a net over a bed to protect the sleeper from ___________. It is called a ___________ net.

11. (two + hour) The plane was late. We had a ___________ wait. We had to wait for ___________.

12. (ten + year + old) My brother is ___________. I have a ___________ brother.

13. (ten + speed) Joe can shift his bicycle into ___________ different ___________. He has a ___________ bike.

14. (six + game) The basketball team has won ___________ in a row (i.e., they haven't lost one of their last six games). They have a ___________ winning streak.

15. (three + letter) "Arm" and "dog" are ___________ words. Each word has ___________
EXERCISE 8. Using nouns as modifiers. (Chart 7-3)

Directions: Think of common expressions in which the given nouns are used to modify other nouns. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

Example: flower → a flower vase, a flower garden, a flower shop, etc.

1. cotton  6. telephone  11. silk  16. kitchen
2. grammar  7. mountain  12. morning  17. baby
3. birthday  8. government  13. street  18. vegetable
5. airplane  10. bedroom  15. hotel  20. bicycle

7–4 COUNT AND NONCOUNT NOUNS

(a) I bought a chair. Sam bought three chairs. 
(b) We bought some furniture.

INCORRECT: We bought some furnitures. 
INCORRECT: We bought a furniture.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| COUNT NOUN | one chair | 0 chairs* 
| | two chairs | some chairs |
| | a lot of chairs | many chairs |
| NONCOUNT NOUN | 0 furniture* | a lot of furniture |
| | some furniture | much furniture |

*0 = nothing.

EXERCISE 9. Count and noncount nouns. (Chart 7-4)

Directions: Look at the italicized nouns in the sentences. Write “C” above the count nouns and "NC" above the noncount nouns.

1. I bought some chairs, tables, and desks. In other words, I bought some furniture.

2. Ann likes to wear jewelry. Today she is wearing four rings, six bracelets, and a necklace.

3. We saw beautiful mountains, fields, and lakes on our trip. In other words, we saw beautiful scenery.

4. Gold and iron are metals.

5. I used an iron to press my wrinkled shirt.

6. In the United States, baseball is called the national pastime. To play it, you need a baseball and a bat.
7-5 NONCOUNT NOUNS

(a) I bought some chairs, tables, and desks. In other words, I bought some furniture. Many noncount nouns refer to a "whole" that is made up of different parts. In (a) furniture represents a whole group of things that is made up of similar but separate items.

(b) I put some sugar in my coffee. In (b): sugar and coffee represent whole masses made up of individual particles or elements.*

(c) I wish you luck. Many noncount nouns are abstractions. In (c): luck is an abstract concept, an abstract "whole." It has no physical form; you can't touch it. You can't count it.

(d) Sunshine is warm and cheerful. A phenomenon of nature, such as sunshine, is frequently used as a noncount noun, as in (d).

(e) NONCOUNT: Ann has brown hair. COUNT: Tom has a hair on his jacket. Many nouns can be used as either noncount or count nouns, but the meaning is different; e.g., hair in (e) and light in (f).

(f) NONCOUNT: I opened the curtains to let in some light. COUNT: Don't forget to turn off the light before you go to bed. (Dictionaries written especially for learners of English as a second language are a good source of information on count/noncount usages of nouns.)

*To express a particular quantity, some noncount nouns may be preceded by unit expressions: a spoonful of sugar, a glass of water, a cup of coffee, a quart of milk, a loaf of bread, a grain of rice, a bowl of soup, a bag of flour, a pound of meat, a piece of furniture, a piece of paper, a piece of jewelry.

7-6 SOME COMMON NONCOUNT NOUNS

This list is a sample of nouns that are commonly used as noncount nouns. Many other nouns can also be used as noncount nouns.

(a) WHOLE GROUPS MADE UP OF SIMILAR ITEMS: baggage, clothing, equipment, food, fruit, furniture, garbage, hardware, jewelry, junk, luggage, machinery, mail, makeup, money (cash/ change), postage, scenery, traffic, etc.

(b) FLUIDS: water, coffee, tea, milk, oil, soup, gasoline, blood, etc.

(c) SOLIDS: ice, bread, butter, cheese, meat, gold, iron, silver, glass, paper, wood, cotton, wool, etc.

(d) GASES: steam, air, oxygen, nitrogen, smoke, smog, pollution, etc.

(e) PARTICLES: rice, chalk, corn, dirt, dust, flour, grass, hair, pepper, salt, sand, sugar, wheat, etc.

(f) ABSTRACTIONS:
   - beauty, confidence, courage, education, enjoyment, fun, happiness, health, help, honesty, hospitality, importance, intelligence, justice, knowledge, laughter, luck, music, patience, peace, pride, progress, recreation, significance, sleep, truth, violence, wealth, etc.
   - advice, information, news, evidence, proof, etc.
   - time, space, energy, etc.
   - homework, work, etc.
   - grammar, slang, vocabulary, etc.

(g) LANGUAGES: Arabic, Chinese, English, Spanish, etc.

(h) FIELDS OF STUDY: chemistry, engineering, history, literature, mathematics, psychology, etc.

(i) RECREATION: baseball, soccer, tennis, chess, bridge, poker, etc.

(j) ACTIVITIES: driving, studying, swimming, travelling, walking, etc. (and other gerunds)

(k) NATURAL PHENOMENA: weather, dew, fog, hail, heat, humidity, lightning, rain, sleet, snow, thunder, wind, darkness, light, sunshine, electricity, fire, gravity, etc.

*British spelling: travelling.
EXERCISE 10. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 7-5 and 7-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the given nouns, adding final -s/-es if necessary. Use each noun only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>advice</th>
<th>homework</th>
<th>music</th>
<th>stuff</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>change</td>
<td>information</td>
<td>progress</td>
<td>thunder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garbage</td>
<td>junk</td>
<td>river</td>
<td>screwdriver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hardware</td>
<td>luggage/baggage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I have some coins in my pocket. In other words, I have some __________ in my pocket.

2. The Mississippi, the Amazon, and the Nile are well-known __________.

3. I like to listen to operas, symphonies, and folk songs. I enjoy __________.

4. The street is full of cars, trucks, and buses. It is full of __________.

5. I put some banana peels, empty juice cartons, and broken bottles in the waste can. The can is full of __________.

6. They have a rusty car without an engine, broken chairs, and an old refrigerator in their front yard. Their yard is full of __________.

7. Paul has books, pens, papers, notebooks, a clock, scissors, a tape recorder, and some other things on his desk. He has a lot of __________ on his desk.*

*As a noncount noun, stuff usually means "a group of various things." It is an inexact term used primarily in very informal spoken English. (Junk sometimes has the same meaning.)

Examples: I keep a lot of stuff in my desk drawers.
Look at all the stuff in this room!
8. The children got scared when they heard __________ during the storm.

9. Tools that are used for turning screws are called ________________.

10. I went to the store to get some nails, hammers, and screws. In other words, I bought some ________________.

11. Tonight I have to read 20 pages in my history book, do 30 algebra problems, and write a composition. In other words, I have a lot of ________________ to do tonight.

12. Ann took three suitcases, a shoulder bag, and a cosmetics case. In other words, she took a lot of ________________ on her trip.

13. Toronto is 365 ft./109 m. above sea level. The average annual precipitation in Toronto is 32 in./81 cm. The population of the metropolitan area is over 3,000,000. I found (this, these) ________________ in the encyclopedia.

14. I didn't feel good. Ann said, "You should see a doctor." Nick said, "You should go home and go to bed." Martha said, "You should drink fruit juice and rest." I got ________________ from three people.

15. My English is slowly getting better. My vocabulary is increasing. It's getting easier for me to write, and I make fewer mistakes. I can often understand people even when they talk fast. I'm satisfied with the ________________ I've made in learning English.

- EXERCISE 11. Count and noncount nouns; nouns as modifiers.
(Charts 7-3, 7-5, and 7-6)

Directions: Add final -s/-es to the nouns in italics if necessary. Do not add or change any other words.

1. Isabel always has fresh egg available because she raises chicken in her yard.

2. I had chicken and rice for dinner last night. (no change)

3. Outside my window, I can see a lot of tree, bush, grass, din, and flower.

4. Abdullah gave me some good advice. Nadia also gave me some good suggestion.

5. Yoko learned several new word today. She increased her vocabulary today.

6. I drank two glass of water.

7. Window are made of glass.

8. Mr. Chu wears glass because he has poor eyesight.
9. It took me a lot of time to finish my homework. I had a lot of assignment.

10. I have been in Mexico three times. I've spent a lot of time there.

11. There are typewriter, copier, telephone, and stapler in a typical business office. A business office needs a lot of equipment.

12. The air is full of smoke, dust, carbon monoxide, and many other harmful substances. We must seek to reduce air pollution.

13. I like to read good literature. I especially like to read novel, poetry, and essay. My favorite poet are Longfellow and Wordsworth. I have always liked their poem.

14. I like to experience different seasons. I like both hot and cold weather.

15. Being a parent has brought me a lot of happiness. Parenting requires a lot of patience, but it provides many rewards.

16. You can find a lot of time-saving machines in a modern factory. Modern factory need modern machinery.

17. Experienced travelers learn to travel with minimal luggage. My globe-trotting aunt can pack everything she needs into two small suitcases, whether her trip will last for three days or three months. I'm not an experienced traveler. When I travel, I invariably take along too much stuff. Last month I took a three-day trip to Chicago with twice as many clothes as I needed.

18. Recycling is important. Regular garbage will typically contain many things that can be recycled: magazine, envelope, cardboard box, old phone book, glass bottle, jar, copper, brass, tin can, etc.

19. There are more stars in the universe than there are grains of sand on all the beaches on earth.
## I. USING A or 0: GENERIC NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR COUNT NOUN</td>
<td><em>(a) A banana is yellow.</em></td>
<td>A speaker uses generic nouns to make generalizations. A generic noun represents a whole class of things; it is not a specific, real, concrete thing, but rather a symbol of a whole group. In (a) and (b): The speaker is talking about any banana, all bananas, bananas in general. In (c): The speaker is talking about any and all fruit, fruit in general. Notice that no article (0) is used to make generalizations with plural count nouns, as in (b), and with noncount nouns, as in (c).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL COUNT NOUN</td>
<td><em>(b) 0 Bananas are yellow.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONCOUNT NOUN</td>
<td><em>(c) 0 Fruit is good for you.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## II. USING A or SOME: INDEFINITE NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR COUNT NOUN</td>
<td><em>(d) I ate a banana.</em></td>
<td>Indefinite nouns are actual things (not symbols), but they are not specifically identified. In (d): The speaker is not referring to &quot;this banana&quot; or &quot;that banana&quot; or &quot;the banana you gave me. The speaker is simply saying that s/he ate one banana. The listener does not know nor need to know which specific banana was eaten; it was simply one banana out of that whole group of things in this world called bananas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL COUNT NOUN</td>
<td><em>(e) I ate some bananas.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONCOUNT NOUN</td>
<td><em>(f) I ate some fruit.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## III. USING THE: DEFINITE NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR COUNT NOUN</td>
<td><em>(g) Thank you for the banana.</em></td>
<td>A noun is definite when both the speaker and the listener are thinking about the same specific thing. In (g): The speaker uses the because the listener knows which specific banana the speaker is talking about, i.e., that particular banana which the listener gave to the speaker. Notice that the is used with both singular and plural count nouns and with noncount nouns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL COUNT NOUN</td>
<td><em>(h) Thank you for the bananas.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONCOUNT NOUN</td>
<td><em>(i) Thank you for the fruit.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Usually a/an is used with a singular generic count noun. Examples: A window is made of glass. A doctor heals sick people. Parents must give a child love. A box has six sides. An apple can be red, green, or yellow. However, the is sometimes used with a singular generic count noun (not a plural generic count noun, not a generic noncount noun). "Generic the" is commonly used with, in particular:

1. species of animals: The blue whale is the largest mammal on earth.

   The elephant is the largest land mammal.

2. inventions: Who invented the telephone? the wheel? the refrigerator? the airplane?

   The computer will play an increasingly large role in all of our lives.

3. musical instruments: Would like to learn to play the piano.

   Do you play the guitar?
EXERCISE 12. Article usage with generic nouns. (Chart 7-7)

Directions: Add a/an if necessary. Write 0 in the blank if the noun is noncount. Capitalize as appropriate.

1. An bird has wings.
2. An animal needs a regular supply of food.
3. Food is a necessity of life.
4. An concert is a musical performance.
5. An opera is a musical play.
7. Cup is a small container used for liquids.
8. Milk is nutritious.
9. Island is a piece of land surrounded by water.
10. Gold is a metal.
11. Bridge is a structure that spans a river.
12. Valley is an area of low land between two mountains.
13. Health is one of the most important things in life.
14. Adjective is a word that modifies a noun.
15. Knowledge is a source of power.
16. Tennis is a sport.
17. Tennis player has to practice long hours.
18. Tree needs water to survive.
19. Water is composed of oxygen and hydrogen.
20. Homework is a necessary part of a course of study.
21. Grammar is interesting and fun.
22. Sentence usually contains a subject and a verb.
23. English is used in airports throughout much of the world.
24. Air is free.
25. Orange is green until it ripens.
26. Fruit is good for you.
27. Iron is a metal.
28. Iron is an instrument used to take wrinkles out of cloth fabric.
29. Basketball is round.
30. Basketball is a sport.

EXERCISE 13. Article usage with indefinite nouns. (Chart 7-7)

Directions: Add a/an or some to these sentences.

1. The teacher made an announcement.
2. I saw a bird.
3. I saw some birds.
4. Rosa borrowed some money from her uncle.
5. I had an accident.
6. I have homework to do tonight.
7. There is a table in the room.
S. There is__________furniture in the room.

9. There are__________chairs in the room.

10. My father gave me__________advice.

11. Sonya is carrying__________suitcase.

12. Sonya is carrying__________luggage.

13. There was__________earthquake in California.

14. I got__________letters in the mail.

15. Helen got__________letter from her mother.

16. Jerry got__________mail yesterday.

17. A computer is__________machine that can solve problems.

18. The factory bought__________new machinery.

19.__________machines are powered by electricity. Some use other sources of energy.

20. I threw away__________junk.

21. I threw away__________old basket that was falling apart.

22. I threw away__________old boots that had holes in them.

EXERCISE 14. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 7-4 → 7-7)

Directions: A favorite game for adults and children alike is called "My Grandfather's Store." It is played with a group of people. Each person begins his/her turn by saying "I went to my grandfather's store and bought . . . . " The first person names something that begins with the letter "A." The second person repeats what the first person said, and then names something that begins with the letter "B." The game continues to the letter "Z," the end of the alphabet. The people in the group have to listen carefully and remember all the items previously named.

Example:

1st person:  
I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple.

2nd person:  
I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple and some bread.

3rd person:  
I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple, some bread, and a camel.

4th person:  
I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple, some bread, a camel, and some dark socks.

5th person:  Etc.

Assume that "grandfather's store" sells just about anything anyone would ever think of. Pay special attention to the use of a, an, and some.

Alternative beginnings:

Tomorrow I'm going to (name of a place). In my suitcase, I will pack . . . .

If I lived on a deserted island, I would need . . . .
7-8 GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR ARTICLE USAGE

(a) The sun is bright today. Please hand this book to the teacher. Please open the door. Omar is in the kitchen.

GUIDELINE: Use the when you know or assume that your listener is familiar with and thinking about the same specific thing or person you are talking about.

(b) Yesterday I saw some dogs. The dogs were chasing a cat. The cat was chasing a mouse. The mouse ran into a hole. The hole was very small.

GUIDELINE: Use the for the second mention of an indefinite noun.* In (b): first mention = some dogs, a cat, a mouse, a hole; second mention = the dogs, the cat, the mouse, the hole.

(c) CORRECT: Apples are my favorite fruit.
INCORRECT: The apples are my favorite fruit.

(d) CORRECT: Gold is a metal.
INCORRECT: The gold is a metal.

GUIDELINE: Do NOT use the with a plural count noun (e.g., apples) or a noncount noun (e.g., gold) when you are making a generalization.

(e) CORRECT: (1) I drove a car. / I drove the car.
(2) I drove that car.
(3) I drove his car.
INCORRECT: I drove car.

GUIDELINE: A singular count noun (e.g., car) is always preceded by:
(1) an article (an or the);
(2) this/that;
(3) a possessive pronoun.

*The is not used for the second mention of a generic noun. COMPARE:
(1) What color is a banana (generic noun)? A banana (generic noun) is yellow.
(2) Joe offered me a banana (indefinite noun) or an apple. I chose the banana (definite noun).

EXERCISE 15. Article usage. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)

Directions: In these dialogues, decide whether the speakers would probably use an or the.

1. A: I have an idea. Let's go on a picnic Saturday.
   B: Okay.

2. A: Did you have fun at the picnic yesterday?
   B: Sure did. And you?

3. A: You'd better have a good reason for being late!
   B: I do.

4. A: Did you think Mike gave for being late was believable?
   B: Not really.

5. A: Where's my blue shirt?
   B: It's in the washing machine.
   A: That's okay. I can wear a different shirt.

6. A: I wish we had a washing machine.
   B: So do I. It would make it a lot easier to do our laundry.

7. A: Can you repair my car for me?
   B: What's wrong with it?
   A: The radiator has a leak, and one of the windshield wipers doesn't work.
   B: Can you show me where the leak is?
B: I ran into _______ parked car when I swerved to avoid _______ big pothole in the street.
A: Did you damage _______ car?
B: A little.
A: What did you do?
B: I left _______ note for _______ owner of _______ car.
A: What did you write on _______ note?
B: My name and address. I also wrote _______ apology.

9. A: Have you seen my boots?
B: They’re in _______ closet in _______ front hallway.

☐ EXERCISE 16. Article usage. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)
Directions: Complete the sentences with a/an, the, or 0. Capitalize as appropriate.
1. B beef is a kind of P meat.
2. The beef we had for dinner last night was excellent.
3. Jim is wearing a straw hat today.
4. Jim likes to wear _______ hats.
5. _______ hat is _______ article of clothing.
6. _______ hats are _______ articles of clothing.
7. _______ brown hat on that hook over there belongs to Mark.
8. Everyone has _______ problems in _______ life.
9. My grandfather had _______ long life.
10. That book is about _______ life of Helen Keller.
11. Tommy wants to be _______ engineer when he grows up.
12. The Brooklyn Bridge was designed by _______ engineer.
13. John Roebling is _______ name of _______ engineer who designed the Brooklyn Bridge. He died in 1869 from _______ infection before _______ bridge was completed.
14. _______ people wear _______ jewelry to make themselves more attractive.
15. _______ jewelry Diana is wearing today is beautiful.
EXERCISE 17. Article usage. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with a/an, the, or 0.

1. We need to get ______ new phone.

2. Alex, would you please answer ______ phone?

3. ______ people use ______ plants in ______ many different ways. Plants supply us with oxygen. They are a source of ______ lifesaving medicines. We use plant products to build ______ houses and to make ______ paper and ______ textiles.

4. When you look at ______ sandy shore, it might seem practically empty of ______ animals. This appearance is deceptive, however. Beneath ______ surface, the sand is full of ______ life. It is teeming with ______ crabs, ______ shrimp, ______ worms, ______ snails, and ______ other kinds of ______ marine animals.

5. Our children enjoyed going to the beach yesterday. When they dug in ______ sand, they found various kinds of ______ animals. Susie found ______ crab, and so did Johnny. ______ crab Johnny found pinched him, which made him cry. But he had ______ good time at ______ beach anyway.

6. The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich. It eats just about anything it can reach, including ______ stones, ______ glass, and ______ keys. It can kill ______ person with one kick.

7. Do you ever gaze into ______ space and wonder if ______ other life forms exist in ______ universe?

8. ______ most mirrors are made from ______ glass to which ______ thin layer of ______ silver or ______ aluminum has been applied.
9. In recent newspaper article, I read about Australian swimmer who was saved from shark by group of dolphins. When shark attacked swimmer, dolphins chased it away. They saved swimmer's life.

10. I heard on the radio that there is evidence that dolphins suffer in captivity. Dolphins that are free in nature live around 40 years. Captive dolphins live average of 12 years. It is believed that some captive dolphins commit suicide.

11. phonograph records have become old-fashioned. They have been supplanted by compact discs, which are commonly referred to as CDs.

12. Look. There's fly walking on ceiling. It's upside down. Do you suppose fly was flying rightside up and flipped over at the last second, or was it flying upside down when it landed on ceiling?

EXERCISE 18. Preview: expressions of quantity. (Chart 7-9)
Directions: Before you look at the next chart, try this exercise. Draw a line through the expressions that CANNOT be used to complete the sentence correctly.

Example: I bought furniture.
   a. some
   b. a couple of
   c. several
   d. too much
   e. too many

1. I received letters.
   a. two
   b. a couple of
   c. both
   d. several
   e. some
   f. a lot of
   g. plenty of
   h. too many
   i. too much
   j. a few
   k. a little
   l. a number of
   m. a great deal of
   n. hardly any
   o. no

2. I received mail.
   a. two
   b. a couple of
   c. both
   d. several
   e. some
   f. a lot of
   g. plenty of
   h. too many
   i. too much
   j. a few
   k. a little
   l. a number of
   m. a great deal of
   n. hardly any
   o. no
## 7-9  Expressions of Quantity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expressions of Quantity</th>
<th>Used with Count Nouns</th>
<th>Used with Noncount Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) one</td>
<td>one apple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>each</td>
<td>each apple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every</td>
<td>every apple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) two, etc.</td>
<td>two apples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>both</td>
<td>both apples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a couple of</td>
<td>a couple of apples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a few</td>
<td>a few apples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>several</td>
<td>several apples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>many apples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a number of</td>
<td>a number of apples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) a little</td>
<td></td>
<td>a little rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td></td>
<td>much rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a great deal of</td>
<td></td>
<td>a great deal of rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) no</td>
<td></td>
<td>no rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some/any</td>
<td>some/any apples</td>
<td>some/any rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lot of /lots of</td>
<td>a lot of /lots of</td>
<td>a lot of /lots of rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plenty of</td>
<td>plenty of apples</td>
<td>plenty of rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>most apples</td>
<td>most rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>all apples</td>
<td>all rice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*O* = not used. For example, you can say “I ate one apple” but NOT “I ate one rice.”

### Exercise 19. Expressions of Quantity. (Chart 7-9)

**Directions:** Draw a line through the expressions that CANNOT be used to complete the sentence correctly. Item 1 has been started for you.

1. Jake has ____ homework.
   - a. three
   - b. several
   - c. some
   - d. a lot of
   - e. too much
   - f. too many
   - g. a few
   - h. a little
   - i. a number of
   - j. a great deal of
   - k. hardly any
   - l. no

2. Isabel has ____ assignments.
   - a. three
   - b. several
   - c. some
   - d. a lot of
   - e. too much
   - f. too many
   - g. a few
   - h. a little
   - i. a number of
   - j. a great deal of
   - k. hardly any
   - l. no
EXERCISE 20. MUCH vs. MANY. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Write *much or many*. Also write the plural form of the italicized nouns as necessary. In some sentences, you will need to choose the correct verb in parentheses.

1. I haven't visited **many cities** in the United States.

2. There (isn’t/aren’t) **isn’t** much money in my bank account.

3. I haven't gotten **mail** lately.

4. I don't get **letter**.

5. There (isn’t/aren’t) **hotel** in my hometown.

6. There (is/are) **furniture** in Anna's living room.

7. There (isn't/aren't) **traffic** today.

8. There (isn’t/aren’t) **car** on the road today.

9. I can't go with you because I have too **work** to do.

10. A: How **side** does a pentagon have?
    
    B: Five.
11. I couldn’t find ______________ information in that book.
12. How______________ homework did the teacher assign?
13. I haven’t met ______________ people since I came here.
14. How______________ postage does this letter need?
15. I think there (is/are) ______________ too______________ violence on television.
16. I don’t have______________ patience with incompetence.
17. The doctor has so ______________ patient that she has to work at least twelve
   hours a day.
18. A: How______________ tooth does the average person have?
   B: Thirty-two.
19. There (isn’t/aren’t) ______________ ______________ international news in
   the local paper.
20. How______________ fish (is/are) ______________ there in the ocean?
21. How______________ continent (is/are) ______________ there in the world?
22. How______________ progress has your country made in improving the quality of
   medical care available to the average citizen?

EXERCISE 21. Expressions of quantity. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: If the given noun can be used to complete the sentence, write it in its correct
form (singular or plural). If the given noun cannot be used to complete the sentence,
write 0.

1. Helen bought several ....
   lamp  ____________ lames
   furniture  Ø
   jewelry  Ø
   necklace  necklaces

2. Jack bought too much ....
   shoe  Ø
   salt  salt
   equipment  equipment
   tool  Ø

3. Sam bought a lot of ....
   stamp  stamps
   rice  rice
   stuff  stuff
   thing  things

4. Alice bought a couple of ....
   bread
   loaf of bread
   honey
   jar of honey
5. I read a few ....
   novel
   literature
   poem
   poetry

6. I bought some ....
   orange juice
   light bulb
   hardware
   computer
   software

7. We need plenty of ....
   sleep
   information
   fact
   help

8. I saw both ....
   woman
   movie
   scene
   scenery

9. Nick has a number of ....
   shin
   homework
   pen
   chalk

10. I don't have a great deal of ....
    patience
    wealth
    friend
    pencil

11. I need a little ....
    luck
    money
    advice
    new hat

12. The author has many ....
    idea
    theory
    hypothesis
    knowledge

EXERCISE 22. Expressions of quantity. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Use many or much* with the following words, changing the words to plural if necessary. Pronounce final -s/-es loudly and clearly. The cuer's book is open. The responder's book is closed. If you use this exercise in pairwork, switch roles after Item 14.

Examples: sentence \rightarrow many sentences
water \rightarrow much water
thief \rightarrow many thieves

1. furniture 8. piece 15. music 22. hypothesis
2. desk 9. mouse 16. progress 23. mail
3. branch 10. advice 17. race 24. office
4. equipment 11. advice 18. knowledge 25. slang
5. machinery 12. homework 19. marriage 26. roof
6. machine 13. prize 20. information 27. shelf
7. woman 14. goose 21. luck 28. tooth

*You may want to practice some of these words in sentences. Much is usually not used in affirmative sentences; instead, a lot of or a great deal of is frequently used. Much is used primarily in negative sentences and questions.
Using A Few and FEW; A Little and LITTLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a few</th>
<th>a little</th>
<th>A few and a little* give a positive idea; they indicate that something exists, is present, as in (a) and (b).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| (a) She has been here only two weeks, but she has already made **a few friends**.  
(Please idea: She has made **some** friends.) | (b) I'm very pleased. I've been able to save **a little money** this month.  
(Please idea: I have saved **some** money instead of spending **all** of it.) |                                                                 |
| few               | little            | Few and little (without a) give a negative idea; they indicate that something is largely absent.  
Very (+few/little) makes the negative stronger, the number/amount smaller. |
| (c) I feel sorry for her. She has **(very) few friends**.  
(Negative idea: She does not have many friends; she has almost no friends.) | (d) I have **(very) little money**. I don't even have enough money to buy food for dinner.  
(Negative idea: I do not have much money; I have almost no money.) |                                                                 |

* A few and few are used with plural count nouns. A little and little are used with noncount nouns.

EXERCISE 23. Using A FEW and FEW; A LITTLE and LITTLE. (Chart 7-10)

Directions: Without substantially changing the meaning of the sentence, replace the italicized words with a few, (very) few, a little, or (very) little.

1. I think that **some** lemon juice on fish makes it taste better.
   **(very) few**

2. Many people are multilingual, but **not many** people speak more than ten languages.

3. **Some** sunshine is better than none.

4. January is a cold and dreary month in the northern states. There is **not much** sunshine during that month.

5. My parents like to watch TV. Every evening they watch **two or three** programs on TV before they go to bed.

6. I don't watch TV very much because there are **hardly any** television programs that I enjoy.

7. If a door squeaks, **several** drops of oil in the right places can prevent future trouble.

8. If your door squeaks, put **some** oil on the hinges.

9. Mr. Adams doesn't like to wear rings on his fingers.
   He wears **almost no** jewelry.
EXERCISE 24. Using A FEW and FEW; A LITTLE and LITTLE. (Chart 7-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with a few, (very) few, a little, or (very) little.

1. Do you have ___a few___ minutes? I'd like to ask you ___a few___ questions. I need ___a little___ more information.

2. Diana's previous employer gave her a good recommendation because she makes ___very few___ mistakes in her work.

3. After Steve tasted the soup, he added ___salt___ to it.

4. I don't like a lot of salt on my food. I add ___salt___ to my food.

5. I like music. I like to listen to ___music___ after dinner before I begin studying.

6. Driving downtown to the stadium for the baseball game was easy. We got there quickly because there was ___traffic___.

7. Jim is having a lot of trouble adjusting to eighth grade. He seems to be unpopular. Unfortunately, he has ___friends___.

8. We're looking forward to our vacation. We're planning to spend ___days___ with my folks and then ___days___ with my husband's folks. After that, we're going to go to a fishing resort in Canada.

9. A: Are you finished?
   B: Not yet. I need ___more minutes___.

10. A: Are you finished?
   B: Not yet. I need ___more time___.

11. I was hungry, so I ate ___nuts___.

12. Because the family is very poor, the children have ___toys___.

13. Into each life, ___rain must fall. (a saying)___

14. Natasha likes sweet tea. She usually adds ___honey___ to her tea. Sometimes she adds ___milk, too. ___

15. Has anyone ever called you on the phone and tried to sell you something you didn't want? I have ___patience with people who interrupt my dinner to try to sell me a magazine.

16. He's a lucky little boy. Because his parents have taken good care of him, he has had ___problems in his young life. ___

124 CHAPTER 7
7-11 USING OF IN EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY

(a) CORRECT: A lot of books are paperbacks.
(b) CORRECT: A lot of my books are paperbacks.
(c) INCORRECT: A lot books are paperbacks.

Some expressions of quantity (such as a lot of) always contain of, as in (a) and (b). See GROUP ONE below.

(d) CORRECT: Many of my books are paperbacks.
(e) INCORRECT: Many my books are paperbacks.
(f) CORRECT: Many books are paperbacks.
(g) INCORRECT: Many of books are paperbacks.

Sometimes of is used with an expression of quantity, as in (d), and sometimes of is NOT used with the same expression of quantity, as in (f). See GROUP TWO below.

GROUP ONE: EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY THAT ALWAYS CONTAIN OF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a lot of</th>
<th>a number of</th>
<th>a majority of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lots of</td>
<td>a great deal of</td>
<td>plenty of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GROUP TWO: EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY THAT SOMETIMES CONTAIN OF AND SOMETIMES NOT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all (of)</th>
<th>many (of)</th>
<th>one (of)</th>
<th>both (of)</th>
<th>some (of)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most (of)</td>
<td>much (of)</td>
<td>two (of)</td>
<td>several (of)</td>
<td>any (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost all (of)</td>
<td>a few (of)</td>
<td>three (of)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a little (of)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(h) Many of my books are in English.
(i) Many of those books are in English.
(j) Many of the books on that shelf are in English.

Of is used with the expressions of quantity in GROUP TWO when the noun is specific. A noun is specific when it is preceded by:
1. my, John's (or any possessive), as in (h).
2. this, that, these, or those, as in (i).
3. the, as in (j).

Of is NOT used with the expressions of quantity in GROUP TWO if the noun it modifies is nonspecific. In (k): The noun books is nonspecific; ie., the speaker is not referring to "your books" or "these books" or "the books on that desk." The speaker is not referring to specific books, but to books in general.

(k) Many books are in English.

EXERCISE 25. Using OF in expressions of quantity. (Chart 7-11)

Directions: Add of if necessary. Write 0 if of is not necessary.

1. I know several of Jack's friends.
2. I've made several of friends lately.
3. Some of students are lazy. Most of students are hard-working.
4. Some of the students in Mrs. Gray's class are a little lazy.
5. Most of books have an index.
6. Most of Ali's books are written in Arabic.
7. I bought a few of books yesterday.
8. I've read a few of those books.
9. I'm new here. I don't know many of people yet.

Nouns 125
10. I've just moved into a new apartment. I don't know many____ my neighbors yet.

11. Have you taken any____ trips lately?

12. Sam hasn't met any____ the students in the other class.

13. I usually get a lot____ mail.

14. A lot____ the mail I get is junk mail.

15. Our class has 30 students. Mr. Freeman's class has 25 students. Ms. North's class has 20 students. Of the three classes, our class has the most____ students.*

16. Most____ the students in our class are very smart.*

17. Out of all the students, Ali usually asks the most____ questions during class. Most____ his questions are about grammar.

18. Most____ people need six to eight hours of sleep every night.

19. Most____ the people in this class always hand in their assignments on time.

20. China has the most____ people of any country in the world.

---

**7-12 ALL (OF) AND BOTH (OF)**

| (a) CORRECT: All of the students in my class are here. | When a noun is specific (e.g., the students), using of after all is optional as in (a) and (b). |
| (b) CORRECT: All the students in my class are here. | When a noun is nonspecific, of does NOT follow all, as in (c). |
| (c) CORRECT: All students must have an I.D. card. | When a noun is nonspecific, of does NOT follow all, as in (c). |
| (d) INCORRECT: All of students must have an I.D. card. | When a noun is nonspecific, of does NOT follow both, as in (f). |
| (e) I know both (of) those men. | Similarly, using of after both is optional when the noun is specific, as in (e). |
| (f) CORRECT: I know both men. | When a noun is nonspecific, of does NOT follow both, as in (f). |
| (g) INCORRECT: I know both of men. |

**EXERCISE 26. ALL (OF) AND BOTH (OF). (Chart 7-12)**

Directions: Of is not necessary in any of these sentences. In the sentences in which the use of of is optional, write (of) in the blanks. If of is not possible because the noun is nonspecific, write Ø.

1. All (Ø) the children listened to the story.

2. Almost all (Ø) children like fairy tales.

**COMPARE:****

(1) The most = superlative. The superlative is used to compare three or more persons or things. The most is never immediately followed by of. Example: Out of all the boys, Tom are the most food.

(2) Most (not preceded by the) = an expression of quantity whose meaning ranges from "over fifty percent" to "almost all." Example: Most of the food at that restaurant is good, but not all of it.
3. Both ______ those books are mine.

4. I bought two books. Both ______ books were expensive.

5. Almost all ______ students study hard for exams.

6. All ______ birds have wings, but not all ______ birds can fly. Both ______ the birds in the picture are incapable of flight.

7. I have two brothers. Both ______ my brothers ______ are in school.

8. Do you know all ______ the people in your biology class?

9. All ______ the students in my class are studying English.

10. Not all ______ people are friendly, but most ______ people have kind hearts.

□ EXERCISE 27. Using OF in expressions of quantity. (Charts 7-11 and 7-12)
Directions: Add of and/or write 0.

1. Some ______ fish are surface feeders. Others are bottom feeders.

2. Some ______ the fish we caught were too small to keep.

3. Almost all ______ the fish in Jennifer's aquarium died. She finally had to admit that she didn't know much about taking care of tropical fish.

4. I bought several ______ books at the used book sale.

5. Several ______ my friends and I have volunteered to clean up the litter left on the school grounds by thoughtless students.

6. The airline was crippled by a strike last month, but now it's over. All ______ the pilots were happy to get back to work after the strike.

7. Most ______ people have a little ______ trouble using the currency in a foreign country for a few ______ days after they first arrive.

8. There's nothing I like better than a good book, but I haven't done much reading for pleasure lately. Most ______ the reading I do is related to my work.

9. It's important for young people to have goals in their lives. My mother always told me that any ______ dream is worth pursuing if I know in my heart it is what I want to do. Few ______ people have made great accomplishments in life without first having a dream—a personal, inner vision of what is possible.
10. Square dancing is a traditional folk dance in the United States. We all had a lot of fun learning to square dance at the party. Many people at the party had never done any square dancing before.

11. When my parents were young, they had little opportunity to travel.

12. A few children are given their first watch by the time they are six years old. However, most these children cannot tell time correctly.

7-13 SINGULAR EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY: ONE, EACH, EVERY

(a) One student was late to class.
(b) Each student has a schedule.
(c) Every student has a schedule.

(d) One of the students was late to class.
(e) Each (one) of the students has a schedule.
(f) Every one of the students has a schedule.

One, each, and every are followed immediately by singular count nouns (never plural nouns, never noncount nouns).

One of, each of, and every one of* are followed by specific plural count nouns (never singular nouns; never noncount nouns).

*COMPARE: Every one (two words) is an expression of quantity; e.g., I have read every one of those books. Everyone (one word) is an indefinite pronoun; it has the same meaning as everybody; e.g., Everyone/Everybody has a schedule.

NOTE: Each and every have essentially the same meaning.
Each is used when the speaker is thinking of one person/thing at a time: Each student has a schedule. = Mary has a schedule. Hiroshi has a schedule. Carlos has a schedule. Sabrina has a schedule. (etc.)
Every is used when the speaker means "all": Every student has a schedule. = All of the students have schedules.

EXERCISE 28. Using ONE, EACH, and EVERY. (Chart 7-13)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form, singular or plural, of the noun in parentheses.

1. There is only one girl on the sixth-grade soccer team. (girl)
2. Only one of the girls in the sixth grade is on the soccer team. (girl)
3. Each of the children got a present. (child)
4. Mr. Hoover gave a present to each child. (child)
5. We invited every member of the club. (member)
6. Every one of the members came. (member)
EXERCISE 29. Using ONE, EACH, and EVERY. (Chart 7-13)

Directions: Some (but not all) of the following sentences contain errors. Find and correct the errors.

1. It's important for every student to have a book.
2. Each of the students in my class has a book. (no change)
3. Spain is one of the country I want to visit.
4. The teacher gave each of students a test paper.
5. Every student in the class did well on the test.
6. Every furniture in that room is made of wood.
7. One of the equipment in our office is broken.
8. I gave a present to each of the woman in the room.
9. One of my favorite place in the world is an island in the Caribbean Sea.
10. Each one of your suitcases will be checked when you go through customs.
11. It's impossible for one human being to know every languages in the world.
12. I found each of the error in this exercise.

EXERCISE 30. Activity: expressions of quantity. (Charts 7-9 → 7-13)

Directions: Conduct an opinion poll among your classmates. Report your findings using expressions of quantity. Prepare five yes/no questions that ask for opinions or information about the respondents' likes, dislikes, habits, or experiences.

Possible questions:

1. Do you read an English language newspaper every day?
2. Do you like living in this city?
3. Do you have a car?
4. Have you ever ridden a horse?
5. Are you going to be in bed before midnight tonight?

Record your classmates' responses. Then in your report, make generalizations about this information by using expressions of quantity. For example:

1. Only a few of the people in this class read an English newspaper every day.
2. Most of them like living in this city.
3. Three of the people in this class have cars.
4. About half of them have ridden a horse at some time in their lifetime.
5. Almost all of them are going to be in bed before midnight tonight.
EXERCISE 31. Review: expressions of quantity. (Charts 7-9 → 7-13)

Directions: Most of the statements below are inaccurate overgeneralizations. Make each statement clearer or more accurate by adding an expression of quantity. Add other words to the sentence or make any changes you wish. The following list suggests expressions of quantity you might use. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

| all (of) | many (of) | one (of) | some (of) |
| each (of) | much (of) | two (of) | several (of) |
| every | a number of | half of | (a) few (of) |
| almost all (of) | a great deal of | 50 percent of | (a) little (of) |
| most (of) | a lot of | a majority of | hardly any (of) |
| | | hundreds of | none of |
| | | thousands of | no |

Example: My classmates are from Japan.
Possible sentences: → Most of my classmates are from Japan.
→ All (of) my classmates are from Japan.
→ One (of) my classmates is from Japan.
→ Hardly any (of) my classmates are from Japan.
→ None (of) my classmates is from Japan.

1. My classmates speak Arabic.
2. People are friendly.
3. The pages in this book contain illustrations.
4. Babies are born bald.
5. The students in my class are from South America.
6. People like to live alone.
7. The people I know like to live alone.
8. The countries in the world are in the Northern Hemisphere.
10. Children like to read scary stories.
11. The children in my country go to school.
12. Airplanes depart and arrive precisely on time.
13. The rivers in the world are polluted.
14. The pollution in the world today is caused by human beings.
15. City dwellers do not have cars.
16. The food at (name of the place you usually eat) is very good.
EXERCISE 1. Preview: personal pronouns. (Chart 8-1)

Directions: Correct the errors you find in pronoun usage.

1. Some North American food is very good, but I don't like most of them.

2. When we were schoolgirls, my sister and me used to play badminton after school every day.

3. If you want to pass you're exams, you had better study very hard for it.

4. The work had to be finished by my boss and I after the store had closed for the night.

5. A hippopotamus spends most of it's time in the water of rivers and lakes.

6. After work, Mr. Gray asked to speak to Tim and I about the company's new policies. He explained it to us and asked for ours opinions.

7. A child should learn to respect other people. They need to learn how to treat other people politely, including their playmates.

8. My friends asked to borrow my car because their's was in the garage for repairs.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>8-1 PERSONAL PRONOUNS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUBJECT PRONOUN</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) I read *a book.* *It* was good.
(b) I read *some books.* *They* were good.
(c) *I* like tea. *Do you* like tea too?
(d) John has a car. *He* drives to work.
(e) John works in my office. *I know him* well.
(f) I talk to *him* every day.
(g) That book is *hers.*
(h) *Yours* is over there.
(h) *Incorrect:* That book is *her's.*
(i) *Your* book is over there.
(j) A bird uses *its* wings to fly.
(k) *Incorrect:* A bird uses *it's* wings to fly.
(l) *It's* cold today.
(m) The Harbour Inn is my favorite old hotel. *It's been* in business since 1933.

**EXERCISE 2. Personal pronouns: antecedents.** (Chart 8-1)

*Directions:* Identify the personal pronouns and their antecedents.

1. Jack has a part-time job. He works at a fast-food restaurant.
   → (*he* — a pronoun; *Jack* = the antecedent)
2. Most monkeys don't like water, but they can swim well when they have to.
3. The teacher graded the students' papers last night. She returned them during class today.
4. Nancy took an apple with her to work. She ate it at lunch time.
5. A dog makes a good pet if it is properly trained.
6. Tom’s cat is named Maybelle Alice. She* is very independent. She never obeys Tom. His dogs, on the other hand, obey him gladly. They like to please him.

**EXERCISE 3. Possessive pronouns and adjectives.** (Chart 8-1)

*Directions:* Choose the correct words in *italics*.

1. This is *(my)* mine umbrella. *(Your)* Yours umbrella is over there.

2. This umbrella is *my* mine. The other one is *your* yours.

3. Mary and Bob have *their* theirs books. In other words, Mary has *her* hers and Bob has *his* him.

4. A honeybee has two wings on each side of *its* it’s body.

5. *Its* It’s true that a homing pigeon will find *its* it’s way home even though it begins *its* it’s trip in unfamiliar territory.

6. I have a pet. *Its* It’s name is Squeak. *Its* It’s a turtle. *Its* It’s been my pet for two years.

7. *Our* Ours house is almost the same as *our* ours neighbors’ house. The only difference in appearance is that *our* ours is gray and *their* theirs is white.

8. When I was in Florida, I observed an interesting fish-eating bird called an anhinga. *It* They dives into the water and spears *its* it’s prey on *its* it’s long, pointed bill. After emerging from the water, *it* they tosses the fish into the air and catches *it* them in mid-air, then swallows *it* them headfirst. *Its* It’s interesting to watch anhingas in action. I enjoy watching *it* them.

---
*A*If the sex of a particular animal is known, usually *she* or *he* is used instead of it.
8–2 PERSONAL PRONOUNS: AGREEMENT WITH GENERIC NOUNS AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

(a) A student walked into the room. She was looking for the teacher.
(b) A student walked into the room. He was looking for the teacher.

(c) A student should always do his assignments.
(d) A student should always do his her assignments.
    A student should always do his or her assignments.

(e) Students should always do their assignments.

In (a) and (b): The pronouns refer to particular individuals whose gender is known. The nouns are not generic.

A generic noun* does not refer to any person or thing in particular; rather, it represents a whole group. In (c): A student is a generic noun; it refers to anyone who is a student.

With a generic noun, a singular masculine pronoun has been used traditionally, but many English speakers now use both masculine and feminine pronouns to refer to a singular generic noun, as in (d). The use of both masculine and feminine pronouns can create awkward-sounding sentences.

(e) Students should always do their assignments.

Problems with choosing masculine and/or feminine pronouns can often be avoided by using a plural rather than a singular generic noun, as in (e).

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

| everyone  | someone  | anyone  | no one** |
| everybody | somebody | anybody | nobody   |
| everything| something | anything | nothing  |

(f) Somebody left his book on the desk.
(g) Everyone has his or her own ideas.
(h) INFORMAL:
    Somebody left their book on the desk.
    Everyone has their own ideas.

A singular pronoun is used in formal English to refer to an indefinite pronoun, as in (f) and (g). In everyday informal English, a plural personal pronoun is often used to refer to an indefinite pronoun, as in (h).

*See Chart 7-7, p. 112, Basic Article Usage.
**No one can also be written with a hyphen in British English: No-one heard me.

EXERCISE 4. Personal pronoun use with generic nouns. (Chart 8-2)

Directions: Use plural instead of singular generic nouns where possible. Change pronouns and verbs as necessary. Discuss the advantages of using plural rather than singular generic nouns.

1. When a student wants to study, he or she should find a quiet place.
   → When students want to study, they should find a quiet place.

2. I talked to a student in my chemistry class. I asked to borrow his notes from the class I missed. He gave them to me gladly. (no change)

3. Each student in Biology 101 has to spend three hours per week in the laboratory, where he or she does various experiments by following the directions in his or her lab manual.

134 CHAPTER 8
4. A pharmacist fills prescriptions, but s/he is not allowed to prescribe medicine.

5. When the pharmacist handed my prescription to me, he made sure I understood how to take the medicine.

6. A citizen has two primary responsibilities. He should vote in every election, and he should serve willingly on a jury.

7. We listened to a really interesting lecturer last night. She discussed her experiences as an archaeologist in Argentina.

8. A lecturer needs to prepare his or her notes carefully so that he or she does not lose his or her place while he or she is delivering his or her speech.

Exercise 5. Personal pronoun use with indefinite pronouns. (Chart 8-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with pronouns, choosing the correct verb in parentheses as necessary. Discuss formal vs. informal pronoun usage.

1. Somebody left his, his or her, Key or his, their books on my desk.

2. Anyone can learn how to dance if__________ (wants, want) to.

3. Hmmm. Someone forgot__________umbrella. I wonder whose it is.

4. Everyone who came to the picnic brought__________own food.

5. A: Is that your notebook?
   B: No. It belongs to one of the other students.
   A: Look on the inside cover. Did__________write__________name there?

6. If anyone calls, please ask ______,_______ to leave a message.

7. Everyone was shocked when _________heard the news. Nobody opened _________mouth. No one made a sound.

8. Nobody can always do whatever _________(pleases, please) in life.
**8-3 PERSONAL PRONOUNS: AGREEMENT WITH COLLECTIVE NOUNS**

### EXAMPLES OF COLLECTIVE NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>audience</th>
<th>couple</th>
<th>family</th>
<th>public</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>crowd</td>
<td>government</td>
<td>staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>committee</td>
<td>faculty</td>
<td>group</td>
<td>team</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) My family is large. *It* is composed of nine members.

(b) My family is loving and supportive. *They* are always ready to help me.

When a collective noun refers to a single impersonal unit, a singular gender-neutral pronoun (*it, its*) is used, as in (a).

When a collective noun refers to a collection of various individuals, a plural pronoun (*they, them, their*) is used, as in (b).

*NOTE: When the collective noun refers to a collection of individuals, the verb may be either singular or plural: *My family is OR are loving and supportive.* A singular verb is generally preferred in American English. A plural verb is used more frequently in British English, especially with the words *government* or *public.* (American: *The government is planning many changes.* British: *The government are planning many changes.*)

**EXERCISE 6.** Personal pronoun use with collective nouns. (Chart 8-3)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with pronouns. In some of the sentences, there is more than one possibility. Choose the appropriate singular or plural verb in parentheses where necessary.

1. I have a wonderful family. I love *them* very much, and *they* love _
   
   *(loves, love)* me.

2. I looked up some information about the average American family. I found out that _
   
   *(consists, consist)* of 2.3 children.

3. The crowd at the soccer game was huge. _
   
   *exceeded* 100,000 people.

4. The crowd became more and more excited as the premier's motorcade approached. _
   
   *Began* to shout and wave flags in the air.
5. The soccer team felt unhappy because___________ had lost in the closing moments of the game.

6. A basketball team is relatively small. _________________(doesn't, don't) have as many members as a baseball team.

7. The audience clapped enthusiastically. Obviously___________had enjoyed the concert.

8. The audience filled the room to overflowing. ___________ (was, were) larger than I had expected.

9. The class is planning a party for the last day of school. _________________(is, are) going to bring many different kinds of food and invite some of.___________ friends to celebrate with___________.

10. The class is too small. ___________ (is, are) going to be canceled.

EXERCISE 7. Preview of reflexive pronouns. (Chart 8-4)
Directions: Draw a self-portrait. Show it to the rest of the class. Answer the questions in complete sentences.

1. Who drew a picture of herself? Name someone.
2. Who drew pictures of themselves?
3. (...), did you and (... ) draw pictures of yourselves?
4. (...), what did you draw?
5. Who drew a picture of himself? Name someone.

EXERCISE 8. Preview of reflexive pronouns. (Chart 8-4)
Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate reflexive pronouns.

1. Everyone drew self-portraits. I drew a picture of ______myself______.
2. Ali drew a picture of__________________________
3. Rosa drew a picture of__________________________
4. The children drew pictures of__________________________.
5. We drew pictures of__________________________.
6. Olga, you drew a picture of ________________________, didn't you?
7. All of you drew pictures of__________________________, didn't you?
8. When one draws a picture of__________________________, it is called a self-portrait.
### Reflexive Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>myself</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yourself</td>
<td>yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herself, himself,</td>
<td>theirselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itself, oneself</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Larry was in the theater. I saw him. I talked to him.

(b) I saw myself in the mirror. I looked at myself for a long time.

(c) INCORRECT: I saw me in the mirror.

(d) INCORRECT: I saw me in the mirror. I looked at myself for a long time.

(e) INCORRECT: I saw myself in the mirror. I looked at myself for a long time.

(f) Anna lives by herself.

**EXERCISE 9. Reflexive pronouns.**

**Directions:** Complete the sentences with appropriate reflexive pronouns.

1. Tommy told a lie. He was ashamed of ________.  
2. Masako cut ________ while she was chopping vegetables.
3. People surround ________ with friends and family during holidays.
4. Rita is careful about her weight, but she allows ________ one piece of candy a day.
5. Alex, you need to eat better and get more exercise. You should take better care of ________. Your father takes care of ________, and I take care of ________. Your father and I are healthy because we take good care of ________. People who take care of ________ have a better chance of staying healthy than those who don't.
6. Omar thinks Oscar is telling the truth. So does Ricardo. ________ don't believe Oscar's story for a minute!
7. A: Did Mr. Yun's secretary answer the phone?  
   B: No. Mr. Yun ________ answered the phone. I was very surprised.
8. A: Should I marry Steve?
   B: No one can make that decision for you, Ann. Only you _________ can
   make such an important decision about your own life.

9. Now that their children are grown, Mr. and Mrs. Grayson live by _________.

10. Nadia didn’t join the rest of us. She sat in the back of the room by _________.

EXERCISE 10. Reflexive pronouns. (Chart 8-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with a word or expression from the list and an
appropriate reflexive pronoun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>angry at</th>
<th>introduced</th>
<th>promised</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>killed</td>
<td>proud of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entertained</td>
<td>laugh at</td>
<td>talking to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feeling sorry for</td>
<td>pat</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Karen Williams never took lessons. She ______ taught herself how to play the piano.

2. Did Roberto have a good time at the party? Did he ________?

3. All of you did a good job. You should be ________.

4. You did a good job, Barbara. You should ________ on the back.

5. A man down the street committed suicide. We were all shocked by the news that he had ________.

6. The children played very well without adult supervision. They ________ by playing school.

7. I had always wanted to meet Mr. Anderson. When I saw him at a party last night, I walked over and ________ to him.

8. Nothing good ever comes from self-pity. You should stop ________, George, and start doing something to solve your problems.

9. People might think you’re a little crazy, but ________ is one way to practice using English.

10. Humor can ease the trials and tribulations of life. Sometimes we have to be able to ________.

11. Carol made several careless mistakes at work last week, and her boss is getting impatient with her. Carol has ________ to do better work in the future.
12. Yesterday Fred's car ran out of gas. He had to walk a long way to a gas station. He is still ____________ for forgetting to fill the tank.

### 8-5 USING YOU, ONE, AND THEY AS IMPERSONAL PRONOUNS

| (a) | One should always be polite. |
| (b) | How does one get to 5th Avenue from here? |
| (c) | You should always be polite. |
| (d) | How do you get to 5th Avenue from here? |
| (e) | One should take care of one's health. |
| (f) | One should take care of his health. |
| (g) | One should take care of his or her health. |

In (a) and (b): One means "any person, people in general."
In (c) and (d): You means "any person, people in general."

One is much more formal than you. Impersonal you, rather than one, is used more frequently in everyday English.

Notice the pronouns that may be used in the same sentence to refer back to one: (e) is typical in British usage and formal American usage, (f) is principally American usage, (g) is stylistically awkward.

(h) — Did Ann lose her job?
   — Yes. They fired her.
(i) — They mine graphite in Brazil, don't they?
   — Yes. Brazil is one of the leading graphite producers in the world.

They is used as an impersonal pronoun in spoken or very informal English to mean "some people or somebody."
They has no stated antecedent. The antecedent is implied. In (h): They = the people Ann worked for.

*In written or more formal English, the passive is generally preferred to the use of impersonal they:
Active: They fired her. Active: They mine graphite in Brazil, don't they?
Passive: She was fired. Passive: Graphite is mined in Brazil, isn't it?
**EXERCISE 11.** Impersonal YOU and THEY. (Chart 8-5)

*Directions:* Discuss the meanings of the pronouns in *italics.*

1. I agree with Jim’s decision to quit his corporate job and go to art school. I think *you* need to follow your dreams.

   -> The pronouns refer to everyone, anyone, people in general, all of us.

2. Jake, *if* you really want my advice, I think *you* should find a new job.

   -> The pronouns refer to Jake, a specific person.

3. Wool requires special handling. *If* you wash wool in hot water, it will shrink. *You* shouldn’t throw a wool sweater into a washing machine with your cottons.

4. Alex, I told *you* not to wash your sweater in hot water. Now look at it. It’s ruined!

5. Generosity is its own reward. *You* always get back more than *you* give.

6. Sonya, let’s make a deal. *If* you wash the dishes, I’ll take out the garbage.

7. The earth’s environment is getting worse. *They* say that the ozone layer is being depleted more and more every year.

8. Memory is selective. Often *you* remember only what *you* want to remember. *If* you ask two people to tell *you* about an experience they shared, they might tell *you* two different stories.

9. I would have loved to go to the concert last night. *They* played Beethoven’s Seventh Symphony. I heard it was wonderful.

10. I’ve grown to dislike airplane travel. *They* never give *you* enough room for your legs. And if the person in front of *you* puts his seat back, *you* can barely move. *You* can’t even reach down to pick up something from the floor.

**EXERCISE 12.** Review of nouns and pronouns, singular and plural. (Chapters 7 and 8)

*Directions:* Choose the correct words in *italics.*

1. *Penguin* *(Penguins)* are interesting creature *(creatures).* They are *bird* *(birds)* but it *(they)* cannot fly.

2. Million *(Millions of year)* *(years)* ago, they had *wing* *(wings).* This *(These)* wings changed as the birds adapted to its *(their)* environment.

3. *Penguin’s* *(Penguins’)* principal food was *(were)* *fish* *(fishes).* Penguins needed to be able to swim to find their food, so eventually their *wing* *(wings)* evolved into *flipper* *(flippers)* that enabled it *(them)* to swim through water with speed and ease.

4. *Penguins* spend *(spend)* most of their lives in *water* *(waters).* However, they lay their *egg* *(eggs)* on *land* *(lands).*
5. Emperor penguins have interesting egg-laying habit\habits.

6. The female lays \lay one egg \eggs on the ice \ices in Arctic regions, and then immediately returns \return to the ocean.

7. After the female lays the egg, the male takes \take over. He \They covers \cover the egg with his \their body until she \he \it \they hatches \hatch.

8. This \These process takes \take seven to eight week \weeks. During this \these time, the male doesn't \don't eat.

9. After the egg hatches \hatch, the female returns to take care of the chick, and the male goes \go to the ocean to find food for himself \herself, his mate, and their offspring.

10. Although the penguin's \penguins' natural habitat is in polar regions, we can see them in most major zoos in the world. They \It seem \seems to adapt well to life in confinement, so we can enjoy watching their \its antics without feeling sorry about their \its loss of freedom.

---

### 8-6 FORMS OF OTHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ADJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>PRONOUN</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>another book (is)</td>
<td>another (is)</td>
<td>other books (are)</td>
<td>others (are)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the other book (is)</td>
<td>the other (is)</td>
<td>the other books (are)</td>
<td>the others (are)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Forms of other are used as either adjectives or pronouns. Notice: A final -s is used only for a plural pronoun (others).

(a) The students in the class come from many countries. One of the students is from Mexico. Another student is from Iraq. Another is from Japan. Other students are from Brazil. Others are from Algeria.

(b) I have three books. Two are mine. The other book is yours. (The other is yours.)

(c) I have three books. One is mine. The other books are yours. (The others are yours.)

(d) I will be here for another three years.

(e) I need another five dollars.

(f) We drove another ten miles.

The meaning of another: one more in addition to the one(s) already mentioned.

The meaning of other \others (without the): several more in addition to the one(s) already mentioned.

The meaning of the other(s): all that remains from a given number; the rest of a specific group.

Another is used as an adjective with expressions of time, money, and distance, even if these expressions contain plural nouns. Another means "an additional" in these expressions.
EXERCISE 13. Using OTHER. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with a form of other.

1. I got three letters. One was from my father. Another one was from my sister. The other letter was from my girlfriend.

2. Look at your hand. You have five fingers. One is your thumb. is your index finger. one is your middle finger. finger is your ring finger. And finger (the last of the five) is your little finger.

3. Look at your hands. One is your right hand. is your left hand.

4. I invited five people to my party. Of those five people, only John and Mary can come. can't come.

5. I invited five people to my party. Of those five people, only John and Mary can come. people can't come.

6. I would like some more books on this subject. Do you have any that you could lend me?

7. I would like to read more about this subject. Do you have any books that you could lend me?

8. There are many means of transportation. The airplane is one means of transportation. The train is .

9. There are many means of transportation. The airplane is one. are the train, the automobile, and the horse.

10. There are two women standing on the corner. One is Helen Jansen, and is Pat Hendricks.

11. Alice reads The New York Times every day. She doesn't read any newspapers.

12. Some people prefer classical music, but prefer rock music.

13. Individual differences in children must be recognized. Whereas one child might have a strong interest in mathematics and science, child might tend toward more artistic endeavors.

14. I'm almost finished. I just need five minutes.

*Means is used as both a singular and a plural noun. See Chart 7-1, p. 100.
15. One of the most important inventions in the history of the world was the printing press. ____________ were the electric light. ____________ were the telephone, television, and the computer.

16. Some babies begin talking as early as six months; ____________ don't speak until they are more than two years old.

17. One common preposition is from. ____________ common one is in. ____________ are by, for, and of. The most frequently used prepositions in English are at, by, for, from, in, of, to, and with. What are some ____________ prepositions?

18. That country has two basic problems. One is inflation, and ____________ is the instability of the government.

19. I have been in only three cities since I came to the United States. One is New York, and ____________ are Washington, D.C., and Chicago.

20. When his alarm went off this morning, he shut it off, rolled over, and slept for ____________ twenty minutes.

21. They have three children. One has graduated from college and has a job. ____________ is at Yale University. ____________ is still living at home.

□ EXERCISE 14. Using OTHER. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences orally, using an appropriate form of other. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class. If working in pairs, switch roles after Item 6.

Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): There are two books on my desk. One is ....
SPEAKER B (book closed): One is red. The other is blue.

1. I speak two languages. One is ....
2. I speak three languages. One is ....
3. I lost my textbook, so I had to buy ....
4. Some people have straight hair, but ....
5. George Washington is one American hero. Abraham Lincoln ....
6. I have two books. One is ....
7. Some TV programs are excellent, but ....
8. Some people need at least eight hours of sleep each night, but ....
9. Only two of the students failed the quiz. All of ....
10. There are three colors that I especially like. One is ....
11. I have two candy bars. I want only one of them. Would you like ....
12. There are three places in particular I would like to visit while I am in ....
### COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH *OTHER*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Each other and one another</td>
<td><em>We write to each other every week. We write to one another every week.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Every other</td>
<td><em>Please write on every other line. I see her every other week.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The other</td>
<td><em>—Have you seen AH recently? —Yes. I saw him just the other day.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One after the other</td>
<td><em>The ducklings walked in a line behind the mother duck. Then the mother duck slipped into the pond. The ducklings followed her. They slipped into the water one after the other.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other than</td>
<td><em>No one knows my secret other than Rosa.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Except (for)</td>
<td><em>No one knows my secret except (for) Rosa.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In other words</td>
<td><em>Fruit and vegetables are full of vitamins and minerals. In other words, they are good for you.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In typical usage, each other and one another are interchangeable; there is no difference between them. Some native speakers, however, use each other when they are talking about only two persons or things, and one another when there are more than two.*

### EXERCISE 15. Using OTHER. (Charts 8-6 and 8-7)

**Directions:** Supply a form of *other.*

1. Two countries border on the United States. One is Canada. **The other** is Mexico.
2. One of the countries I would like to visit is Sweden. ________________ is Mexico.
   Of course, besides these two countries, there are many ________________ places I would like to see.
3. Louis and I have been friends for a long time. We've known ____________
since we were children.

4. A: I talked to Sam ____________ day.
   B: Oh? How is he? I haven't seen him for ages.

5. In the Southwest there is a large area of land that has little or no rainfall, no trees, and
   very few plants ____________ than cactuses. In ____________ words, this area of the country is a desert.

6. Thank you for inviting me to the picnic. I'd like to go with you, but I've already made
   ____________ plans.

7. Some people are tall; ____________ are short. Some people are fat;
   ____________ are thin. Some people are nearsighted; ____________
   people are farsighted.

8. Mr. and Mrs. Jay love ____________. They support ____________
   ____________ . They like ____________. In ____________
   words, they are a happily married couple.

9. A: How often do you travel to Portland?
   B: Every ____________ month. I go there to visit my grandmother in a
   nursing home.

10. Could I borrow your pen? I need to write
    a check, but I have nothing to write with
    ____________ than this pencil.

11. My niece, Kathy, ate one cookie after
    ____________ until she finished
    the whole box. That's why she had a
    bad stomachache.
**EXERCISE 16. Using OTHER.** (Charts 8-6 and 8-7)

*Directions:* Write sentences that include the given words. Punctuate carefully.

*Examples:*

1. I . . . two . . . one . . . (+ form of other) . . .
   → I have two brothers. One of them is in high school, and the other is in college.

2. Some . . . like coffee . . . while* (+ form of other) . . .
   → Some people like coffee with their breakfasts, while others prefer tea.

3. One city . . . (+ form of other) is . . .
   → One city I would like to visit is Paris. Another is Rome.

1. My . . . has two . . . one of them . . . (+ form of other) . . .
2. Some people . . . in their free time . . . while (+ form of other) . . .
3. . . . national hero . . . (+ form of other) . . .
4. . . . three . . . two of . . . (+ form of other) . . .
5. . . . more time . . . (+ form of other) . . . minutes . . .
6. There are three . . . that I especially like . . . one is . . . (+ form of other) . . .
7. I lost . . . bought (+ form of other) . . .
8. Some movies . . . while (+ form of other) . . .
9. . . . speak . . . (+ form of other) . . .
10. . . . is one of the longest rivers in the world . . . is (+ form of other) . . .
11. Nobody . . . other than . . .
12. . . . each other during . . .

**EXERCISE 17. Summary review.** (Chapters 6 – 8)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. That book contain many different kind of story and article.
2. The English is one of the most important language in the world.
3. She is always willing to help her friends in every possible ways.
4. In the past, horses was the principal mean of transportation.
5. He succeeded in creating one of the best army in the world.
6. There are many equipments in the research laboratory, but undergraduates are not allowed to use them.
7. All of the guest enjoyed themself at the reception.
8. I have a five years old daughter and a three years old son.
9. Each states in the country have a different language.

*While is similar in meaning to but in this situation. See Chart 17-4, p. 366.*
10. Most of people in my apartment building is friendly.

11. A political leader should have the ability to adapt themselves to a changing world.

12. In my opinion, an international student should live in a dormitory because they will meet many people and can practice their English every day. Also, if you live in a dormitory, your food is provided for you.

13. When I lost my passport, I had to apply for the another one.

14. When I got to class, all of the others students were already in their seats.

15. Everyone seek the happiness in their life.

16. In my country, there is a lots of schools.

17. Writing compositions are very hard for me.

18. It's difficult for me to understand English when people uses a lot of slangs.

19. A student at the university should attend class regularly and hand in their assignments on time.

20. In my opinion, the english is a easy language to learn.

□ EXERCISE 18. Summary review. (Chapters 6 → 8)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. There is many different kind of animal in the world.

2. My cousin and her husband want to move to other city because they don't like a cold weather.

3. I like to travel because I like to learn about other country and custom.

4. Collecting stamps is one of my hobby.

5. I came here three and a half month ago. I think I have made a good progress in English.

6. I was looking for my keys, but I couldn't find it.

7. When my mother was child, she lived in a small town. Now this town is big city with tall building and many highway.

8. English has borrowed quite a few of word from another languages.

9. There is many student from different countries in this class.
10. Thousand of athlete take part in the Olympics.

11. Education is one of the most important aspect of life. Knowledges about many different things allow us to live fuller lives.

12. All of the students names were on the list.

13. I live in a two rooms apartment.

14. Many of people prefer to live in small towns. Their attachment to their communities prevent them from moving from place to place in search of works.

15. Todays news is just as bad as yesterdays news.

16. Almost of the students in our class speaks English well.

17. The teacher gave us several homework to hand in next Tuesday.

18. Today womans work as doctor, pilot, archeologist, and many other thing. Both my mother and father are teacher's.

19. Every employees in our company respect Mr. Ward.

20. A child needs to learn how to get along with another people, how to spend his or her time wisely, and how to depend on yourself.

EXERCISE 19. Writing: nouns and pronouns. (Chapters 7 and 8)

Directions: Choose any object you wish. Write a short paragraph about it, but do NOT include the name of the object in your writing; always use a pronoun to refer to it, not the noun itself.

Describe the object (What does it look like? What is it made of? What does it feel like? Does it make a noise? Does it have a smell? etc.), and explain why people use it or how it is used. Begin with its general characteristics, then gradually get more specific.

Then read your paragraph aloud to the class or to a group, who will guess what the object is.

Example:

It is usually made of metal. It is hollow. It is round on one end. It can be very small, small enough to fit in your pocket or large, but not as large as a car. It is used to make noise. It can be used to give a signal. Sometimes it's part of an orchestra. Sometimes it is electric and you push a button to make it ring.

What is it?
EXERCISE 20. Writing: agreement. (Chapters 6 → 8)

Directions: Write a paragraph about a subject you are familiar with. Choose a subject such as your country, your family, your job, your field of study — or anything you know something about: ducks, motorcycles, gardening, etc.

In this paragraph, purposely make mistakes in the use of final -s/-es subject-verb agreement, and pronoun agreement. Be sure your paragraph contains these kinds of mistakes.

Use only or mostly present tenses.

Give your completed paragraph to a classmate, who will correct the singular-plural errors you made (as well as any unintended errors).

EXERCISE 21. Writing: nouns. (Chapters 6 → 8)

Directions: Write a paragraph on one of the topics below. Write as quickly as you can. Write whatever comes into your mind. Try to write 100 words in ten minutes.

When you finish your paragraph, exchange it with a classmate. Correct each other’s errors before giving it to your teacher.

Topics:

1. food
2. English
3. this room
4. animals
CHAPTER 9
Modals, Part 1

CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9-1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-2</td>
<td>Polite requests with / as the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-3</td>
<td>Polite requests with you as the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-4</td>
<td>Polite requests with would you mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-5</td>
<td>Expressing necessity: must, have to, have got to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-6</td>
<td>Lack of necessity and prohibition: have to and must in the negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-7</td>
<td>Advisability: should, ought to, had better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-8</td>
<td>The past form of should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-9</td>
<td>Expectations: be supposed to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>Making suggestions: let's, why don't, shall I/we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-11</td>
<td>Making suggestions: could vs. should</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9-1 INTRODUCTION

The modal auxiliaries in English are can, could, had better, may, might, must, ought (to), shall, should, will, would.

Modal auxiliaries generally express speakers' attitudes. For example, modals can express that a speaker feels something is necessary, advisable, permissible, possible, or probable; and, in addition, they can convey the strength of those attitudes.

Each modal has more than one meaning or use. See Chart 10-10, p. 199, for a summary overview of modals.

(a) BASIC MODALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Modal Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>can do</td>
<td>I can do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>could do</td>
<td>She could do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He, She</td>
<td>had better do</td>
<td>He had better do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>may do</td>
<td>He may do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We, You</td>
<td>might do</td>
<td>He might do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>must do</td>
<td>He must do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>ought to do</td>
<td>He ought to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We, You</td>
<td>shall do</td>
<td>He shall do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>should do</td>
<td>He should do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>will do</td>
<td>He will do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We, You</td>
<td>would do</td>
<td>He would do it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modals do not take a final -s, even when the subject is she, he, or it.

CORRECT: She can do it.
INCORRECT: She cans do it.

Modals are followed immediately by the simple form of a verb.

CORRECT: She can do it.
INCORRECT: She can to do it. / She can does it. / She can did it.

The only exception is ought, which is followed by an infinitive (to + the simple form of a verb).

CORRECT: He ought to go to the meeting.

(b) PHRASAL MODALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be able to do it</td>
<td>I am able to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be going to do it</td>
<td>I am going to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be supposed to do it</td>
<td>I am supposed to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have to do it</td>
<td>I have to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have got to do it</td>
<td>I have got to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>used to do it</td>
<td>I used to do it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Phrasal modals are common expressions whose meanings are similar to those of some of the modal auxiliaries. For example: be able to is similar to can; be going to is similar to will.

An infinitive (to + the simple form of a verb) is used in these similar expressions.
EXERCISE 1. Forms of modals. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: All of these contain errors in the forms of modals. Correct the errors.

1. She can to see it.
2. She cans see it.
3. She can sees it.
4. She can saw it.
5. Can you please to pass the rice?
6. Do you can see it?*
7. They don't can go there.**

9-2 POLITE REQUESTS WITH "I" AS THE SUBJECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAY I</th>
<th>(a) May I (please) borrow your pen?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COULD I</td>
<td>(b) Could I borrow your pen (please)?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

May I and could I are used to request permission. They are equally polite.†

Note in (b): In a polite request, could has a present or future meaning, not a past meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAN I</th>
<th>(c) Can I borrow your pen?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Can I is used informally to request permission, especially if the speaker is talking to someone s/he knows fairly well. Can I is usually considered a little less polite than may I or could I.

TYPICAL RESPONSES
Certainly. Yes, certainly.
Of course. Yes, of course.
Sure. (informal)

Often the response to a polite request is an action, such as a nod or shake of the head, or a simple "uh-huh."

† Might is also possible: Might I borrow your pen? Might I is quite formal and polite; it is used much less frequently than may I or could I.

9-3 POLITE REQUESTS WITH "YOU" AS THE SUBJECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WOULD YOU</th>
<th>(a) Would you pass the salt (please)?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL YOU</td>
<td>(b) Will you (please) pass the salt?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The meaning of would you and will you in a polite request is the same. Would you is more common and is often considered more polite. The degree of politeness, however, is often determined by the speaker’s tone of voice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COULD YOU</th>
<th>(c) Could you pass the salt (please)?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Basically, could you and would you have the same meaning. The difference is slight:
Would you — Do you want to do this please?
Could you = Do you want to do this please, and is it possible for you to do this?
Could you and would you are equally polite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAN YOU</th>
<th>(d) Can you (please) pass the salt?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Can you is often used informally. It usually sounds less polite than could you or would you.

TYPICAL RESPONSES
Yes, I'd (I would) be happy to be glad to.
Certainly.
Sure. (informal)

A person usually responds in the affirmative to a polite request. If a negative response is necessary, a person might begin by saying "I'd like to, but . . ." (e.g., "I'd like to pass the salt, but I can't reach it").

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INCORRECT: May you pass the salt?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

May is used only with / or we in polite requests.

*See Appendix Chart B-1, p. A8, for question forms with modals.

**See Appendix Chart D-1, p. A18, for negative forms with modals.
EXERCISE 2. Polite requests. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Directions: Ask and answer polite requests.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Present the situation to Speaker B.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Make a polite request for the situation.
Speaker A: Give a typical response.

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): You and I are co-workers. We don’t know each other well. We’re at a lunch table in a cafeteria. You want the pepper.
SPEAKER B (book closed): Would/Could you please pass me the pepper? (Note: Will is also possible because the speaker uses please, but can is probably not appropriate in this situation.)
SPEAKER A: Certainly. I’d be glad to. Here you are.

1. You and I are good friends. We’re in my apartment. You want to use the phone.
2. I’m your instructor. You want to leave class early.
3. You call your friend. Her name is (...). I answer the phone. You and I don’t know each other.
4. I’m your supervisor at work. You knock on my half-open office door. I’m sitting at my desk. You want to come in.
5. I’m Dr. North’s secretary. You want to make an appointment to see Dr. North.
6. We’re roommates. You want me to tape (a particular program) on the VCR tonight while you’re away at a meeting.
7. I’m a stranger next to you at an airport check-in line. You want me to save your place in line and keep an eye on your luggage while you get a drink of water.

9-4 POLITE REQUESTS WITH WOULD YOU MIND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASKING PERMISSION</th>
<th>TYPICAL RESPONSES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Would you mind if I closed the window?</td>
<td>Notice in (a): Would you mind if I is followed by the simple past.* The meaning in (a): May I close the window? Is it all right if I close the window? Will it cause you any trouble or discomfort if I close the window?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Would you mind if I used the phone?</td>
<td>Another typical response might be “unh-unh,” meaning “no.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASKING SOMEONE TO DO SOMETHING</th>
<th>TYPICAL RESPONSES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(c) Would you mind closing the window?</td>
<td>Notice in (c): Would you mind is followed by -ing (a gerund). The meaning in (c): I don’t want to cause you any trouble, but would you please close the window? Would that cause you any inconvenience?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Excuse me. Would you mind repeating that?</td>
<td>The informal responses of &quot;Sure&quot; and &quot;Okay&quot; are common, but are not logical: the speaker means &quot;No, I wouldn’t mind&quot; but seems to be saying &quot;Yes, I would mind.&quot; Native speakers understand that the response &quot;Sure&quot; or &quot;Okay&quot; in this situation means that the speaker agrees to the request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Sometimes, in informal spoken English, the simple present is used: Would you mind if I close the window?

(NOTE: The simple past does not refer to past time after would you mind; it refers to present or future time. See Chart 20-3, p. 415, for more information.)
EXERCISE 3. Polite requests with WOULD YOU MIND. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Using the verb in parentheses, fill in the blank either with if I + the past tense or with the -ing form of the verb. In some of the sentences, either response is possible but the meaning is different.

1. I'm getting tired. I'd like to go home and go to bed. Would you mind (leave) ______ if I left early?

2. I'm sorry. I didn't understand what you said. Would you mind (repeat) ______ that?

3. A: Are you going to the post office?
   B: Yes.
   A: Would you mind (mail) ______ this letter for me?
   B: Not at all.

4. A: Are you coming with us?
   B: I know I promised to go with you, but I'm not feeling very good. Would you mind (stay) ______ home?
   A: Of course not.

5. A: It's getting hot in here. Would you mind (open) ______ the window?
   B: No.

6. A: This is probably none of my business, but would you mind (ask) ______ you a personal question?
   B: It depends.

7. A: Would you mind (smoke) ______?
   B: I'd really rather you didn't.

   B: Oh, of course. I'm sorry.

9. A: I don't like this TV program. Would you mind (change) ______ the channel?
   B: Unh-unh.

10. A: You have an atlas, don't you? Would you mind (borrow) ______ it for a minute? I need to settle an argument. My friend says Timbuktu is in Asia, and I say it's in Australia.
    B: You're both wrong. It's in Africa. Here's the atlas. Look it up for yourself.
EXERCISE 4. Polite requests with WOULD YOU MIND. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Pair up and make dialogues.
Speaker A: Make a polite request using would you mind.
Speaker B: Give a typical response.

Example: You have a library book. You want the other person to take it back to the library for you.

SPEAKER A: Are you going to the library?
SPEAKER B: Yes.
SPEAKER A: This book is due. Would you mind taking it back to the library for me?
SPEAKER B: Not at all. I'd be glad to.

1. You've finished dinner. You're about to wash the dinner dishes. You want the other person to dry them.
2. You're watching TV together. One of you has the remote control and wants to turn up the volume.
3. One of you says that you're going to a particular store. The other one wants something from that store, too, but doesn't have time to go there.
4. One of you wants to ask the other a personal question.
5. You're in a computer lab at a language school. One of you knows how to run the computers, and the other doesn't. The one who doesn't wants to see a CD-ROM program.

EXERCISE 5. Polite requests. (Charts 9-2 → 9-4)

Directions: Complete the polite requests with your own words. Try to imagine what the speaker might say in the given situation.

1. JACK: What's the trouble, Officer?
   OFFICER: You made an illegal U-turn.
   JACK: I did?
   OFFICER: Yes. May I see your driver's license?
   JACK: Certainly. It's in my wallet.
   OFFICER: Would you please remove it from your wallet?

2. WAITER: Good evening. Are you ready to order?
   CUSTOMER: No, we're not. Could I see the menu?
   WAITER: Certainly. And if you have any questions, I'd be happy to tell you about anything on the menu.

3. SALLY: Are you driving to the meeting tonight?
   MIKE: Uh-huh, I am.
   SALLY: Could I have a ride?
   MIKE: Sure. I'll pick you up at 7:00.

4. MR. PENN: Something's come up, and I can't meet with you Tuesday. Would you mind?
   MS. GRAY: Let me check my calendar.
5. MECHANIC: What seems to be the trouble with your car?
CUSTOMER: Something's wrong with the brakes, I think. Could ___________?
_____________ ________________ ________________ ________________
MECHANIC: Sure. Just pull the car into the garage.

6. CLERK: May __?
CUSTOMER: Yes, please. Could __ p
CLERK: Surely. Do you have a particular color in mind?

7. SHELLEY: Are you enjoying the movie?
MIKE: Yeah, you?
SHELLEY: Yes, but I can't see over the man in front of me. Would you mind

MIKE: Not at all. I see two empty seats across the aisle.

8. CARLO: I have to leave now, but I'd like to continue this conversation later. May

ANNE: Of course. My phone number is 555-1716. I'll look forward to hearing
from you.

EXERCISE 6. Polite requests. (Charts 9-2 → 9-4)
Directions: For each situation, make up a short dialogue between two speakers. The
dialogue should contain a polite request and a response to that request.

Example: Names of the speakers: Janet and Sara
Janet doesn't have enough money to go to a movie tonight. She wants to
borrow some from Sara, who is her roommate and good friend.

Possible dialogue:
JANET: There's a movie I really want to see tonight, but I'm running a little low on money
right now. Could I borrow a few dollars? I'll pay you back Friday.
SARA: Sure. No problem. How much do you need?

1. Names of the speakers: Mike and Elena
   Mike is walking down the hall of his office building. He needs to know what time it
   is. He asks Elena, a co-worker he's seen before but has never met.

2. Names of the speakers: Larry and Matt
   Larry is trying to study. His roommate, Matt, is playing a CD very loudly, and this is
   bothering Larry, who is trying to be polite even though he feels frustrated and a little
   angry.

3. Names of the speakers: Kate and Jason
   Kate is phoning her friend Tom. Jason answers and tells her that Tom is out. Kate
   wants to leave a message.

4. Names of the speakers: Ms. Jackson and a friendly stranger
   Ms. Jackson is in the middle of the city. She's lost. She's trying to find the bus
   station. She stops someone on the street to ask for directions.
5. Names of the speakers: Paul and Jack
   Paul just arrived at work and remembered that he left his stove on back in his
   apartment. His neighbor Jack has a key to the front door, and Paul knows that Jack
   hasn't left for work yet. Anxiously, he telephones Jack for help.

6. Names of the speakers: your name and your partner's name
   One of you has a minor problem that requires the other's help.

EXERCISE 7. Polite requests. (Charts 9-2 → 9-4)
   Directions: What are some polite requests you have heard or have said in the following
   places? Create typical dialogues.
   1. in this classroom
   2. at a service station
   3. at a restaurant
   4. at a clothing store
   5. at an airport
   6. on the telephone

9-5 EXPRESSING NECESSITY: **MUST, HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO**

| (a) All applicants must take an entrance exam. | Must and have to both express necessity. In (a) and (b): It is necessary for every applicant to take an entrance exam. There is no other choice. The exam is required. |
| (b) All applicants have to take an entrance exam. |
| (c) I'm looking for Sue. I have to talk to her about our lunch date tomorrow. I can't meet her for lunch because I have to go to a business meeting at 1:00. |
| (d) Where's Sue? I must talk to her right away. I have an urgent message for her. |
| (e) I have to ("hafta") be home by eight. |
| (f) He has to ("hasta") go to a meeting tonight. |
| (g) I have got to go now. I have a class in ten minutes. |
| (h) I have to go now. I have a class in ten minutes. |
| (i) I have got to go ("I've gotta go/I gotta go") now. |
| (j) PRESENT or FUTURE |
| I have to/have got to/must study tonight. |
| (k) PAST |
| I had to study last night. |

Note: have to is usually pronounced "hafta"; has to is usually pronounced "hasta."

Have got to also expresses the idea of necessity: (g) and (h) have the same meaning. Have got to is informal and is used primarily in spoken English. Have to is used in both formal and informal English.

The idea of past necessity is expressed by had to. There is no other past form for must (when it means necessity) or have got to.
EXERCISE 8. MUST, HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO. (Chart 9-5)
Directions: Answer the questions. Practice pronouncing the usual spoken forms of have to and have got to.

1. What are some of the things you have to do today or tomorrow?
2. What does (...) have to do today?
3. What have you got to do after class?
4. What has (...) got to do after class?
5. Can you think of something very important that you must do today or tomorrow?
6. What is something that you had to do yesterday?
7. Ask a classmate a question using have to and what time/where/how often/why.*

LACK OF NECESSITY AND PROHIBITION: HAVE TO and MUST IN THE NEGATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LACK OF NECESSITY</th>
<th>When used in the negative, must and have to have different meanings.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Tomorrow is a holiday. We don't have to go to class.</td>
<td>do not have to - lack of necessity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) I can hear you. You don't have to shout.†</td>
<td>In (a); It is not necessary for us to go to class tomorrow because it is a holiday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROHIBITION</th>
<th>must not = prohibition (DO NOT DO THIS!)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(c) You must not look in the closet. Your birthday present is hidden there.</td>
<td>In (c); Do not look in the closet. I forbid it. Looking in the closet is prohibited. Negative contraction: mustn't. (The first “t” is silent: “muss-ant.”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) You must not tell anyone my secret. Do you promise?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

†Lack of necessity may also be expressed by need not + the simple form of a verb: You needn't shout. The use of needn't as an auxiliary is chiefly British except in certain common expressions such as "You needn't worry."

EXERCISE 9. HAVE TO and MUST in the negative. (Chart 9-6)
Directions: Use must not or do not have to in the following.

1. I've already finished all my work, so I don't have to study tonight. I think I'll read for a while.
2. I must not forget to take my key with me.
3. You introduce me to Dr. Gray. We've already met.
4. In order to be a good salesclerk, you be rude to a customer.
5. A person become rich and famous in order to live a successful life.

*A form of do is used with have to in questions: e.g., When does he have to leave?
6. Johnny! You _______________
play with sharp knives. Put that knife
down immediately!

7. I _______________ go to the doctor. I'm feeling much better.

8. We _______________ go to the concert if you don't want to, but it might be
good.

9. Robin! What are you doing? No, no, no. You_________________ put your
vitamin pill in your nose!

10. Bats_________________ see in order to avoid obstacles. They can navigate in
complete darkness.

11. If you encounter a growling dog, you_________________ show any signs of
fear. If a dog senses fear, it is more likely to attack a person.

12. A person_________________ get married in order to lead a happy and fulfilling
life.

Exercise 10. HAVE TO and MUST in the negative. (Chart 9-6)
Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

Example: Students don't have to . . .
Possible response: Students in elementary school don't have to pay tuition.

Example: Students must not . . .
Possible response: Students must not cheat during tests.

1. Children must not . . .
2. Children don't have to . . .
3. Drivers must not . . .
4. Drivers don't have to . . .
5. We don't have to . . .
6. We must not . . .
7. ( . . . ) doesn't have to . . .
8. ( . . . ) must not . . .
9. Waiters must not . . .
10. Waiters don't have to . . .
11. I don't have to . . .
12. I must not . . .
9-7  ADVISABILITY: SHOULD, OUGHT TO, HAD BETTER

(a) You should study harder.
You ought to study harder.
(b) Drivers should obey the speed limit.
Drivers ought to obey the speed limit.

Should and ought to have the same meaning: they express advisability. The meaning ranges in strength from a suggestion ("This is a good idea") to a statement about responsibility or duty ("This is a very important thing to do"). In (a): "This is a good idea. This is my advice." In (b): "This is an important responsibility."

(c) You shouldn't leave your keys in the car.

(d) I ought to ("otta") study tonight, but I think I'll watch TV instead.

Ought to is often pronounced "otta" in informal speaking.

(e) The gas tank is almost empty. We had better stop at the next service station.
(f) You had better take care of that cut on your hand soon, or it will get infected.

In meaning, had better is close to should/ought to, but had better is usually stronger. Often had better implies a warning or a threat of possible bad consequences. In (e): If we don't stop at a service station, there will be a bad result. We will run out of gas.

Notes on the use of had better:
• It has a present or future meaning.
• It is followed by the simple form of a verb.
• It is more common in speaking than writing.

(g) You'd better take care of it.
(h) You better take care of it.

Contraction: 'd better, as in (g). Sometimes in speaking, had is dropped, as in (h).

(i) You'd better not be late.

Negative form: had better + not.

*Ought to is not commonly used in the negative. If it is used in the negative, the to is sometimes dropped: You oughtn't (to) leave your keys in the car.

Exercise 11. SHOULD, OUGHT TO, HAD BETTER. (Chart 9-7)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Present the problem as given in the text.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Give advice by using should, ought to, or had better.

Example:

Speaker A (book open): I have a test tomorrow.
Speaker B (book closed): You should (ought to, had better) study tonight.

1. I'm writing a composition, and there is a word I don't know how to spell.
2. I don't feel well. I think I'm catching a cold.
3. I can't see the chalkboard when I sit in the back row.
4. I'm cold.
5. My foot is asleep.
6. My roommate snores, and I can't get to sleep.
7. My friend is arriving at the airport this evening. I'm supposed to pick him up, but I've forgotten what time his plane gets in.
8. My apartment is a mess, and my mother is coming to visit tomorrow!
9. There's no food in the house, and some guests are coming to dinner tonight.
10. I can't stop yawning.
11. I have a toothache.
12. I need to improve my English.
13. I have the hiccups.
14. When William gets out of college, his parents expect him to manage the family business, a shoe store, but he wants to be an architect.
15. Pam's younger brother, who is 18, is using illegal drugs. How can she help him?
16. The Taylors' daughter is very excited about going to Denmark to study for four months. You've been an international student, haven't you? Could you give her some advice?

EXERCISE 12. SHOULD, OUGHT TO, HAD BETTER. (Chart 9-7)
Directions: Complete the dialogues with your own words.

1. A: Oops! I spilled coffee on my shirt.
   B: You'd better run it under hot water before the stain sets.

2. A: The shoes I bought last week
   B: Oh? You ought to

3. A: Jimmy, you'd better
   B: Okay, Mom. I'll do it right now.

4. A: I'd better
   B: I agree. It'll be winter soon.

5. A: I've been studying for three days straight.
   B: I know. You should
   A: I know, but

6. A: Kids, your dad and I work hard all day long. Don't you think you should
   B:

7. A: My doctor said I should, but I
   B: Well, I think you'd better

8. A: You should if you
   B: Thanks for reminding me. I'd better
9. A: Have you __________________________
   B: No, not yet.
   A: You really ought to __________________________

10. A: Mary’s always wanted to learn how to __________________________
    B: Isn’t your brother __________________________
    You should __________________________

11. A: Do you think I ought to __________________________ or __________________________
    B: I think you’d better __________________________. If you don’t,
    __________________________

12. A: Lately I can’t seem to concentrate on anything, and I feel __________________________
    B: Maybe you should __________________________
    Or have you thought about __________________________

☐ EXERCISE 13. Necessity, advisability, and prohibition. (Charts 9-5 → 9-7)

Directions: Which sentence in the following pairs is stronger? Discuss situations in which a
speaker might say these sentences.

1. a. You should go to a doctor.
   b. You’d better go to a doctor.
2. a. Mary should go to work today.
   b. Mary must go to work today.
3. a. We’ve got to go to class.
   b. We ought to go to class.
4. a. I have to go to the post office.
   b. I should go to the post office.
5. a. We shouldn’t go into that room.
   b. We must not go into that room.
6. a. You’d better not go there alone.
   b. You shouldn’t go there alone.

☐ EXERCISE 14. SHOULD vs. MUST/HAVE TO. (Charts 9-5 → 9-7)

Directions: Use either should or must/have to in the following. In some sentences either
is possible, but the meaning is different. Discuss the meanings of the completions.

1. A person must/has to eat in order to live.
2. A person should eat a balanced diet.
3. If you want to become a doctor, you should go to medical school for many years.
4. I don’t have enough money to take the bus, so I walk home.
5. Walking is good exercise. You say you want to get more exercise. You walk to and from work instead of taking the bus.
6. We go to Colorado for our vacation.
7. According to my advisor, I should take another English course.
8. Rice have water in order to grow.

9. This pie is very good. You try a piece.

10. This pie is excellent! You try a piece.*

---

**THE PAST FORM OF SHOULD**

| (a) I had a test this morning. I didn't do well on the test because I didn't study for it last night. I **should have studied** last night. | Past form: **should have** + past participle.*
|---|---|
| (b) You were supposed to be here at 10 P.M., but you didn't come until midnight. We were worried about you. You **should have called** us. (You did not call.) | In (a): *I should have studied* means that studying was a good idea, but I didn't do it. I made a mistake.
| | Usual pronunciation of **should have**: “should-av” or “should-a.”
| (c) My back hurts. I **should not have carried** that heavy box up two flights of stairs. (I carried the box, and now I'm sorry.) | In (c): *I should not have carried* means that I carried something, but it turned out to be a bad idea. I made a mistake.
| (d) We went to a movie, but it was a waste of time and money. We **should not have gone** to the movie. | Usual pronunciation of **should not have**: “shouldn’t-av” or “shouldn’t-a.”

*The past form of ought to is ought to have + past participle. *(I ought to have studied.*) It has the same meaning as the past form of should. In the past, should is used more commonly than ought to. Had better is used only rarely in a past form (e.g., *He had better have taken care of it*) and usually only in speaking, not writing.

---

**EXERCISE 15. The past form of SHOULD.** (Chart 9-8)

*Directions:* Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

**Speaker A:** Your book is open. Present the situation given in the book.

**Speaker B:** Your book is closed. Comment on the situation using **should have** + past participle.

**Example:** I didn't invite (...) to my party. That made him/her feel bad. I'm sorry I didn't invite him/her.

**SPEAKER A (book open):** I didn't invite Sonya to my party. That made her feel bad. I'm sorry I didn't invite her.

**SPEAKER B (book closed):** You should have invited Sonya to your party.

1. (...) made a mistake yesterday. He/She left the door to his/her house open, and a bird flew in. He/She had a terrible time catching the bird.

2. There was an important meeting yesterday afternoon, but you decided not to go. That was a mistake. Now your boss is angry.

3. (...) didn't feel good a couple of days ago. I told him/her to see a doctor, but he/she didn't. That was a mistake. Now he/she is very sick.

4. (...) sold her/his car. That was a mistake because now she/he can't take trips to see her/his friends and relatives.

5. (...) signed a contract to buy some furniture without reading it thoroughly. Now she/he has discovered that she/he is paying a higher interest rate than she/he expected. She/he made a mistake.

*Sometimes in speaking, must has the meaning of a very enthusiastic should.

---

Modals, Part 1 163
EXERCISE 16. The past form of SHOULD. (Chart 9-8)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Present the situation.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Use should have + past participle in your response.

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): You failed the test because you didn't study.
SPEAKER B (book closed): I should have studied.

1. You are cold because you didn't wear a coat.
2. You misspelled a word because you didn't look it up in the dictionary.
3. Your friend is upset because you didn't write him a letter.
4. You are broke now because you spent all your money foolishly.
5. The room is full of flies because you opened the window.
6. You don't have any food for dinner because you didn't go to the grocery store.
7. You overslept this morning because you didn't set your alarm clock.
8. Your friends went to (New Orleans) over vacation. They had a good time. You didn't go with them, and now you are sorry.

Switch roles.

9. You didn't have a cup of coffee. Now you are sleepy.
10. John loved Mary, but he didn't marry her. Now he is unhappy.
11. John loved Mary, and he married her. But now he is unhappy.
12. You were sick yesterday, but you went to class anyway. Today you feel worse.
13. The weather was beautiful yesterday, but you stayed inside all day.
14. You bought your girlfriend/boyfriend a box of candy for her/his birthday, but she/he doesn't like candy.
15. The little girl told a lie. She got into a lot of trouble.
16. You lent your car to ( . . . ), but s/he had an accident because s/he was driving on the wrong side of the road.

EXERCISE 17. The past form of SHOULD. (Chart 9-8)

Directions: Discuss or write what you think the people in the following situations should have done and should not have done.

Example:
Tom didn't study for the test. During the exam he panicked and started looking at other students' test papers. He didn't think the teacher saw him, but she did. She warned him once to stop cheating, but he continued. As a result, the teacher took Tom's test paper, told him to leave the room, and failed him on the exam.

→ Tom should have studied for the test.
→ He shouldn't have panicked during the test.
→ He shouldn't have started cheating.
→ He should have known the teacher would see him cheating.
→ He should have stopped cheating after the first warning.
→ The teacher should have ripped up Tom's paper and sent him out of the room the first time she saw him cheating.
1. John and his wife, Julie, had good jobs as professionals in New York City. John was offered a high-paying job in Chicago, which he immediately accepted. Julie was shocked when he came home that evening and told her the news. She liked her job and the people she worked with, and did not want to move away and look for another job.

2. Ann agreed to meet her friend Carl at the library to help him with his chemistry homework. On the way, she stopped at a cafe where her boyfriend worked. Her boyfriend told her he could get off work early that night, so the two of them decided to go to a movie. Ann didn't cancel her plans with Carl. Carl waited for three hours at the library.

3. For three years, Donna had been saving her money for a trip to Europe. Her brother, Larry, had a good job, but spent all of his money on expensive cars, clothes, and entertainment. Suddenly, Larry was fired from his job and had no money to support himself while he looked for another one. Donna lent him nearly all of her savings, and within three weeks he spent it all on his car, more clothes, and expensive restaurants.

4. Sarah often exaggerated and once told a co-worker that she was fluent in French even though she had studied only a little and could not really communicate in the language. A few days later, her boss asked her to come to his office to interpret a meeting with a French businessman who had just arrived from Paris to negotiate a major contract with the company. After an embarrassed silence, Sarah told her boss that she was feeling ill and had to go home immediately.
9-9 EXPECTATIONS: BE SUPPOSED TO

(a) The game is supposed to begin at 10:00.  
(b) The committee is supposed to vote by secret ballot.  

Be supposed to expresses the idea that someone (I, we, they, the teacher, lots of people, my father, etc.) expects something to happen. Be supposed to often expresses expectations about scheduled events, as in (a), or correct procedures, as in (b).

(c) I am supposed to go to the meeting. My boss told me that he wants me to attend.  
(d) The children are supposed to put away their toys before they go to bed.  

Be supposed to also expresses expectations about behavior. In (c) and (d); be supposed to gives the idea that someone else expects (requests or requires) certain behavior.

(e) Jack was supposed to call me last night. I wonder why he didn't.  

Be supposed to in the past (was/were supposed to) expresses unfulfilled expectations. In (e): The speaker expected Jack to call, but he didn't.

D EXERCISE 18. Error analysis: BE SUPPOSED TO. (Chart 9-9)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. The building custodian supposed to unlock the classrooms every morning.
2. We're not suppose to open that door.
3. Where are we suppose to meet?
4. I have a meeting at seven tonight. I suppose to be there a little early to discuss the agenda.
5. When we go to the store, Annie, you not suppose to handle the glassware. It might break, and then you'd have to pay for it out of your allowance.
6. I'm suppose to be at the meeting. I suppose* I'd better go.
7. Where have you been? You suppose be here an hour ago!
8. A: I can't remember what the boss said. Should I supposed to work in the mail order room tomorrow morning and then the shipping department tomorrow afternoon? Or the other way around?
   B: How am I supposing to remember what you supposed to do? I have enough trouble remembering what I supposed doing.

*COMPARE: I suppose = I guess, I think, I believe. 
I'm supposed to = I am expected to.
EXERCISE 19. BE SUPPOSED TO. (Chart 9-9)

**Directions:** Answer the questions in complete sentences, using be supposed to. Switch roles after Item 6 if you work in pairs.

**Example:**

SPEAKER A (book open): If you're driving and a traffic light turns red, what are you supposed to do?

SPEAKER B (book closed): You're supposed to come to a complete stop.*

1. What are you supposed to do if you're involved in a traffic accident?
2. What are you supposed to do prior to take-off in an airplane?
3. What are some things athletes in training are supposed to do, and some things they're not supposed to do?
4. What are you supposed to do later today or this week?
5. If you're driving and an ambulance with flashing lights and blaring sirens comes up behind you, what are you supposed to do?
6. Can you think of something you were supposed to do yesterday (or sometime in the past) but didn't do?
7. What are we supposed to be doing right now?
8. Tell me about any job you've had. What were you supposed to do on a typical day?
9. Where are you supposed to be at o'clock tomorrow?
10. What were you supposed to do sometime last week that you didn't do?
11. If someone tells you a secret, what are you not supposed to do?
12. In the place you live or work, who is supposed to do what? In other words, what are the duties or responsibilities of the people who live or work with you?

EXERCISE 20. Necessity, advisability, and expectations. (Charts 9-5 → 9-9)

**Directions:** Which sentence in each pair is stronger?

1. a. You have got to wear your seatbelt.
   b. You should wear your seatbelt.
2. a. You had better wear your seatbelt.
   b. You ought to wear your seatbelt.
3. a. You must wear your seatbelt.
   b. You had better wear your seatbelt.
4. a. You have to wear your seatbelt.
   b. You are supposed to wear your seatbelt.
5. a. We are supposed to bring our own pencils.
   b. We have to bring our own pencils.
6. a. We ought to bring our own pencils.
   b. We have got to bring our own pencils.
7. a. We had better bring our own pencils.
   b. We should bring our own pencils.

*Note the use of impersonal you. See Chart 8-5, p. 140.
EXERCISE 21. Necessity, advisability, and expectations. (Charts 9-5 > 9-9)

Directions: Complete the following and discuss the meaning you wish to express by giving reasons for your statement.

Example: I’d better . . .
→ I’d better write my mother a letter. (Reason: If I don’t, there will be a bad result: she’ll be angry or start worrying about me or feel hurt.)

1. I should . . .
2. I’m supposed to . . .
3. I ought to . . .
4. I’d better . . .
5. I have to . . .
6. I’ve got to . . .
7. I must . . .
8. I shouldn’t . . .
9. I’m not supposed to . . .
10. I’d better not . . .
11. I don’t have to . . .
12. I must not . . .

EXERCISE 22. Necessity, advisability, and expectations. (Charts 9-5 → 9-9)

Directions: Choose one (or more) of the following topics for writing, group discussion, or role-playing. Include these words and expressions.

a. should   g. must
b. have to   h. ought to
c. be supposed to i. must not
d. shouldn’t j. do not have to
e. be not supposed to k. have got to
f. had better

Topics:
1. Pretend that you are the supervisor of a roomful of young children. The children are in your care for the next six hours. What would you say to them to make sure they understand your expectations and your rules so that they will be safe and cooperative?
   a. You should pick up your toys when you are finished playing with them.
   b. You have to stay in this room. Do not go outside without my permission.
   c. You’re supposed to take a short nap at one o’clock.
   d. Etc.

2. Pretend that you are teaching your younger sister/brother how to drive a car. This is her/his first time behind the wheel, and she/he knows little about driving regulations and the operation of an automobile.

3. Pretend that you are a travel agent and you are helping two students who are traveling abroad for a vacation. You want them to understand the travel arrangements you have made, and you want to explain some of the local customs of the countries they will be visiting.

4. Pretend that you are the supervisor of salesclerks in a large department store and that you are talking to two new employees. You want to acquaint them with their job and your expectations.
5. Pretend that you are instructing the babysitter who will watch your three young children while you are out for the evening. They haven't had dinner, and they don't like to go to bed when they're told to.

9-10 MAKING SUGGESTIONS: LET'S, WHY DON'T, SHALL I/WE

(a) Let's go to a movie.  
(b) Let's not go to a movie.  
   Let's stay home instead.  

(c) Why don't we go to a movie?  
(d) Why don't you come around seven?  
(e) Why don't I give Mary a call?  

(f) Shall I open the window? Is that okay with you?  
(g) Shall we leave at two? Is that okay?  
(h) Let's go, shall we?  
(i) Let's go, okay?  

Let's = let us. Let's is followed by the simple form of a verb.  
Negative form: let's + not + simple verb  
The meaning of let's: "I have a suggestion for us."

Why don't is used primarily in spoken English to make a friendly suggestion.  
In (c): Why don't we go - let's go.  
In (d): I suggest that you come around seven.  
In (e): Should I give Mary a call? Do you agree with my suggestion?  

When shall is used with / or we in a question, the speaker is usually making a suggestion and asking another person if s/he agrees with this suggestion. This use of shall is relatively formal and infrequent. Sometimes "shall we?" is used as a tag question after let's, as in (h). More informally, "okay?" is used as a tag question, as in (i).
EXERCISE 23. LET'S, WHY DON'T, SHALL I/WE. (Chart 9-10)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with your own words.

   Let's ___________ _____________________________
   B: Great idea! I'd like some good sushi.
   A: Why don't ___________ _____________________________
      Make it for about 7:30.
   B: No, let's ___________ _____________________________ I'll be working until 7:30 tonight.

2. A: I don't feel like staying home today.
   B: Neither do I. Why don't ___________ _____________________________
   A: Hey, that's a great idea! What time shall ___________ _____________________________
   B: How about in an hour?
   A: Good.

3. A: Shall ___________ _____________________________ or ___________ _____________________________ first?
   B: Let's ___________ _____________________________ first, then we can take our time over
      dinner.
   A: Why don't ___________ _____________________________
   B: Yes. Then we'll be sure ___________ _____________________________

4. A: Let's ___________ _____________________________ over the weekend.
   The fresh air would do us both good.
   B: I agree. Why don't ___________ _____________________________
   A: No. Sleeping in a tent is too uncomfortable. Let's ___________ _____________________________
      It won't be that expensive, and we'll have hot water and a TV in the room. All
      the comforts of home.

5. A: How are we ever going to prepare for tomorrow's exam? There's so much to know!
   B: Why don't ___________ _____________________________
   A: All right. And then let's ___________ _____________________________
   B: Okay, but after that we should ___________ _____________________________
9-11 MAKING SUGGESTIONS: **COULD** vs. **SHOULD**

---

**- What should we do tomorrow?**
(a) Why don't we go on a picnic?
(b) We could go on a picnic.

**Could** can be used to make suggestions, (a) and (b) are similar in meaning: the speaker is suggesting a picnic.

---

- **I'm having trouble in math class.**
(c) You should talk to your teacher.
(d) Maybe you should talk to your teacher.

---

- **I'm having trouble in math class.**
(e) You could talk to your teacher. Or you could ask Ann to help you with your math lessons. Or I could try to help you.

---

- **I failed my math class.**
(f) You should have talked to your teacher and gotten some help from her during the term.

---

- **I failed my math class.**
(g) You could have talked to your teacher. Or you could have asked Ann to help you with your math. Or I could have tried to help you.

---

**Should** gives definite advice. In (c), the speaker is saying: "I believe it is important for you to do this. This is what I recommend." In (d), the use of **maybe** softens the strength of the advice. **Could** offers suggestions or possibilities. In (e), the speaker is saying: "I have some possible suggestions for you. It is possible to do this. Or it is possible to do that."*

---

- **I'm having trouble in math class.**

**Should have** gives "hindsight advice."*** In (f), the speaker is saying: "It was important for you to talk to the teacher, but you didn't do it. You made a mistake."

**Could have** offers "hindsight possibilities."*** In (g), the speaker is saying: "You had the chance to do this or that. It was possible for this or that to happen. You missed some good opportunities."*

---

* Might (but not may) can also be used to make suggestions (You might talk to your teacher), but the use of **could** is more common.

*** "Hindsight" refers to looking at something after it happens.

□ EXERCISE 24. Making suggestions. (Chart 9-11)

**Directions:** Discuss Speaker B's use of **should** and **could** in the dialogues. In your own words, what is Speaker B saying?

1. A: Ted doesn't feel good. He has a bad stomachache.
   B: He should see a doctor.

2. A: Ted doesn't feel good. He has a bad stomachache. What do you think he should do?
   B: Well, I don't know. He could call a doctor. He could call Dr. Smith. Or he could call Dr. Jones. Or he could simply stay in bed for a day and hope he feels better tomorrow.

3. A: I need to get to the airport.
   B: You should take the airport bus. It's cheaper than a taxi.

4. A: I need to get to the airport.
   B: Well, you could take the airport bus. Or you could take a taxi. Maybe Matt could take you. He has a car.

5. A: I took a taxi to the airport, and it cost me a fortune.
   B: You should have taken the airport bus.

6. A: I took a taxi to the airport, and it cost me a fortune.
   B: You could have taken the airport bus. Or maybe Matt could have taken you.
EXERCISE 25. Activity: making suggestions. (Charts 9-7 → 9-11)

Directions: Form a group of four.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Present the given situation.
Speakers B, C, and D: Your books are closed. Make suggestions or give advice. Use could to suggest possibilities. Use should only if you want to give strong, definite advice.
Speaker A: When the other students are finished, pass the open book to the next student.

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): I need to get to the airport. Any suggestions?
SPEAKER B (book closed): You could take a taxi or the airport bus.
SPEAKER C (book closed): I could take you if I can borrow my brother's car.
SPEAKER D (book closed): In my opinion, you should take the airport bus.

1. I don't have any plans for this weekend. I need some suggestions.
2. (...) and I want to go to a nice restaurant for dinner tonight. Any suggestions?
3. I need to get from here to (name of a place in this city/town). Any suggestions?
4. I need to buy an umbrella, but I don't know where to go. I need some suggestions.
5. I'm hungry. I'd like to eat an egg, but I've never cooked an egg before. What should I do?
6. I need to get a car, but it can't be very expensive because I don't have a lot of money to spend on it. Any suggestions?
7. I bought a (name of a car), but I'm unhappy with it. In hindsight, can you suggest other possibilities for a kind of car I could have bought?
8. I went to (name of a place) for my vacation last summer, but I didn't enjoy it. In hindsight, can you suggest some other possibilities that I didn't think of? (I had only five days and a limited amount of money.)
9. (...) went to (name of a restaurant) for dinner last night, but the food was terrible. Do you have any hindsight suggestions?

EXERCISE 26. Activity: making suggestions. (Charts 9-7 → 9-11)

Directions: With another student, make up a short dialogue.
Speaker A: Begin the dialogue with "What's the matter?" or "Is something the matter?"
Speaker B: Present a problem. Suggestions of words to include in the dialogue are given in the numbered list.
Speaker A: Offer suggestions by using why don't you, (maybe) you should, and/or you could.
Speaker B: Reject the first two or three suggestions and give your reasons. Then finally accept a suggestion.
Present your dialogue to the class.

Example: I don't feel very good.
SPEAKER A: Is something the matter, Carlos? You don't look good.
SPEAKER B: That's because I don't feel very good.
SPEAKER A: Oh? What's wrong?
SPEAKER B: My stomach feels a little upset.
SPEAKER A: Maybe it's something you ate. Why don't you go home and rest for a while?
SPEAKER B: I can't. I have an important meeting in fifteen minutes.
SPEAKER A: Maybe you should drink a carbonated beverage. That sometimes helps me when my stomach feels funny.
SPEAKER B: A carbonated beverage? I don't think so. I don't like carbonated drinks.
SPEAKER A: Well, you could take an antacid. I have some antacids in my office. Want me to get them for you?
SPEAKER B: Please. I think I'll try that. Maybe it'll help. Thanks.

Suggestions of words for Speaker B to include in the dialogue:
1. ...but I really don't want to go.
2. ...but I can't afford it.
3. ...is angry with me.
4. I don't have enough ....
5. I don't know what ....
6. My , , , is broken.
7. I lost____
8. I don't like my ....
9. (Use your own words.)

☐ EXERCISE 27. Activity: writing. (Chapter 9)
Directions: Write a letter to an advice columnist in a newspaper. Make up a personal problem for the columnist to solve. Then give your letter to a classmate, who will write an answer.

Example letter:
Dear Abby,

My husband and my sister had an argument over a year ago, and they haven't spoken to each other since. My husband accused my sister of insulting him about his baldness. Then he told my sister that her hair looked like straw. He said he'd rather be bald than have that kind of hair. My sister insists on an apology. My husband refuses until she apologizes to him first.

The problem is that I'm planning a graduation party for my daughter. My husband insists that I not invite my sister. I tell him I have to invite her. He says he'll leave the party if my sister walks in the door. My daughter is very close to my sister and very much wants her to come to the celebration.

What should I do? I feel I must include my sister in the graduation party, but I don't want to anger my husband.

Yours truly,
Confused and Torn

Example response:
Dear Confused and Torn,

Tell your husband that this party is your daughter's time to have her whole family around her and that you're going to invite your sister to the family celebration. This is certainly and clearly a time he has to put his daughter's needs first.

And you should tell both your husband and your sister that it's time to get past their silly argument and act like grownups instead of ten-year-olds. You could offer to serve as an intermediary to get them together to apologize to each other. If you present a reasonable, adult way of handling the problem, they may start behaving like adults. Good luck.
EXERCISE 1. Preview. (Chapter 10)

Directions: Which completion do you think the speaker would probably say? Choose the best one.

1. — Is Jeff a good student?
   — He A . I don’t know him well, but I heard he was offered a scholarship for next year.
     A. must be  B. could be  C. is

2. — Do you know where Eva is?
   — She_____at Barbara’s house. She said something about wanting to visit after work today, but I’m really not sure.
     A. must be  B. could be  C. is

3. — I stayed up all night finishing this report for the boss.
   — You______really tired.
   — I do.
     A. must feel  B. might feel  C. feel

4. — Do you think the grocery store is still open?
   — It_______. I can’t ever remember what their hours are.
     A. must be  B. could be  C. is

5. — Where’s the left-over chicken from dinner last night?
   — I just saw it when I got some ice cubes. It_______in the freezer.
     A. must be  B. might be  C. is
6. — It's supposed to rain tomorrow.
   — I know, but the forecast______ wrong. Weather forecasts are far from 100 percent accurate.
     A. must be     B. could be     C. is

7. — I heard that Jane has received a scholarship and will be able to attend the university in the fall.
   — Wonderful! That's good news. She______ very happy to have the matter finally settled.
     A. must be     B. may be     C. is

8. — Excuse me. Could you tell me which bus I should take to get to City Hall?
   — Hmmmm. Bus number 63______ there. But you'd better ask the driver.
     A. must go     B. might go     C. goes

9. — Which bus should I take to get to the main post office?
   — Bus number 39. It______ right to the post office.
     A. must go     B. could go     C. goes

10. — Do you suppose Mrs. Chu is sick?
    — She______ I can't think of anything else that would have kept her from coming to this meeting.
      A. must be     B. may be     C. is

11. — Is that Adam's brother standing with him in the cafeteria line?
    — It______, I suppose. He does look a little like Adam.
      A. must be     B. could be     C. is

12. — Let's be really quiet when we go into the baby's room. The baby______, and we don't want to wake her up.
    — Okay.
      A. might sleep     B. might be sleeping     C. might have been sleeping

13. — I wonder why the radio is on in the den. No one's in there.
    — Grandma______ to turn it off. She was in the den earlier and was probably listening to it.
      A. must forget     B. must have forgotten     C. must be forgetting

14. — When Ms. White answered the door, I noticed her hands and clothes were dirty.
    — Really? That's odd.
    — Not really. I figured she______ in her garden when she heard the doorbell, and came inside to answer it. She's an avid gardener, you know.
      A. must work     B. must have worked     C. must have been working
10-1 DEGREES OF CERTAINTY: PRESENT TIME

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Why isn't John in class?</th>
<th>&quot;Degree of certainty&quot; refers to how sure we are—what we think the chances are—that something is true. If we are sure something is true in the present, we don't need to use a modal. For example, if I say, &quot;John is sick,&quot; I am sure: I am stating a fact that I am sure is true. My degree of certainty is 100%.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100% sure: He is sick.</td>
<td>Must expresses a strong degree of certainty about a present situation, but the degree of certainty is still less than 100%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95% sure: He must be sick.</td>
<td>In (a): The speaker is saying, &quot;Probably John is sick. I have evidence to make me believe that he is sick. That is my logical conclusion, but I do not know for certain.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 50% sure: He may be sick.</td>
<td>May, might, and could express a weak degree of certainty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 50% sure: He might be sick.</td>
<td>In (b), (c), and (d): The speaker is saying, &quot;Perhaps, maybe, possibly John is sick. I am only making a guess. I can think of other possibilities.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 50% sure: He could be sick.</td>
<td>(b), (c), and (d) have the same meaning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\*Maybe (one word) is an adverb: Maybe he is sick.
May be (two words) is a verb form: He may be sick.

D EXERCISE 2. Degrees of certainty: present time. (Chart 10-1)

Directions: From the given information, make your "best guess" by using must. This exercise can be done in pairs, in small groups, or as a class. If the exercise is done in pairs, A and B should switch roles halfway through.

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): Alice always gets the best grades in the class. Why?
SPEAKER B (book closed): She must study hard. / She must be intelligent.

1. ( . . . ) is yawning. Why?
2. ( . . . ) is sneezing and coughing. Why?
3. ( . . . ) is wearing a wedding ring. Why?
4. ( . . . ) is shivering and has goose bumps. Why?
5. ( . . . )'s stomach is growling. Why?
6. ( . . . ) is scratching his arm. Why?
7. ( . . . ) has already had two glasses of water, but now he/she wants another. Why?
8. ( . . . ) is smiling. Why?
9. ( . . . ) is crying. Why?
10. There is a restaurant in town that is always packed (full). Why?
11. I am in my car. I am trying to start it, but the engine won't turn over. I left my lights on all day. What's wrong?
12. Every night there is a long line of people waiting to get into (a particular movie). Why?
13. Don't look at your watch. What time is it?

176 CHAPTER 10
EXERCISE 3. Degrees of certainty: present time. (Chart 10-1)
Directions: Respond by using "I don't know" + may/might/could.

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): ( . . . )'s grammar book isn't on her desk. Where is it?
SPEAKER B (book dosed): I don't know. It may/might/could be in her book bag.

1. ( . . . ) isn't in class today. Where is s/he?  (I don't know. S/he . . . .)
2. Where does ( . . . ) live?  (I don't know. S/he . . . .)
3. What do you think I have in my briefcase/pocket/purse?
4. What kind of watch is ( . . . ) wearing?
5. I can't find my pen. Do you know where it is?
6. How old do you think (someone famous) is?

EXERCISE 4. Degrees of certainty: present time. (Chart 10-1)
Directions: Complete the sentences by using must or may/might/could with the expressions in the list or with your own words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be about ten</th>
<th>be very proud</th>
<th>very much like green</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be at a meeting</td>
<td>feel terrible</td>
<td>miss them very much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be crazy</td>
<td>fit Jimmy</td>
<td>have the wrong number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: Have you noticed that Professor Adams wears something green every day?
   B: I know. He must like green.

2. A: Ed just bought his wife a diamond necklace with matching earrings.
   B: That's expensive! He is.
   A: He is.

3. A: Look at the man standing outside the window on the fifteenth floor of the building!
   B: He

   B: I don't know. She , or maybe she's in the employee lounge.
   A: If you see her, would you tell her I'm looking for her?
   B: Certainly, Mr. French.

5. A: Hello?
   B: Hello. May I speak to Ron?
   A: I'm sorry. You There's no one here by that name.

6. A: I've heard that your daughter recently graduated from law school and that your son has gotten a scholarship to the state university. You
   B: We are.
A: You're coughing and sneezing, blowing your nose, and running a fever. You

B: I do.

A: This winter jacket is still in good shape, but Tommy has outgrown it. Do you think it would fit one of your sons?
B: Well, it's probably too small for Johnny, too, but it

A: How long has it been since you last saw your family?
B: More than a year.
A: You
B: I do.

A: How old is their daughter now?
B: Hmm. I think she was born around the same time our daughter was born.
She

10-2 DEGREES OF CERTAINTY: PRESENT TIME NEGATIVE

| 100% sure: | Sam isn't hungry. |
| 99% sure: | \{ Sam couldn't be hungry. | Sam can't be hungry. |
| 95% sure: | Sam must not be hungry. |
| less than 50% sure: | \{ Sam may not be hungry. | Sam might not be hungry. |

(a) Sam doesn't want anything to eat. He isn't hungry. He told me his stomach is full. I heard him say that he isn't hungry. I believe him.

(b) Sam couldn't/can't be hungry! That's impossible! I just saw him eat a huge meal. He has already eaten enough to fill two grown men. Did he really say he'd like something to eat? I don't believe it.

(c) Sam isn't eating his food. He must not be hungry. That's the only reason I can think of.

(d) I don't know why Sam isn't eating his food. He may not/might not be hungry right now. Or maybe he doesn't feel well. Or perhaps he ate just before he got here. Who knows?

In (a); The speaker is sure that Sam is not hungry.

In (b): The speaker believes that there is no possibility that Sam is hungry (but the speaker is not 100% sure). When used in the negative to show degree of certainty, couldn't and can't forcefully express the idea that the speaker believes something is impossible.

In (c): The speaker is expressing a logical conclusion, a "best guess."

In (d): The speaker uses may not/might not to mention a possibility.
EXERCISE 5. Degrees of certainty: present time negative. (Chart 10-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your "best guess."

1. A: Yuko has flunked every test so far this semester.
   B: She must not . . . .
   → She must not study very hard.

2. A: Who are you calling?
   B: Tarek. The phone is ringing, but there's no answer.
   A: He must not . . . .

3. A: I'm trying to be a good host. I've offered Rosa a glass of water, a cup of coffee or tea, a soft drink. She doesn't want anything.
   B: She must not . . . .

4. A: I offered Mr. Chang some nuts, but he refused them. Then I offered him some candy, and he accepted.
   B: He must not . . . .

5. A: Rosa seems very lonely to me.
   B: I agree. She must not . . . .

EXERCISE 6. Degrees of certainty: present time negative. (Chart 10-2)

Directions: Give possible reasons for Speaker B's conclusions.

1. A: Someone is knocking at the door. It might be Mary.
   B: It couldn't be Mary. (Reason? Mary is in Moscow. I Mary went to a movie tonight. I etc.)

2. A: Someone left this wool hat here. I think it belongs to Alex.
   B: It couldn't belong to him. (Reason?)

3. A: Someone told me that Karen is in Norway.
   B: That can't be right. She couldn't be in Norway. (Reason?)

4. A: Look at that big animal! Is it a wolf?
   B: It couldn't be a wolf. (Reason?)

5. A: Someone told me that Marie quit her job.
   B: You're kidding! That can't be true. (Reason?)

EXERCISE 7. Degrees of certainty: present time. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)

Directions: Discuss the meaning of the italicized verbs.

1. SITUATION: Anna looks at some figures in her business records: 3456 + 7843 = 11,389.
   a. At first glance, she says to herself, "Hmmm. That may not be right."
   b. Then she looks at it again and says, "That must not be right. 6 + 3 is 9, but 5 + 4 isn't 8."
   c. So she says to herself, "That couldn't be right!"
   d. Finally, she adds the figures herself and says, "That isn't right."
2. SITUATION: Some people are talking about Ed.
   a. Tim says, "Someone told me that Ed quit his job, sold his house, and moved to an island in the Pacific Ocean."
   b. Lucy says, "That may not be true."
   c. Linda says, "That must not be true."
   d. Frank says, "That can't be true."
   e. Ron says, "That isn't true."

3. SITUATION: Tom and his young son hear a noise on the roof.
   a. Tom says, "I wonder what that noise is."
   b. His son says, "It may be a bird."
   c. Tom: "It can't be a bird. It's running across the roof. Birds don't run across roofs."
   d. His son: "Well, some birds do. It could be a big bird that's running fast."
   e. Tom: "No, I think it must be some kind of animal. It might be a mouse."
   f. His son: "It sounds much bigger than a mouse. It may be a dragon!"
   g. Tom: "Son, it couldn't be a dragon. We don't have any dragons around here. They exist only in story books."
   h. His son: "It could be a little dragon that you don't know about."
   i. Tom: "Well, I suppose it might be some kind of lizard."
   j. His son: "I'll go look."
   k. Tom: "That's a good idea."
   l. His son comes back and says, "Guess what, Dad. It's a rat!"

EXERCISE 8. Degrees of certainty: present time. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)
Directions: Pair up and create a dialogue.

SITUATION: You and your friend are at your home. You hear a noise. You discuss the noise: what may/might I could I must I may not I couldn't I must not be the cause. Then you finally find out what is going on.
### 10-3 DEGREES OF CERTAINTY: PAST TIME

**PAST TIME: AFFIRMATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Probability</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Why wasn't Mary in class?</td>
<td>100%: She was sick.</td>
<td>In (a): The speaker is sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>95%: She must have been sick.</td>
<td>In (b): The speaker is making a logical conclusion, e.g., &quot;I saw Mary yesterday and found out that she was sick. I assume that is the reason why she was absent. I can't think of any other good reason.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less than 50%: She may have been sick. She might have been sick. She could have been sick.</td>
<td>In (c): The speaker is mentioning one possibility.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST TIME: NEGATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Probability</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Why didn't Sam eat?</td>
<td>100%: Sam wasn't hungry.</td>
<td>In (d): The speaker is sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>99%: Sam couldn't have been hungry. Sam can't have been hungry.</td>
<td>In (e): The speaker believes that it is impossible for Sam to have been hungry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>95%: Sam must not have been hungry.</td>
<td>In (f): The speaker is making a logical conclusion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less than 50%: Sam may not have been hungry. Sam might not have been hungry.</td>
<td>In (g): The speaker is mentioning one possibility.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EXERCISE 9. Degrees of certainty: past time. (Chart 10-3)

**Directions:** Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

**Speaker A:** Your book is open. Give the first cue. After the response, give the second cue.

**Speaker B:** Your book is closed. Respond to the first cue with *may have I might have I could have*. Then after you get more information in the second cue, use *must have*.

**Example:**

**SPEAKER A (book open):** 1st cue: Jack was absent yesterday afternoon. Where was he?

**SPEAKER B (book closed):** I don't know. He may have been at home. He might have gone to a movie. He could have decided to go to the zoo because the weather was so nice.

**SPEAKER A:** 2nd cue: What if you overhear him say, "My sister's plane was late yesterday afternoon. I had to wait almost three hours." Now what do you think?

**SPEAKER B:** He must have gone to the airport to meet his sister's plane.

1. 1st cue: ( . . . ) didn't stay home last night. Where did she/he go?
   2nd cue: What if you overhear her/him say, "I usually go there to study in the evening because it's quiet, and if I need to use any reference books, they're right there."

2. 1st cue: How did ( . . . ) get to school today?
   2nd cue: What if you see her/him pull some car keys out of her/his pocket?

3. 1st cue: ( . . . ) took a vacation in a warm, sunny place. Where do you suppose she/he went?
   2nd cue: What if you then overhear her/him say, "Honolulu is a nice city"?

4. 1st cue: ( . . . ) visited a person in this class yesterday. Do you know who she/he visited?
   2nd cue: What if I say this person *(supply a certain distinguishing characteristic)*?

5. 1st cue: ( . . . ) walked into class this morning with a broken arm. What happened?
   2nd cue: Then you overhear her/him say, "After this I'm going to watch where I'm going when I'm riding my bicycle."
EXERCISE 10. Degrees of certainty: past time. (Chart 10-3)

Directions: Form groups of five and assume the roles of Speakers A, B, C, D, and E. Complete the conversation by giving possible reasons for the speakers' conclusions. Create a scenario by using the given information (some of which is irrelevant) and information you make up from your imaginations. After your group has completed your version of the story, write an account of what happened at the mansion late last night.

SITUATION: Last night in an old mansion, someone killed Mrs. Peacock with a revolver in the dining room at approximately ten o'clock. These people, and maybe others, were in the mansion last night: Colonel Mustard, Mrs. White, Miss Scarlet, Mr. Green, Professor Plum, plus Speakers A, B, C, D, and E.

**Colonel Mustard** is in his 70s. He usually goes to bed early. He has asthma. He has a gun. He argued with Mrs. Peacock at the dinner table. He is married, but his wife was not with him last night. He was angry last night. He has a gray mustache. He likes to play cards.

**Mrs. White** is in her 50s. She has four children. Her bedroom was next to Mrs. Peacock's. Mrs. White believed that Mr. White, her husband, was in love with Mrs. Peacock. Mrs. White is an account executive with an advertising agency. She was in the living room playing cards last night. She stays up late. She usually reads before she goes to sleep at night.

**Miss Scarlet** is in her late 20s. She's had a difficult life and is deeply in debt. She lives alone and has four cats. She's in love with her dentist. She is Mrs. Peacock's niece and only living relative. Mrs. Peacock was a wealthy woman. Miss Scarlet doesn't play cards. Miss Scarlet has huge dental bills.

*Supply your own information about Mr. Green, Professor Plum, and the others at the mansion last night.*
CONVERSATION:
A: Who killed Mrs. Peacock?
B: It might have been Colonel Mustard.
A: Why do you say that?
B: Because . . .
C: Yes, that's true. But it could have been Mrs. White.
B: Oh? Why do you think that?
C: Because . . .
D: No, it couldn't have been Colonel Mustard. And it can't have been Mrs. White.
A: How do you know? Why not?
D: Because . . .
A: Well, then it must have been Miss Scarlet.
D: Really? Why?
A: Because . . .
E: All of you are wrong. It wasn't Miss Scarlet or Colonel Mustard or Mrs. White.
A: Oh? How do you know that? And if none of them did it, who did?
E: ___

D EXERCISE 11. Degrees of certainty. (Charts 10-1 → 10-3)
Directions: Complete the dialogues. Use an appropriate form of must with the verbs in parentheses. Use the negative if necessary.

1. A: Paula fell asleep in class this morning.
   B: She (stay up) must have stayed up too late last night.

2. A: Jim is eating everything in the salad but the onions. He's pushed all of the onions to the side of his plate.
   B: He (like) onions.

3. A: George had to give a speech in front of five hundred people.
   B: Whew! That's a big audience. He (be) nervous.
   A: He was, but no one could tell.

4. A: What time is it?
   B: Well, we came at seven, and I'm sure we've been here for at least an hour. So it (be) around eight o'clock.

5. A: My favorite magazine doesn't come in the mail anymore. I wonder why.
   B: Did your subscription run out?
   A: That's probably the problem. I (forget) to renew it.

6. A: I met Marie's husband at the reception and we said hello to each other, but when I asked him a question in English, he just smiled and nodded.
   B: He (speak) much English.
7. A: Where's Nadia? I've been looking all over for her.
   B: I saw her about ten minutes ago in the living room. Have you looked there?
   A: Yes, I've looked everywhere. She (leave)__________________________

8. A: Listen! Do you hear a noise downstairs?
   B: No, I don't hear a thing.
   A: You don't? Then something (be) ______________ wrong with your hearing.

9. A: You have a black eye! What happened?
   B: I walked into a door.
   A: Ouch! That (hurt)__________________________
   B: It did.

10. A: Who is your teacher?
    B: I think his name is Mr. Rock, or something like that.
    A: Mr. Rock? Oh, you (mean)__________________________ Mr. Stone.

    B: That (be) _______________________ dull.
    A: It wasn't at all. You can't imagine the fun we had.

12. A: Why are you here so early?
    B: Sam told me that the party started at seven o'clock.
    A: No, it doesn't start until eight o'clock. You (misunderstand) ______________

---

10-4 DEGREES OF CERTAINTY: FUTURE TIME

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>100% sure: Kay will do well on the test.</th>
<th>90% sure: Kay should do well on the test. Kay ought to do well on the test.</th>
<th>less than 50% sure: She may do well on the test. She might do well on the test. She could do well on the test.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100% sure: Kay will do well on the test.</td>
<td>The speaker feels sure.</td>
<td>The speaker is guessing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90% sure: Kay should do well on the test. Kay ought to do well on the test.</td>
<td>The speaker is almost sure.</td>
<td>The speaker is guessing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 50% sure: She may do well on the test. She might do well on the test. She could do well on the test.</td>
<td>The speaker is guessing.</td>
<td>The speaker is guessing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Kay has been studying hard. She should do I ought to do well on the test tomorrow.  
Should I ought to can be used to express expectations about future events. In (a): The speaker is saying, "Kay will probably do well on the test. I expect her to do well. That is what I think will happen."

(b) I wonder why Sue hasn't written us. We should have heard I ought to have heard from her last week.  
The past form of should I ought to is used to mean that the speaker expected something that did not occur.
EXERCISE 12. Degrees of certainty. (Charts 4-2, 10-1, and 10-4)

Directions: Use will, should/ought to, or must in the following. In some, more than one modal is possible. Discuss the meanings that the modals convey.*

1. Look at all the people standing in line to get into that movie. It _____ must _____ be a good movie.

2. Let's go to the lecture tonight. It should/ought to OR will be interesting.

3. Look. Jack's car is in front of his house. He ______ be at home. 
   Let's stop and visit him.

4. A: Hello. May I speak to Jack?
   B: He isn't here right now.
   A: What time do you expect him?
   B: He _____ be home around nine or so.

5. A: Who do you think is going to win the game tomorrow?
   B: Well, our team has better players, so we _____ win, but you never know. Anything can happen in sports.

6. A: It's very important for you to be there on time.
   B: I _____ be there at seven o'clock. I promise!

7. A: What time are you going to arrive?
   B: Well, the trip takes about four hours. I think I'll leave sometime around noon, so I _____ get there around four.

8. A: Here are your tickets, Mr. Anton. Your flight _____ depart from Gate 15 on the Blue Concourse at 6:27.
   B: Thank you. Could you tell me where the Blue Concourse is?

9. A: Susie is yawning and rubbing her eyes.
   B: She _____ be sleepy. Let's put her to bed early tonight.

10. A: Martha has been working hard all day. She left for work before dawn this morning.
    B: She _____ be really tired when she gets home this evening.

11. A: Where can I find the address for the University of Chicago?
    B: I'm not sure, but you _____ be able to find that information at the library. The library carries catalogues of most of the universities in the U.S.

12. A: When's dinner?
    B: We're almost ready to eat. The rice _____ be done in five minutes.

*COMPARE: Must expresses a strong degree of certainty about a present situation. (See Chart 10-1, p. 176.) Should and ought to express a fairly strong degree of certainty about a future situation. (See Chart 10-4, p. 184.) Will indicates that there is no doubt in the speaker's mind about a future event. (See Chart 4-2, p. 52.)
13. A: Where's your dictionary?
   B: Isn't it on my desk?
   A: No, I don't see it there.
   B: Okay. Then it must be in the bookcase. You ___________ find it on the second shelf. Is it there?

14. Ed has been acting strangely lately.
   He ___________ be in love.

15. Hmmm. I wonder what's causing the delay.
   Ellen's plane ___________
   been here an hour ago.

16. I thought I had some money in my billfold, but I don't. I ___________ spent it.

☐ EXERCISE 13. Degrees of certainty. (Charts 10-1 → 10-4)
Directions: Using the information about each situation, complete the sentences.

1. Situation: Someone's knocking at the door. I wonder who it is.
   Information: Tom is out of town.
   Fred called half an hour ago and said he would stop by this afternoon.
   Alice is a neighbor who sometimes drops by in the middle of the day.
   a. It must be ___________ Fred.
   b. It couldn't be ___________ Tom.
   c. I suppose it might be ___________ Alice.

2. Situation: Someone ran into the tree in front of our house. I wonder who did it.
   Information: Sue has a car, and she was out driving last night.
   Jane doesn't have a car and doesn't know how to drive.
   Ron has a car, but I'm pretty sure he was at home last night.
   Ann was out driving last night, and today her car has a big dent in the front.
   a. It couldn't have been ___________
   b. It must not have been ___________
   c. It could have been ___________
   d. It must have been ___________
3. **Situation:** There is a hole in the bread. It looks like something ate some of the bread. The bread was in a closed drawer until I opened it.

**Information:** A mouse likes to eat bread and is small enough to crawl into a drawer. A cat can’t open a drawer. And most cats don't like bread. A rat can sometimes get into a drawer, but I'm pretty sure we don't have rats in our house.

a. It could have been ________________

b. It couldn't have been ________________

c. It must have been ________________

4. **Situation:** My friends Mark and Carol were in the next room with my neighbor. I heard someone playing a very difficult piece on the piano.

**Information:** Mark has no musical ability at all and doesn't play any instrument.
Carol is an excellent piano player.
I don't think my neighbor plays the piano, but I'm not sure.

a. It couldn't have been ________________

b. I suppose it could have been ________________

c. It must have been ________________

5. **Situation:** The meeting starts in fifteen minutes. I wonder who is coming.

**Information:** I just talked to Bob on the phone. He's on his way. Sally rarely misses a meeting. Andy comes to the meetings sometimes, and sometimes he doesn't. Janet is out of town.

a. ________________ won't be at the meeting.

b. ________________ should be at the meeting.

c. ________________ will be here.

d. ________________ might come.

EXERCISE 14. Degrees of certainty. (Charts 10-1 → 10-4)

*Directions:* Work in pairs. Choose one of the given situations and create a dialogue of 10 to 20 sentences or more. Then present your dialogue to the rest of the class. For each situation, the beginning of the dialogue is given. Try to include modals in your conversation.

1. **Situation:** The two of you are roommates or a married couple. It is late at night. All of the lights are turned off. You hear a strange noise. You try to figure out what it might or must be, what you should or should not do, etc.

A: Psst. Are you awake?
B: Yes. What's the matter?
A: Do you hear that noise?
B: Yes. What do you suppose it is?
A: I don't know. It ....
B: ....
2. Situation: Your teacher is always on time, but today it is fifteen minutes past the
time class begins and he/she still isn't here. You try to figure out why
he/she isn't here yet and what you should do.
A: Mr./Mrs./Ms.*/Miss/Dr./Professor/(Jack)/etc.____________________
    should have been here fifteen minutes ago. I wonder where
    he/she is. Why do you suppose he/she hasn't arrived yet?
B: Well,____

3. Situation: The two of you are supposed to meet Anita and Po at the park for a
picnic. You are almost ready to leave when you hear a loud noise. It
sounds like thunder.
A: Is the picnic basket all packed?
B: Yes. Everything's ready.
A: Good. Let's get going.
B: Wait. Did you hear that?
A:____,

4. Situation: It is late at night. The weather is very bad. Your eighteen-year-old son,
who had gone to a party with some friends, was supposed to be home an
hour ago. (The two of you are either a married couple or a parent and
his/her friend.) You are getting worried. You are trying to figure out
where he might be, what might or must have happened, and what you
should do, if anything.
A: It's already________o'clock and____________________isn't
    home yet. I'm getting worried.
B: So am I. Where do you suppose he is?
A:____,

10-5  PROGRESSIVE FORMS OF MODALS

| (a) Let's just knock on the door lightly. Tom may be sleeping. (right now) | (right now) | modal + be + -ing | Meaning: in progress right now |
| (b) All of the lights in Ann's room are turned off. She must be sleeping. | | | |
| (c) Sue wasn't at home last night when we went to visit her. She might have | been studying at the library. | | Progressive form, past time: modal + have been + -ing |
| (d) Joe wasn't at home last night. He has a lot of exams coming up soon, and | he is also working on a term paper. He must have been studying at the | | Meaning: in progress at a time in the past |
| library. | | |

*In American English, a period is used with the abbreviations Mr./Mrs./Ms. British English does not use a period with these abbreviations.
American: Mr. Black/Mrs. Green/Ms. Brown
British: Mr Black/Mrs Green/Ms Brown
EXERCISE 15. Progressive forms of modals. (Chart 10-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use the appropriate progressive forms of must, should, or may/might/could.

1. Look. Those people who are coming in the door are carrying wet umbrellas. It (rain) must be raining.

2. A: Why is Margaret in her room?
   B: I don't know. She (do) may be doing her homework.

3. A: Do you smell smoke?
   B: I sure do. Something (burn) _ in the kitchen.

4. A: The line's been busy for over an hour. Who do you suppose Frank is talking to?
   B: I don't know. He (talk) _ to his parents. Or he (talk) _ to his sister in Chicago.

   B: The children (play) _ some kind of game.
   A: That's what it sounds like to me, too. I'll go see.

6. A: I need to call Howard. Do you know which hotel he's staying at in Boston?
   B: Well, he (stay) _ at the Hilton, but I'm not sure.
   He (stay) _ at the Holiday Inn.

7. A: What are you doing?
   B: I'm writing a letter to a friend, but I (study) _ .
   I have a test tomorrow.

8. A: Did you know that Andy just quit school and started to hitchhike to Alaska?
   B: What? You (kid) _ !

9. A: Did Ed mean what he said about Andy yesterday?
   B: I don't know. He (kid) _ when he said that, but who knows?

10. A: Did Ed really mean what he said yesterday?
    B: No, I don't think so. I think he (kid) _ .
EXERCISE 16. Progressive forms of modals. (Chart 10-5)

Directions: Discuss what the students on the bus should and should not be doing.

Example: The student in the middle of the bus shouldn't be climbing out of the window to the top of the bus.

EXERCISE 17. Progressive and past forms of modals. (Charts 9-8 and 10-1 → 10-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the words in parentheses. Add not if necessary for a sentence to make sense.

1. Alex has a test tomorrow that he needs to study for. He (should + watch) shouldn't be watching TV right now.

2. There's Tom. He's standing at the bus stop. He (must + wait) ______ for the two o'clock bus.

3. Kathy lost her way while driving to River City. She (should + leave) ______ her road map at home.

4. My tweed jacket isn't in my closet. I think my roommate (might + borrow) ______ ______ it. He often borrows my clothes without asking me.

5. When I walked into the room, the TV was on but the room was empty. Dad (must + watch) ______ ______ of the TV a short while before I came into the room. He (must + forget) ______ ______ to turn it off before he left the room.

6. A: Why wasn't Pamela at the meeting last night?
   B: She (may + attend) ______ ______ the lecture at Shaw Hall. I know she really wanted to hear the speaker.
7. A: Why didn't Diane come to the phone? I know she was home when I called.
   B: I don't know. She (might + wash)______________________________ her hair when you called. Who knows?

8. A: Where's that cold air coming from?
   B: Someone (must + leave)______________________________ the door open.

   B: I'm not sure. She (might + travel)______________________________ in Europe.
      I think I heard her mention something about spending a few weeks in Europe this spring.

10. A: When I arrived, Dennis looked surprised.
    B: He (must + expect)______________________________you.

11. A: Why didn't Jack answer the teacher when she asked him a question?
    B: He was too busy staring out the window. He (must + daydream)______________________________.
      He (should + pay)______________________________ attention. He (should + stare)______________________________ out the window during class.

12. A: The roads are treacherous this morning. In places they're nothing but a sheet of ice. I (should + take)______________________________ the bus to work today instead of driving my car. I thought I'd never make it!
    B: I know. It's terrible outside. Jake still hasn't arrived. He (must + walk)______________________________to work right now. He doesn't live too far away, but I know he hates to drive on icy roads.
    A: He (might + decide)______________________________ not to come in at all. He (could + work)______________________________ on his report at home this morning.
      I'll check with his secretary. He (may + call)______________________________her by now.
EXERCISE 18. Degrees of certainty. (Charts 10-1 → 10-5)
Directions: Go to a public place where there are people whom you do not know (a cafeteria, store, street corner, park, zoo, lobby, etc.) or imagine yourself to be in such a place. Choose three of the people to write a composition about. Using a paragraph for each person, describe his/her appearance briefly and then make guesses about the person: age, occupation, personality, activities, etc.

Example:

I'm in a hotel lobby. I'm looking at a man who is wearing a blue pin-striped suit and carrying a briefcase. He is talking to someone at the registration desk, so he must be registering to stay in the hotel. He could be checking out, but I don't think so. He might be simply asking a question, but I doubt it. Judging from his clothes, I'd say he's probably a businessman. But he could be something else. He might be a doctor, a funeral director, or a professor. He has salt-and-pepper hair and not too many wrinkles. He must be about 50 or 55. He doesn't have any luggage with him. The porter must have taken his luggage. The hotel clerk just handed the man a key. Aha! I was right. He is registering to stay at the hotel.

EXERCISE 19. Degrees of certainty. (Charts 10-1 → 10-5)
Directions: Discuss and/or write about the people and activities in the picture. Include any factual information you can get from the picture, and also make guesses about the people: their ages, occupations, activities, etc.
EXERCISE 20. Degrees of certainty. (Charts 10-1 → 10-5)

Directions: In pairs or small groups, discuss the dialogue. Make guesses about the two people and what's happening. What possibilities can you think of?

Situation: A man and woman are sitting at a table.
MAN: I don't think you should do this alone.
WOMAN: But you don't understand. I have to.
MAN: Let me go with you. (fumbling with his wallet) Just give me a minute to pay the bill.
WOMAN: No, I'll be fine.
MAN: You must let me help.
WOMAN: There's nothing you can do. (standing) This is something I need to do for myself.
MAN: Okay. If that's the way you want it.
WOMAN: (leaving) I'll call you.

Possible discussion questions:
1. Where are the man and woman?
2. Who are they? What is the relationship between them?
3. Where's the woman going?
4. Why does she want to go alone?
5. Why does the man want to go with her?

### 10-6 ABILITY: CAN AND COULD

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Tom is strong. He <em>can</em> lift that heavy box.</td>
<td><em>Can</em> is used to express physical ability, as in (a).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) I <em>can see</em> Central Park from my apartment.</td>
<td><em>Can</em> is frequently used with verbs of the five senses: <em>see, hear, feel, smell, taste</em>, as in (b).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Maria <em>can play</em> the piano. She's been taking lessons for many years.</td>
<td><em>Can</em> is used to express an acquired skill. In (c), <em>can play</em> = <em>knows how to play</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) You <em>can buy</em> a hammer at the hardware store.</td>
<td><em>Can</em> is used to express possibility. In (d), <em>you can buy</em> = <em>it is possible for one to buy</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) I'm not quite ready to go, but you <em>can leave</em> if you're in a hurry. I'll meet you later.</td>
<td><em>Can</em> is used to give permission in informal situations, as in (e). In formal situations, <em>may</em> rather than <em>can</em> is usually used to give permission, as in (f).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) When you finish the test, you <em>may leave</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Dogs <em>can bark</em>, but they <em>cannot / can't</em> talk.</td>
<td>Negative form: <em>cannot</em> or <em>can't</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Tom <em>could lift</em> the box, but I <em>couldn't</em>.</td>
<td>The past form of <em>can</em> meaning &quot;ability&quot; is <em>could</em>, as in (h). Negative = <em>could not</em> or <em>couldn't</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 21. CAN and COULD. (Chart 10-6)

Directions: Can is typically pronounced /kan/ in normal spoken English, but may also be pronounced /kæn/. Can’t is usually pronounced /kænt/. Try to determine whether the teacher is saying can or can’t in the sentences.*

1. The secretary can/can’t help you.
2. My mother can/can’t speak English.
3. My friend can/can’t meet you at the airport.
4. Mr. Smith can/can’t answer your question.
5. We can/can’t come to the meeting.
6. Can/Can’t you come?**
7. You can/can’t take that course.
8. I can/can’t cook.
9. Our son can/can’t count to ten.
10. I can/can’t drive a stick-shift car.

EXERCISE 22. CAN and COULD. (Chart 10-6)

Directions: Make sentences, answer questions, and/or discuss meanings as suggested in the following. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

1. Name a physical ability that you have and a physical ability you don’t have.
2. Name an acquired skill that you have and an acquired skill you don’t have.
3. There’s no class tomorrow.
   a. What can you do tomorrow?
   b. What may (might) you do tomorrow?
   c. What are you going to do tomorrow?
4. a. What are the possible ways you can get to school?
   b. What are the possible ways you may get to school tomorrow?
5. What is the difference in the use of can and may in the following?
   a. Sure! You can borrow five dollars from me. You can pay me back later.
   b. You may pay the bill either in person or by mail.
6. Compare the following, using can and can’t:
   a. people and animals
      (Example: Birds can fly, but people can’t.)
   b. adults and children
   c. women and men
7. Plan your next vacation and describe what you . . .
   a. may do on your vacation.
   b. can do on your vacation.
   c. will do on your vacation.
8. What is something you could do as a child that you can’t do now?

*Sometimes even native speakers have difficulty distinguishing between can and can’t. Also, British and American pronunciations of can’t are different. British: can’t = /kænt/ (cawhnt). American: can’t = /kaent/ (rhymes with rant).

**NOTE: "t" + "you" = “chu” (can’t you = /kænchu/).
A researcher into human behavior conducted an experiment. First she talked to a group of four-year-olds.

"How many of you can dance?" All of the children raised their hands.

"How many of you can sing?" All of the hands shot up.

"And finally, how many of you can draw?" Every child's hand was raised.

Next the researcher went to a college class of twenty-five students in their late teens and early twenties.

"How many of you can dance?" she asked. About a third of the students raised their hands.

"How many of you can sing?" Some hands were raised, but fewer than were raised for the first question.

"How many of you can draw?" Only two hands went up.

Discussion question:
What do you think accounts for the different responses in the two groups, and what conclusions might you make if you were the researcher?

---

**10-7 USING WOULD TO EXPRESS A REPEATED ACTION IN THE PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) When I was a child, my father would read me a story at night before bedtime.</td>
<td>Would can be used to express an action that was repeated regularly in the past. When would is used to express this idea, it has the same meaning as used to (habitual past).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) When I was a child, my father used to read me a story at night before bedtime.</td>
<td>(a) and (b) have the same meaning.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) I used to live in California. He used to be a Boy Scout. They used to have a Ford.</td>
<td>Used to expresses a habitual situation that existed in the past, as in (c). In this case, would may not be used as an alternative. Would is used only for regularly repeated actions in the past.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**EXERCISE 24. Using WOULD and USED TO. (Chart 10-7)**

*Directions:* In these sentences, use would whenever possible to express a repeated action in the past. Otherwise, use used to.

1. I (be) ______ used to be ______ very shy. Whenever a stranger came to our house, I (hide) ______ would hide ______ in a closet.

2. I remember my Aunt Susan very well. Every time she came to our house, she (give) ______ me a big kiss and pinch my cheek.

3. Illiteracy is still a problem in my country, but it (be) ______ much worse.
4. I (be) __________________ afraid of flying. My heart (start) ________________________________ pounding every time I stepped on a plane. But now I'm used to flying and enjoy it.

5. I (be) __________________ an anthropology major. Once I was a member of an archaeological expedition. Every morning, we (get) __________________________ up before dawn. After breakfast, we (spend) __________________________ our entire day in the field. Sometimes one of us (find) ______________________ a particularly interesting item, perhaps an arrowhead or a piece of pottery. When that happened, other members of the group (gather) __________________________ around to see what had been unearthed.

6. I got a new bicycle when I was ten. My friends (ask) __________________________ to ride it, but for a long time I (let, never) __________________________ anyone else use it.

7. When my grandfather was a boy and had a cold, his mother (make) __________________________ him go to bed. Then she (put) __________________________ goose fat on his chest.

8. Last summer, my sister and I took a camping trip in the Rocky Mountains. It was a wonderful experience. Every morning, we (wake) __________________________ up to the sound of singing birds. During the day, we (hike) __________________________ through woods and along mountain streams. Often we (see) __________________________ deer. On one occasion we saw a bear and quickly ran in the opposite direction.

9. When I was a child, I (take) __________________________ a flashlight to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my parents' knowing about it.
10. I remember Mrs. Sawyer's fifth grade class well. When we arrived each morning, she
(sit)__________________________at her desk. She (smile, always)__________________________
__________________________hello to each student as he or she entered. When the bell rang,
she (stand) ______________________up and (clear)_______________________________her
throat. That was our signal to be quiet. Class was about to begin.

10–8 EXPRESSING PREFERENCE: WOULD RATHER

(a) I would rather go to a movie tonight than study grammar. Would rather expresses preference.
In (a): Notice that the simple form of a verb follows
both would rather and than.
(b) I'd rather study history than (study) biology.
In (b): If the verb is the same, it usually is not
repeated after than.

—How much do you weigh?
I'd rather not tell you.

Contraction: /would - I'd
Negative form: would rather + not

(c) The movie was okay, but I would rather have
gone to the concert last night.
The past form: would rather have + past participle
Usual pronunciation: "I'd rather-av"

(d) I'd rather be lying on a beach in India than (be)
sitting in class right now.
Progressive form: would rather + be + -ing

EXERCISE 25. Expressing preference: WOULD RATHER. (Chart 10-8)
Directions: Use would rather to complete the sentences.

1. A: Do you want to go to the concert tonight?
   B: Not really. I __________
2. A: Did you go to the concert last night?
   B: Yes, but I __________
3. A: What are you doing right now?
   B: I'm studying grammar, but I ....
4. A: Do you want to come with us to the museum tomorrow?
   B: Thanks, but I ....
5. A: I ... than ....
   B: Not me. I ... than ....

EXERCISE 26. Expressing preference: WOULD RATHER. (Chart 10-8)
Directions: Answer in complete sentences.

1. You are in (name of place) right now. Where would you rather be?
2. What would you rather do than go to class?
3. What did you do last night? What would you have rather done?*
4. What are you doing right now? What would you rather be doing?

*Also possible: What would you rather have done?
Begin your answer with "No, I'd rather . . . "
5. Do you want to go to a movie tonight? (to a concert?) (to the zoo tomorrow?)
6. Do you want to play tennis this afternoon? (go bowling?) (shoot pool?)
7. Do you want to eat at the cafeteria? (at a Chinese restaurant?)
8. Would you like to live in (name of a city)?

10-9 COMBINING MODALS WITH PHRASAL MODALS

| (a) INCORRECT: Janet will can help you tomorrow. | A modal cannot be immediately followed by another modal. In (a): The modal will cannot be followed by can, which is another modal. |
| (b) CORRECT: Janet will be able to help you tomorrow. | A modal can, however, be followed by the phrasal modals be able to and have to. In (b): The modal will is correctly followed by the phrasal modal be able to. |
| (c) CORRECT: Tom isn't going to be able to help you tomorrow. | It is also sometimes possible for one phrasal modal to follow another phrasal modal. In (c): be going to is followed by be able to. |

198 CHAPTER 10

☐ EXERCISE 27. Combining modals with BE ABLE TO and HAVE TO. (Chart 10-9)

Directions: Use the given combinations in sentences or short dialogues.

1. might not be able to
2. be going to have to
3. have to be able to
4. shouldn't have to
5. must not have been able to
6. would rather not have to
7. not be going to be able to
8. may have had to
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AUXILIARY</th>
<th>USES</th>
<th>PRESENT/FUTURE</th>
<th>PAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **may**   | (1) polite request (only with I or we) | *May I borrow your pen?* | *
|           | (2) formal permission               | *You may leave the room.* | *
|           | (3) less than 50% certainty         | *— Where's John? He may be at the library.* | *He may have been at the library.* |
| **might** | (1) less than 50% certainty         | *— Where's John? He might be at the library.* | *He might have been at the library.* |
|           | (2) polite request (rare)           | *Might I borrow your pen?* | *
| **should**| (1) advisability                    | *I should study tonight.* | *I should have studied last night, but I didn't.* |
|           | (2) 90% certainty (expectation)     | *She should do well on the test.* *(future only, not present)* | *She should have done well on the test.* |
| **ought to** | (1) advisability                    | *I ought to study tonight.* | *I ought to have studied last night, but I didn't.* |
|           | (2) 90% certainty (expectation)     | *She ought to do well on the test.* *(future only, not present)* | *She ought to have done well on the test.* |
| **had better** | (1) advisability with threat of bad result | *You had better be on time, or we will leave without you.* | *(past form uncommon)* |
| **be supposed to** | (1) expectation | *Class is supposed to begin at 10:00.* | *
|           | (2) unfulfilled expectation         |                       | *Class was supposed to begin at 10:00, but it didn't begin until 10:15.* |
| **must**  | (1) strong necessity                | *I must go to class today.* | *(I had to go to class yesterday.)* |
|           | (2) prohibition (negative)          | *You must not open that door.* | *
|           | (3) 95% certainty                   | *Mary isn't in class. She must be sick.* *(present only)* | *Mary must have been sick yesterday.* |
| **have to** | (1) necessity                       | *I have to go to class today.* | *(I had to go to class yesterday.)* |
|           | (2) lack of necessity (negative)    | *I don't have to go to class today.* | *(I didn't have to go to class yesterday.)* |
| **have got to** | (1) necessity                       | *I have got to go to class today.* | *(I had to go to class yesterday.)* |
| **will**  | (1) 100% certainty                  | *He will be here at 6:00.* *(future only)* | *
|           | (2) willingness                     | *— The phone's ringing. I'll get it.* | *
|           | (3) polite request                   | *Will you please pass the salt?* | *
### Modal Verbs Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AUXILIARY</th>
<th>USES</th>
<th>PRESENT/FUTURE</th>
<th>PAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be going to</td>
<td>(1) 100% certainty (prediction)</td>
<td>He is going to be here at 6:00. (future only)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) definite plan (intention)</td>
<td><em>I'm going to paint my bedroom.</em> (future only)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) unfulfilled intention</td>
<td></td>
<td>I was going to paint my room, but I didn't have time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>(1) ability/possibility</td>
<td><em>I can run</em> fast.</td>
<td>I could run fast when I was a child, but now I can't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) informal permission</td>
<td>You can use my car tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) informal polite request</td>
<td>Can I borrow your pen?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) impossibility (negative only)</td>
<td><em>That can't be true!</em></td>
<td>That can't have been true!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>(1) past ability</td>
<td></td>
<td>I could run fast when I was a child.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|           | (2) polite request                            | *Could I borrow your pen?*  
*Could you help me?* |                                                                         |
|           | (3) suggestion (affirmative only)             | -- *I need help in math.*  
You could talk to your teacher. | You could have talked to your teacher.                              |
|           | (4) less than 50% certainty                   | *Where's John?*  
He could be at home. | He could have been at home.                                          |
|           | (5) impossibility (negative only)             | *That couldn't be true!*                   | That couldn't have been true!                                        |
| be able to | (1) ability                                   | *I am able to help you. I will be able to help you.* | I was able to help him.                                          |
| would     | (1) polite request                            | *Would you please pass the salt?  
Would you mind if I left early?* |                                                                         |
|           | (2) preference                                | *I would rather go to the park than stay home.* | I would rather have gone to the park.                               |
|           | (3) repeated action in the past               |                                             | When I was a child, I would visit my grandparents every weekend.   |
|           | (4) polite for "want" (with like)             | *I would like* an apple, please.            |                                                                         |
|           | (5) unfulfilled wish                           |                                             | *I would have liked* a cookie, but there were none in the house.    |
| used to   | (1) repeated action in the past               |                                             | *I used to visit* my grandparents every weekend.                     |
|           | (2) past situation that no longer exists      |                                             | *I used to live* in Spain. Now I live in Korea.                     |
| shall     | (1) polite question to make a suggestion       | *Shall I open the window?*                 |                                                                         |
|           | (2) future with "I" or "we" as subject         | *I shall arrive* at nine.  
(will = more common) |                                                                         |

NOTE: Use of modals in reported speech is discussed in Chart 12-7, p. 254. Use of modals in conditional sentences is discussed in Chapter 20.
EXERCISE 28. Review: modals and similar expressions. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Directions: Discuss the differences in meaning, if any, in each group of sentences.

1. a. May I use your phone?
   b. Could I use your phone?
   c. Can I use your phone?

2. a. You should take an English course.
   b. You ought to take an English course.
   c. You're supposed to take an English course.
   d. You must take an English course.

3. a. You should see a doctor about that cut on your arm.
   b. You had better see a doctor about that cut on your arm.
   c. You have to see a doctor about that cut on your arm.

4. a. You must not use that door.
   b. You don't have to use that door.

5. a. I will be at your house by six o'clock.
   b. I should be at your house by six o'clock.

6. —There is a knock at the door. Who do you suppose it is?
   a. It might be Sally.
   b. It may be Sally.
   c. It could be Sally.
   d. It must be Sally.

7. —There's a knock at the door. I think it's Mike.
   a. It may not be Mike.
   b. It couldn't be Mike.
   c. It can't be Mike.

8. —Where's Jack?
   a. He might have gone home.
   b. He must have gone home.
   c. He had to go home.

9. a. Each student should have health insurance.
   b. Each student must have health insurance.

10. a. If you're having a problem, you could talk to Mrs. Anderson.
    b. If you're having a problem, you should talk to Mrs. Anderson.

11. a. I've got to go.
    b. I have to go.
    c. I should go.
    d. I'm supposed to go.
    e. I'd better go.
    f. I'd rather go.

12. —I needed some help.
    a. You should have asked Tom.
    b. You could have asked Tom.

13. a. When I was living at home, I would go to the beach every weekend with my friends.
    b. When I was living at home, I used to go to the beach every weekend with my friends.
EXERCISE 29. Review: modals and similar expressions. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Directions: Use a modal or phrasal modal with each verb in parentheses. More than one auxiliary may be possible. Use the one that seems most appropriate to you and explain why you chose that one rather than another.

1. It looks like rain. We (shut)________________________the windows.


3. Spring break starts on the thirteenth. We (go, not)________________________to classes again until the twenty-second.

4. The baby is only a year old, but she (say, already)________________________a few words.

5. In the United States, elementary education is compulsory. All children (attend)________________________six years of elementary school.

6. There was a long line in front of the theater. We (wait)________________________almost an hour to buy our tickets.

7. A: I'd like to go to a warm, sunny place next winter. Any suggestions?
   B: You (go)________________________to Hawaii or Mexico. Or how about Indonesia?

8. I don't feel like going to the library to study this afternoon. I (go)________________________to the shopping mall than to the library.

9. A: Mrs. Wilson got a traffic ticket. She didn't stop at a stop sign.
   B: That's surprising. Usually she's a very cautious driver and obeys all the traffic laws. She (see, not)________________________the sign.

10. Annie, you (clean)________________________this mess before Dad gets home.
    He'll be mad if he sees all this stuff all over the living room floor.

11. A: This is Steve's laptop, isn't it?
    B: It (be, not)________________________his. He doesn't have a laptop computer, at least not that I know of. It (belong)________________________to Lucy or to Linda. They sometimes bring their laptops to class.

12. In my country, a girl and boy (go, not)________________________out on a date unless they are accompanied by a chaperone.

13. Jimmy was serious when he said he wanted to be a cowboy when he grew up. We (laugh, not)________________________at him. We hurt his feelings.
14. A: (I, speak) ________________ to Peggy?
   B: She (come, not) ________________ to the phone right now. (I, take) ________________ message?

15. A: How are you planning to get to the airport?
   B: By taxi.
   A: You (take) ________________ a shuttle bus instead. It's cheaper than a taxi. You (get) ________________ one in front of the hotel. It picks up passengers there on a regular schedule.

16. A: Why didn't you come to the party last night?
   B: I (study) ________________.
   A: You (come) ________________. We had a good time.

   B: No, we (answer) ________________ it. It (be) ________________ important. We (get) ________________ an answering machine.

18. It's not like Tony to be late. He (be) ________________ here an hour ago. I hope nothing bad has happened.

19. A: This is a great open-air market. Look at all this wonderful fresh fish! What kind of fish is this?
   B: I'm not sure. It (be) ________________ ocean perch. Let's ask.

20. The teacher called on Sam in class yesterday, but he kept looking out the window and didn't respond. He (daydream) ________________.
Exercise 30. Error analysis: modals. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Directions: Correct the errors. Some of the sentences contain spelling or singular-plural errors.

1. If you have a car, you can traveled around the United State.
2. During class the students must to sit quitely. When the student have questions, they must to raise their hands.
3. When you send for the brochure, you should included a self-addressed, stamped envelope.
4. A film director must has control over every aspect of a movie.
5. When I was a child, I can went to the roof of my house and saw all the other houses and streets.
6. While I was working in the fields, my son would brought me oranges or candy.
7. I used to brake my leg in a soccer game three month ago.
8. May you please help me with this?
9. Many student would rather to study on their own than going to classes.
10. We supposed to bring our books to class every day.
11. You can having a very good time as a tourist in my country. My country have many diferent wheather area, so you have better plan ahead before you came.
12. When you visit big city in my country, you must to be paying attention to your wallet when you are in a crowdy place because there's a lot of thief.

Exercise 31. Activity: modals. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with your own words. Work in pairs.

Example:
SPEAKER A: Why don't ... we go to Luigi's Restaurant for lunch?
SPEAKER B: Thanks, but I can't. I have to ... stay and finish this report during lunchtime.
SPEAKER A: That's too bad.
SPEAKER B: I should have ... come early this morning to finish it, but I couldn't. I had to ... drop my daughter off at school and meet with her teacher.

   B: You shouldn't have done that! B: No, he had to ....
   A: I know, but __________________________ A: Why?
   B: Well, why don't __________________________ B: ______
3. A: Did you hear the news? We don't have to ....
   B: Why not?
   A: ....
   B: Well, then, why don't ....

4. A: Whose ....
   B: I don't know. It ... or it ....
   A: Can____
   B: I'll try.

5. A: ....
   B: Not at all. I'd be happy to.
   A: Thank you. Maybe sometime ....

6. A: ....
   B: I would have liked to, but I ....

7. A: You must not ....
   B: Why not?
   A: ....

8. A: ....
   B: Well, you'd better ... or ....
   A: I know, but ....

9. A: ....
   B: ..., but I'd rather not have gone.
   A: I'd rather ....

10. A: May I ....
    B: Please do. I ....
    A: We could, but it's going to ....

11. A: ....
    B: That can't be true! She couldn't have ....
    A: Oh? Why not? Why do you say that?
    B: Because ....

12. A: Did you have to ....
    B: Yes.
    A: Are you going to have to ....
    B: I think so. So I'm probably not going to be able to .... But I might be able to ....

\[ EXERCISE\ 32.\ \text{Activity: modals. (Chapters 9 and 10)} \]

\textit{Directions:} In small groups, debate one, some, or all of the following statements. At the end of the discussion time, choose one member of your group to summarize for the rest of the class the principal ideas expressed during your discussion.

\textit{Do you agree with the following statements? Why or why not?}

1. Violence on television influences people to act violently.
2. Cigarette smoking should be banned from all public places.
3. No family should have more than two children.
4. Books, films, and news should be censored by government agencies.
5. People of different religions should not marry.
6. People shouldn't marry until they are at least twenty-five years old.
7. All nuclear weapons in the possession of any nation should be eliminated.
8. The United Nations is a productive and essential organization.
9. All people of the world should speak the same language.
EXERCISE 33. Review of verb forms. (Chapters 1 → 5, 9, and 10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense or modal.

A: Yesterday I (1. have)_________________________ a bad day.

B: Oh? What (2. happen)_________________________?

A: I was supposed to be at a job interview at ten, but I didn't make it because while I (3. drive)_________________________ down the freeway, my car (4. break)_________________________ down.

B: What (5. you, do)_________________________?

A: I (6. pull)_________________________ over to the side of the road, (7. get)_________________________ out, and (8. start)_________________________ walking.

B: You (9. do, not)_________________________ that! Walking alone along a highway can be dangerous. You (10. stay)_________________________ in your car until help came.

A: You (11. be, probably)_________________________ right, but I (12. start)_________________________ walking down the highway. After I (13. walk)_________________________ for about 20 minutes, I got to an exit ramp. Near the bottom of the exit ramp, there was a restaurant with a public phone. I (14. go)_________________________ to the phone and (15. discover)_________________________ that I had left my purse in the car, so I (16. have, not)_________________________ any money to make a phone call.

B: What did you do then?

A: What do you think I should have done?

B: I don't know. I (17. think)_________________________ of several things. You (18. go)_________________________ back to your car for your purse. You (19. try)_________________________ to borrow some change from a customer in the restaurant. You (20. ask)_________________________ to use the private phone in the restaurant. What did you actually do?

A: I (21. ask)_________________________ to speak with the manager of the restaurant.

B: That was a good idea. That's exactly what you should have done. What did the manager do?
A: When I (22. tell) her my tale of woe, she (23. be) very sympathetic. She (24. allow) me to use her private phone to call my friend Bill, who (25. drive) to the restaurant.

B: You (26. feel) really glad when you saw Bill.

A: I did. First he (27. take) me to my job interview, and then he (28. take) care of the car.

B: Good friends are important, aren't they?

A: They sure are.

B: Did you get the job you interviewed for?

A: I don't know yet. I (29. get) it, or I might not. I just don't know. I (30. know) in a couple more days.

B: Good luck!

A: Thanks! I need it! Well, I (31. leave) now. I (32. be) at a meeting in 45 minutes. (33. I, use) your phone? I (34. need) to call a taxi. My car is still in the garage, and I (35. have, not) time to wait for a bus.

B: I (36. take) you to your meeting.

A: Really? Thanks. As you said, good friends are important!

EXERCISE 34. Writing: modals. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Directions: Write a short paragraph on one or more of the topics.

Topics:
1. Write about when, where, and why you should (or should not) have done something in your life.
2. Write about a time in your life when you did something you did not want to do. Why did you do it? What could you have done differently? What should you have done? What would you rather have done?
3. Look at your future. What will, might, should it be like? Write about what you should, must, can do now in order to make your life what you want it to be.
4. Write about one embarrassing incident in your life. What could, should, might you have done to avoid it?
5. Look at the world situation and the relationships between nations. What could, should (or should not), must (or must not) be done to improve understanding?
6. Choose one of the environmental problems we are facing today. What could, should, may, must, might be done to solve this problem?
## Chapter 11
The Passive

### Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11-1</td>
<td>Forming the passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-2</td>
<td>Using the passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-3</td>
<td>Indirect objects as passive subjects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-4</td>
<td>The passive form of modals and phrasal modals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-5</td>
<td>Stative passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-6</td>
<td>Common stative passive verbs + prepositions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-7</td>
<td>The passive with <em>get</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-8</td>
<td>Participial adjectives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11-1 Forming the Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active:</th>
<th>Passive:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Mary helped the boy.</td>
<td>(b) The boy was helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the passive, the object of an active verb becomes the subject of the passive verb: the boy in (a) becomes the subject of the passive verb in (b).

Notice that the subject of an active verb follows *by* in a passive sentence. The noun that follows *by* is called the "agent." In (b): Mary is the agent.

(a) and (b) have the same meaning.

Only transitive verbs (verbs that can be followed by an object) are used in the passive. It is not possible to use intransitive verbs (such as *happen, sleep, come, seem*) in the passive. (See Appendix Chart A-1, p. A1.)

### Form of the Passive: *be* + Past Participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simple present</td>
<td>The boy <em>is</em> helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present progressive</td>
<td>The boy <em>is being</em> helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect*</td>
<td>The boy <em>has been</em> helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple past</td>
<td>The boy <em>was</em> helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past progressive</td>
<td>The boy <em>was being</em> helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect*</td>
<td>The boy <em>had been</em> helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple future*</td>
<td>The boy <em>will be</em> helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be going to</td>
<td>The boy <em>is going to be</em> helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future perfect*</td>
<td>The boy <em>will have been</em> helped by Mary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(e) Was the boy *helped* by Mary?  
(f) Is the boy *being helped* by Mary?  
(g) Has the boy *been helped* by Mary?

In the question form of passive verbs, an auxiliary verb precedes the subject. (See Appendix Chart B-1, p. A8, for information about question forms.)

*The progressive forms of the present perfect, past perfect, future, and future perfect are very rarely used in the passive.*
**EXERCISE 1. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-1)**

*Directions:* Change the active to the passive.

1. Tom opens the door. → The door _____________ by Tom.
2. Tom is opening the door. → The door _____________ by Tom.
3. Tom has opened the door. → The door _____________ by Tom.
4. Tom opened the door. → The door _____________ by Tom.
5. Tom was opening the door. → The door _____________ by Tom.
6. Tom had opened the door. → The door _____________ by Tom.
7. Tom will open the door. → The door _____________ by Tom.
8. Tom is going to open the door. → The door _____________ by Tom.
9. Tom will have opened the door. → The door _____________ by Tom.
10. Is Tom opening the door? → ________ the door _____________ by Tom?
11. Did Tom open the door? → ________ the door _____________ by Tom?
12. Has Tom opened the door? → ________ the door _____________ by Tom?

**EXERCISE 2. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-1)**

*PART I.* Change the active to passive.

1. Shakespeare wrote that play. → That play was written by Shakespeare.
2. Waitresses and waiters serve customers.
3. The teacher is going to explain the lesson.
4. Shirley has suggested a new idea.
5. Bill will invite Ann to the party.
6. Alex is preparing that report.
7. Two horses were pulling the farmer's wagon.
8. Kathy had returned the book to the library.

9. By this time tomorrow, the president will have made the announcement.

10. I didn't write that note. Jim wrote it.

11. Alice didn't make that pie. Did Mrs. French make it?

12. Does Prof. Jackson teach that course? I know that Prof. Adams doesn't teach it.

13. Mrs. Andrews hasn't signed those papers yet. Has Mr. Andrews signed them yet?

14. Is Mr. Brown painting your house?

15. His tricks won't fool me.

PART I. Change the passive to active.

16. That sentence was written by Omar.

17. Our papers are going to be collected by the teacher.

18. Was the electric light bulb invented by Thomas Edison?

19. The speed limit on Highway 5 isn't obeyed by most drivers.

20. Have you been informed of a proposed increase in our rent by the building superintendent?

EXERCISE 3. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-1)

Directions: Change the active to passive if possible. Some verbs are intransitive and cannot be changed.

1. A strange thing happened yesterday. (no change)

2. Jackie scored the winning goal. → The winning goal was scored by Jackie.

3. My cat died.

4. I agree with Dr. Ikeda's theory.

5. Dr. Ikeda developed that theory.

6. Timmy dropped the cup.

7. The cup fell to the floor.

8. The assistant manager interviewed me.


10. A hurricane destroyed the small fishing village.

11. Dinosaurs existed millions of years ago.

12. A large vase stands in the corner of our front hallway.

13. The children seemed happy when they went to the zoo.

14. After class, one of the students always erases the chalkboard.
15. The solution to my problem appeared to me in a dream.
16. Our plan succeeded at last.
17. Barbara traveled to Uganda last year.
18. Lightning didn't cause the fire.
19. A special committee is going to settle the dispute.
20. Did the army surround the enemy?
21. What happened in class yesterday?
22. The Persians invented windmills around 1500 years ago.

11-2 USING THE PASSIVE

(a) Rice is grown in India.
(b) Our house was built in 1980.
(c) This olive oil was imported from Crete.

Usually the passive is used without a fry-phrase. The passive is most frequently used when it is not known or not important to know exactly who performs an action.

In (a): Rice is grown in India by people, by farmers, by someone. It is not known or important to know exactly who grows rice in India.

(a), (b), and (c) illustrate the most common use of the passive, i.e., without the fry-phrase.

(d) Life on the Mississippi was written by Mark Twain.

The fry-phrase is included only if it is important to know who performs an action, as in (d), where by Mark Twain is important information.

(e) My aunt made this rug. (active)

If the speaker knows who performs an action, usually the active is used, as in (e).

(f) This rug was made by my aunt. That rug was made by my mother.

Sometimes, even when the speaker knows who performs an action, s/he chooses to use the passive with the fry-phrase because s/he wants to focus attention on the subject of a sentence. In (f): The focus of attention is on two rugs.

EXERCISE 4. Using the passive. (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)

Directions: Discuss why the use of the passive is appropriate in the sentences. For purposes of comparison, form possible active equivalents, and discuss probable reasons why the speakers/writers would choose to use the passive.

1. My sweater was made in England.
2. The new highway will be completed sometime next month.
3. Language skills are taught in every school in the country.
4. Beethoven's Seventh Symphony was performed at the concert last night.
5. The World Cup soccer games are being televised all over the world this year.
6. This composition was written by Ali. That one was written by Yoko.
7. The Washington Monument is visited by hundreds of people every day.
8. Bananas originated in Asia but now are grown in the tropics of both hemispheres of the world. They were introduced to the Americas in 1516.
9. Ink has been used for writing and drawing throughout history. No one knows when the first ink was developed. The ancient Egyptians and Chinese made ink from various natural substances, such as berries, soot, and tree bark. Through the centuries, thousands of different formulas have been developed for ink. Most ink today is made from synthetic chemicals.
10. The chief writing material of ancient times was papyrus. It was used in Egypt, Greece, and other Mediterranean lands. Parchment, another writing material that was widely used in ancient times, was made from the skins of animals such as sheep and goats. After the hair had been removed, the skins were stretched and rubbed smooth so that they could be written on. Paper, the main writing material today, was invented by the Chinese.

**EXERCISE 5. Using the passive. (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)**

*Directions: Change the active sentences to passive sentences if possible. (Some of the verbs are intransitive and cannot be changed.) Keep the same tense. Include the fry-phrase only if necessary.*

1. People grow corn in Iowa. → Corn is grown in Iowa.
2. Peter came here two months ago. (no change)
3. Someone made this antique table in 1734.
4. An accident happened at the corner of Fifth and Main.
5. Someone stole my purse.
6. Someone was making the coffee when I walked into the kitchen.
7. Translators have translated that book into many languages.
8. Jim’s daughter drew that picture. My son drew this picture.
9. The judges will judge the applicants on the basis of their originality.
10. My sister’s plane will arrive at 10:35.
11. Is Professor Rivers teaching that course this semester?
12. When did someone invent the radio?
13. The mail carrier had already delivered the mail by the time I left for school this morning.
14. When is someone going to announce the results of the contest?
15. After the concert was over, hundreds of fans mobbed the rock music star outside the theater.
16. Ever since I arrived here, I have been living in the dormitory because someone told me that it was cheaper to live there than in an apartment.
17. They* are going to build the new hospital next year. They have already built the new elementary school.
18. If you* expose a film to light while you are developing it, you will ruin the negative.

*In Item 17, *they is an impersonal pronoun; it refers to "some people" but to no people in particular.
In Item 18, *you is an impersonal pronoun; it refers to any person or people in general. See Chart 8-5, p. 140.*
I.O. = indirect object; D.O. = direct object

Either an indirect object or a direct object may become the subject of a passive sentence. (a), (b), (c), and (d) have the same meaning.

Notice in (d): When the direct object becomes the subject, *to* is usually kept in front of the indirect object.*

*The omission of *to* is more common in British English than American English: *An award was given Mrs. Lee.*

**Exercise 6. Indirect objects as passive subjects.** (Chart 11-3)

*Directions:* Find the indirect object in each sentence and make it the focus of attention by using it as the subject of a passive sentence. Use the *to*-phrase only if necessary.

1. Someone handed Ann a menu at the restaurant.  
   *(indirect object = Ann) → Ann was handed a menu at the restaurant.*

2. Indiana University has awarded Peggy a scholarship.

3. Some company paid Fred three hundred dollars in consulting fees for a job he did last week.

4. Someone has given Maria a promotion at her job as a computer programmer at Microsoft.

5. They will send you a bill at the end of the month.

6. Someone will give the starving people a week's supply of rice as soon as the food supplies arrive in the famine-stricken area.

**Exercise 7. Using the passive.** (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

*Directions:* Change active to passive. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

*Example:*

SPEAKER A *(book open)*: Someone built that house ten years ago.

SPEAKER B *(book closed)*: That house was built ten years ago.

1. Someone invited you to a party.

2. People grow rice in many countries.

3. Someone is televising the game.

4. Teachers teach reading in the first grade.

5. Someone told you to be here at ten.

6. Someone made that hat in Mexico.

7. Someone is going to serve dinner at six.

8. Someone will announce the news tomorrow.

9. Someone has made a mistake.

10. The teacher is giving a test in the next room right now.
EXERCISE 8. Using the passive. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

Directions: Form groups of three.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the first cue to Speaker B.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Change the cue to a passive sentence.
Speaker A: Give the second cue, a question.
Speaker C: Your book is closed. Answer the question, using the passive if possible.

Examples:

SPEAKER B (book closed): My watch was stolen.
SPEAKER A (book open): What happened to ( . . . )'s watch?
SPEAKER C (book closed): It was stolen.

SPEAKER A (book open): People speak Arabic in many countries.
SPEAKER B (book closed): Arabic is spoken in many countries.
SPEAKER A (book open): Is Arabic a common language?
SPEAKER C (book closed): Yes. It is spoken in many countries.

1. 1st cue: Someone stole your pen.
   2nd cue: What happened to ( . . . )'s pen?
2. 1st cue: People speak Spanish in many countries.
   2nd cue: Is Spanish a common language?
3. 1st cue: People play soccer in many countries.
   2nd cue: Is soccer a popular sport?
4. 1st cue: Mark Twain wrote that book.
   2nd cue: Who is the author of that book?
5. 1st cue: You went to a movie last night, but it bored you.
   2nd cue: Why did ( . . . ) leave the movie before it ended?
6. 1st cue: Someone returned your letter.
   2nd cue: ( . . . ) sent a letter last week, but he/she put the wrong address on it. What happened to the letter?
7. 1st cue: Someone established this school in 1950.
   2nd cue: How long has this school been in existence?

Switch roles.

8. 1st cue: Someone robbed the bank.
   2nd cue: What happened to the bank?
9. 1st cue: The police caught the bank robber.
   2nd cue: Did the bank robber get away?
10. 1st cue: A judge sent the bank robber to jail.
    2nd cue: What happened to the bank robber?
11. 1st cue: The government requires international students to have visas.
    2nd cue: Is it necessary for international students to have visas?
12. 1st cue: Someone had already made the coffee by the time you got up this morning.
    2nd cue: Did ( . . . ) have to make the coffee when he/she got up?
13. 1st cue: Something confused you.
    2nd cue: Why did ( . . . ) ask you a question?
14. 1st cue: Someone discovered gold in California in 1848.
    2nd cue: What happened in California in 1848?
Switch roles.
15. 1st cue: I read about a village in the newspaper. Terrorists attacked the village.
2nd cue: What happened to the village?
16. 1st cue: People used candles for light in the 17th century.
2nd cue: Was electricity used for light in the 17th century?
17. 1st cue: The pilot flew the hijacked plane to another country.
2nd cue: What happened to the hijacked plane?
18. 1st cue: When you had car trouble, a passing motorist helped you.
2nd cue: Yesterday ( . . . ) was driving down (Highway 40) when suddenly her/his car started to make a terrible noise. So she/he pulled over to the side of the road. Then what happened?
19. 1st cue: There is a party tomorrow night. Someone invited you to go.
2nd cue: Is ( . . . ) going to the party?
20. 1st cue: You wanted to buy a chair, but you needed time to make up your mind. Finally you decided to buy it, but someone had already sold the chair by the time you returned to the store.
2nd cue: Did ( . . . ) buy the chair?

EXERCISE 9. Using the passive. (Charts 11-1 – 11-3)
Directions: Use the words in the list to complete these passive sentences. Use any appropriate tense.

| build | frighten | report |
| cause | invent | spell |
| confuse | kill | surprise |
| divide | offer | surround |
| expect | order | wear |

1. The electric light bulb was invented by Thomas Edison.
2. An island was surrounded by water.
3. The -ing form of "sit" is sitting with a double t.
4. Even though construction costs are high, a new dormitory will be built next year.
5. The class was too large, so it was divided into two sections.
6. A bracelet is worn around the wrist.
7. The Johnsons' house burned down. According to the inspector, the fire was caused by lightning.
8. Al got a ticket for reckless driving. When he went to traffic court, he was ordered to pay a large fine.
9. I read about a hunter who accidentally by another hunter.

10. The hunter's fatal accident in the newspaper yesterday.

11. I didn't expect Lisa to come to the meeting last night, but she was there. I to see her.

12. Last week I a job at a local bank, but I didn't accept it.

13. The children in the middle of the night when they heard strange noises in the house.

14. Could you explain this math problem to me? Yesterday in class I by the teacher's explanation.

15. A: Is the plane going to be late?
   B: No. It to be on time.

EXERCISE 10. Using the passive. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

Directions: Use either active or passive, in any appropriate tense, for the verbs in parentheses.

1. The Amazon valley is extremely important to the ecology of the earth. Forty percent of the world's oxygen there.

2. Right now Roberto is in the hospital.* He for a bad burn on his hand and arm.

3. The game by the other team tomorrow. They're a lot better than we are.

4. There was a terrible accident on a busy downtown street yesterday. Dozens of people it, including my friend, who by the police.

5. In my country, certain prices, such as the price of medical supplies, by the government. Other prices by how much consumers are willing to pay for a product.

6. Yesterday a purse-snatcher by a dog. While the thief the police, he over a fence into someone's yard, where he encountered a ferocious dog. The dog the thief from escaping.

*in the hospital = American English; in hospital — British English
The first fish (appear) on the earth about 500 million years ago. Up to now, more than 20,000 kinds of fish (name) and (describe) by scientists. New species (discover) every year, so the total increases continually.

Richard Anderson is a former astronaut. Several years ago, when he was 52, Anderson (inform) by his superior at an aircraft corporation that he could no longer be a test pilot. He (tell) that he was being relieved of his duties because of his age. Anderson took the corporation to court for age discrimination.

Frostbite may occur when the skin (expose) to extreme cold. It most frequently (affect)* the skin of the cheeks, chin, ears, fingers, nose, and toes.

In 1877, a network of lines (discover) on the surface of Mars by an Italian astronomer, Giovanni Schiaparelli. The astronomer (call) these lines "channels," but when the Italian word (translate) into English, it became "canals." As a result, some people thought the lines were waterways that (build) by some unknown creatures. We now know that the lines are not really canals. Canals (exist, not) on Mars.

Carl Gauss (recognize) as a mathematical genius when he was ten. One day a professor gave him an arithmetic problem. Carl (ask) to add up all the numbers from 1 to 100 (1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5, etc.). It (take) him only eight seconds to solve the problem. How could he do it so quickly? Can you do it quickly?

Carl could do it quickly because he (know) that each pair of numbers — 1 plus 100, 2 plus 99, 3 plus 98, and so on to 50 plus 51 — equaled 101. So he (multiply) 50 times 101 and (come) up with the answer: 5,050.

*NOTE: *affect = a verb (e.g., The weather affects my moods.) *effect = a noun (e.g., The weather has an effect on my moods.*)
12. Captain Cook, a British navigator, was the first European to reach Australia’s east coast. While his ship was lying off Australia, his sailors (bring) a strange animal on board. Cook wanted to know the name of this unusual creature, so he (send) his men ashore to ask the native inhabitants. When the natives (ask) in impromptu sign language to name the animal, they said, “Kangaroo.” The sailors, of course, believed “kangaroo” was the animal’s name. Years later, the truth (discover). “Kangaroo” means “What did you say?” But today the animal (call, still) a kangaroo in English.

11-4 THE PASSIVE FORM OF MODALS AND PHRASAL MODALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THE PASSIVE FORM:</th>
<th>modal* + be + past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Tom</td>
<td>will be invited to the picnic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) The window</td>
<td>can’t be opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Children</td>
<td>should be taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) May 1</td>
<td>be excused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) This book</td>
<td>had better be returned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) This letter</td>
<td>ought to be sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Mary</td>
<td>has to be told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Fred</td>
<td>is supposed to be told</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THE PAST-PASSIVE FORM:</th>
<th>modal + have been + past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(i) The letter</td>
<td>should have been sent last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j) This house</td>
<td>must have been built over 200 years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) Jack</td>
<td>ought to have been invited to the party.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See Chapters 9 and 10 for a discussion of the form, meaning, and use of modals and phrasal modals.
EXERCISE 11. Passive modals. (Chart 11-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the given words, active or passive.

1. James (should + tell) ______should be told____ the news as soon as possible.
2. Someone (should + tell) _____should tell____ James the news immediately.
3. James (should + tell) ______should have been told____ the news a long time ago.
4. Meat (must + keep) _____________in a refrigerator or it will spoil.
5. You (must + keep) __________________meat in a refrigerator or it will spoil.
6. We tried, but the window (couldn’t + open) __________________. It was painted shut.
7. I tried, but I (couldn’t + open) __________________the window.
8. Good news! I (may + offer) __________________a job soon. I had an interview at an engineering firm yesterday.
9. Chris has good news. The engineering firm where she had an interview yesterday (may + offer) __________________her a job soon.
10. I hope Chris accepts our job offer, but I know she's been having interviews with several companies. She (may + already + offer*) __________________a job by a competing firm before we made our offer.
11. A competing firm (may + already + offer*) __________________Chris a job before we made our offer.
12. The class for next semester is too large. It (ought to + divide) __________________in half, but there’s not enough money in the budget to hire another teacher.
13. Last semester’s class was too large. It (ought to + divide) __________________in half.
14. These books (have to + return) __________________to the library by tomorrow.
15. Polly (have to + return) __________________these books by next Friday. If she doesn't return them, she (will + have to + pay) __________________a fine to the library.

*A midsentence adverb such as already may be placed after the first auxiliary (e.g., might already have come) or after the second auxiliary (e.g., might have already come).
16. A: Andy, your chores (had better + finish)__________________________
by the time I get home, including taking out the garbage.
B: Don't worry, Mom. I'll do everything you told me to do.

17. A: Andy, you (had better + finish)__________________________your chores before
Mom gets home.
B: I know. I'll do them in a minute. I'm busy right now.

18. This application (be supposed to + send)__________________________
to the personnel department soon.

19. Ann's birthday was on the 5th, and today is the 8th. Her birthday card (should + send)
__________________________a week ago. Maybe we'd better give her a
call to wish her a belated happy birthday.

20. A: Ann didn't expect to see her boss at the labor union meeting.
B: She (must + surprise)__________________________when she saw him.
A: She was.

EXERCISE 12. Passive modals. (Chart 11-4)
Directions: Use the verb in parentheses with the modal or phrasal modal that sounds best
to you. All of the sentences are passive.

1. The entire valley (see)____can be seen____________________from their mountain home.

2. He is wearing a gold band on his fourth finger. He (marry)__________________________
__________________________

3. According to our teacher, all of our compositions (write)__________________________
__________________________in ink. He won't accept papers written in pencil.

4. I found this book on my desk when I came to class. It (leave)__________________________
__________________________by one of the students in the earlier class.

5. Five of the committee members will be unable to attend the next meeting. In my
opinion, the meeting (postpone)__________________________

6. A child (give, not)__________________________everything he or she wants.

7. Your daughter has a good voice. Her interest in singing (encourage)__________________________

8. Try to speak slowly when you give your speech. If you don't, some of your words
(misunderstand)__________________________
9. Some UFO sightings (explain, not) ________________
easily. They are inexplicable.

10. What? You tripped over a chair at the party and dropped your plate of food into a
woman's lap? You (embarrass)_______________________________.

11. She is very lazy. If you want her to do anything, she (push) ________________
_______________.

12. The hospital in that small town is very old and can no longer serve the needs of the
community. A new hospital (build)_______________________________years ago.

13. Blue whales and other endangered species (save) ________________________
from extinction. Do you agree?

14. We can't wait any longer! Something (do) ______________________ immediately!

15. In my opinion, Ms. Hansen (elect)_______________________________ because she is
honest, knowledgeable, and competent.

☐ EXERCISE 13. Passive modals. (Chart 11-4)
Directions: Create dialogues that include one (or more) of the given verb phrases. Use
other passive modals if you can. Present your dialogues to the class.

1. should have been changed 6. may be required
2. must be submitted 7. must have been surprised
3. ought to have been told 8. had better be sent
4. could have been damaged 9. is/are supposed to be worn
5. will be announced 10. can't be estimated
EXERCISE 14. Using the passive. (Charts 11-1 → 11-4)

Directions: Use active or passive, in any appropriate tense, for the verbs in parentheses.

1. It's noon. The mail should be here soon. It (deliver, usually) ____________ sometime between noon and one o'clock.

2. Only five of us (work) ____________ in the laboratory yesterday when the explosion (occur) ____________. Luckily, no one (hurt) ____________.

3. I was supposed to take a test yesterday, but I (admit, not) ____________ to the testing room because the examination (begin, already) ____________.

4. Before she graduated last May, Susan (offer, already) ____________ a position with a law firm.

5. Right now a student trip to the planetarium (organize) ____________ by Mrs. Hunt. You can sign up for it at her office.

6. He is a man whose name will go down in history. He (forget, never) ____________

7. A: Yesterday (be) ____________ a terrible day.
   B: What (happen) ____________?
   A: First, I (flunk) ____________ a test, or at least I think I did. Then I (drop) ____________ my books while I (walk) ____________ across campus, and they (fall) ____________ into a mud puddle. And finally, my bicycle (steal) ____________
   B: You should have stayed in bed.

8. Yesterday we went to look at an apartment. I really liked it, but by the time we got there, it (rent, already) ____________.

9. During the family celebration, the little boy was crying because he (ignore) ____________ He needed some attention, too.

10. A: Where (buy, you) ____________ that beautiful necklace?
    B: I (buy, not) ____________ it. It (give) ____________ to me for my birthday. (you, like) ____________ it?
11. The sun is just one of billions of stars in the universe. As it travels through space, it (circle) ________________________ by many other celestial bodies. The nine known planets (hold) ____________________ in orbit by the sun’s gravitational field. The planets, in turn, (circle) ____________________ by their own satellites, or moons.

12. Early inhabitants of this region (worship*) ______________________ the sun and the moon. We know this from the jewelry, sculptures, and other artwork archaeologists have found.

13. Since the beginning of the modern industrial age, many of the natural habitats of plants and animals (destroy) ______________________ by industrial development and pollution.

14. The Olympic Games began more than 2,000 years ago in Olympia, a small town in Greece. At that time, only Greek men (allow) ______________________ to compete. People of other nationalities (invite, not) ______________________ to participate, and women (forbid) ______________________ to set foot in the area where the games (hold) ____________________

15. Ever since it (build) ______________________ three centuries ago, the Taj Mahal in Agra, India, (describe, often) ______________________ as the most beautiful building in the world. It (design) ______________________ by a Turkish architect, and it (take) ______________________ 20,000 workers 20 years to complete it.

16. The photography competition that is taking place at the art museum today (judge) ______________________ by three well-known photographers. I’ve entered three of my pictures and have my fingers crossed. The results (announce) ______________ ______________________ later this afternoon.

*Spelling note: worshiped or worshipped = American English
worshipped = British English
EXERCISE 15. Activity: the passive. (Charts 11-1 -> 11-4)

Directions: Write a fill-in-the-blanks grammar exercise of 10 (or more) items on active vs. passive verb forms. Choose from the given subjects and verbs. Give your exercise to a classmate to complete.

Example: (name of a person) offer

Possible item: When Sally (offer) a job at Microsoft last week, she happily (accept) it.

1. (name of language) speak
2. (name of a person) speak
3. (kind of game) play
4. my friends and I play
5. earthquake occur
6. news report
7. food serve
8. dark cloud appear
9. jeans wear
10. students wear
11. bill pay
12. I pay
13. (name of a thing) invent
14. (name of a place I thing) discover
15. (kind of car) manufacture
16. computer cost
17. newspaper sell
18. I eat
19. (name of a person) respect
20. friend agree
21. bride kiss
22. I influence
23. movie show
24. rice cook
25. rule obey
26. damage cause
27. automobile accident happen

EXERCISE 16. Using the passive. (Charts 11-1 -> 11-4)

Directions: Change the verbs to the passive as appropriate. Discuss why you decide that certain verbs should be in the passive but others should remain active.

(1) Paper is a common material. People use it everywhere in the world. Throughout history, people have made it from various plants, such as rice and papyrus, but today wood is the chief source of paper. In the past, people made paper by hand, but now machines do most of the work.* Today people make paper from wood pulp by using either a mechanical or a chemical process.

(2) In the mechanical process, someone grinds the wood into small chips. During the grinding, someone sprays it with water to keep it from burning from the friction of the grinder. Then someone soaks the chips in water.

(3) In the chemical process, first someone washes the wood, and then someone cuts it into small pieces in a chipping machine. Then someone cooks the chips in certain chemicals. After someone cooks the wood, someone washes it to get rid of the chemicals.

*Whether or not to use the passive in the second half of this sentence is a stylistic choice. Either the active or the passive can appropriately be used. Some writers might prefer the passive so that both halves of the sentence are parallel in structure.
4 The next steps in making paper are the same for both the mechanical and the chemical processes. Someone drains the pulp to form a thick mass, bleaches it with chlorine, and then thoroughly washes it again. Next someone puts the pulp through a large machine that squeezes the water out and forms the pulp into long sheets. After the pulp sheets go through a drier and a press, someone winds them onto rolls. These rolls of paper are then ready for use.

5 The next time you use paper, you should think about its origin and how people make it. And you should ask yourself this question: What would the world be like without paper? If you can imagine how different today's world would be without paper, you will immediately understand how essential paper has been in the development of civilization.

Exercise 17. Writing: the passive. (Charts 11-1 → 11-4)

Directions: In writing, describe how something is made. Choose one of the following:

1. Use a reference book such as an encyclopedia to find out how something is made, and then summarize this information. It’s not necessary to go into technical details. Read about the process and then describe it in your own words. Possible subjects: a candle, a pencil, glass, steel, silk thread, bronze, leather, etc.

2. Write about something you know how to make. Possible subjects: a kite, a ceramic pot, a bookcase, a sweater, a bead necklace, a special kind of food, etc.

11-5 STATIVE PASSIVE

| (a)  | The door is old. |
| (b)  | The door is green. |
| (c)  | The door is locked. |
| (d)  | I locked the door five minutes ago. |
| (e)  | The door was locked by me five minutes ago. |
| (f)  | Now the door is locked. |
| (g)  | Ann broke the window yesterday. |
| (h)  | The window was broken by Ann. |
| (i)  | Now the window is broken. |
| (j)  | I am interested in Chinese art. |
| (k)  | He is satisfied with his job. |
| (l)  | Ann is married to Alex. |

In (a) and (b): old and green are adjectives. They describe the door. In (c): locked is a past participle. It is used as an adjective. It describes the door.

When the passive form is used to describe an existing situation or state, as in (c), (f), and (i), it is called the “stative passive.” In the stative passive:

- no action is taking place; the action happened earlier.
- there is no by-phrase.
- the past participle functions as an adjective.

Prepositions other than by can follow stative passive verbs. (See Chart 11-6, p. 228.)

(m) I don't know where I am. I am lost.
(n) I can't find my purse. It is gone.
(o) I am finished with my work.
(P) I am done with my work.

(m) through (p) are examples of idiomatic usage of the passive form in common, everyday English. These sentences have no equivalent active sentences.
EXERCISE 18. Stative passive. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Supply the stative passive of the given verbs. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT or the SIMPLE PAST.

1. Sarah is wearing a blouse. It (make) **is made** of cotton.
2. The door to this room (shut) ________.
3. The lights in this room (turn) ________ on.
4. This room (crowd, not) ________.
5. Jim is sitting quietly. His elbows (bend) ________, and his hands (fold) ________ in front of him.
6. We can leave now because class (finish) ________.
7. It is hot in this room because the window (close) ________.
8. Yesterday it was hot in this room because the window (close) ________.
9. We can’t go any farther. The car (stick) ________ in the mud.
10. We couldn’t go any farther. The car (stick) ________ in the mud.
11. My room is very neat right now. The bed (make) ________, the floor (sweep) ________, and the dishes (wash) ________.
12. We are ready to sit down and eat dinner. The table (set) ________, the meat and rice (do) ________, and the candles (light) ________.
13. Where’s my wallet? It (go) ________! Did you take it?
15. Don’t look in the hall closet. Your birthday present (hide) ________ there.

EXERCISE 19. Stative passive. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of the words in the list.

| bear (born)* | exhaust | plug in |
| block       | go      | qualify |
| confuse     | insure  | schedule |
| crowd       | locate  | spoil   |
| divorce     | √lose   | stick   |
| do          | marry   | turnoff |


*In the passive, **born** is used as the past participle of **bear** to express "given birth to."
2. Let's find another restaurant. This one ______ too __________. We would have to wait at least an hour for a table.

3. The meeting _________________ for tomorrow at nine.

4. That's hard work! I _________________. I need to rest for a while.

5. You told me one thing, and John told me another. I don't know what to think. I _________________.

6. I can't open the window. It _________________.

7. Louise is probably sleeping. The lights in her room _________________.

8. Mrs. Wentworth's jewelry _________________ for $50,000.

9. Carolyn and Joe were married to each other for five years, but now they_______________.

10. I thought I had left my book on this desk, but it isn't here. It _________________. I wonder where it is.

11. I'm sorry. You __________ not ________________ for the job. We need someone with a degree in electrical engineering.

12. I love my wife. I ________________ to a wonderful woman.

13. We can't eat this fruit. It _________________ We'll have to throw it out.

14. We'd better call a plumber. The water won't go down the drain. The drain _________________.


16. A: How old is Jack?
   B: He ________________ in 1980.

17. A: The TV set doesn't work.
   B: Are you sure? __________ it _________________?

18. A: Is dinner ready?
   B: Not yet. The potatoes __________ not _________________. They need another ten minutes.
Many stative passive verbs are followed by prepositions other than *by.*

**COMMON STATIVE PASSIVE VERBS + PREPOSITIONS**

- be accustomed to
- be acquainted with
- be addicted to
- be annoyed with, by
- be associated with
- be bored with, by
- be cluttered with
- be composed of
- be concerned about
- be connected to
- be coordinated with
- be covered with
- be crowded with
- be dedicated to
- be devoted to
- be disappointed in, with
- be discriminated against
- be divorced from
- be done with
- be dressed in

- be engaged to
- be equipped with
- be excited about
- be exhausted from
- be exposed to
- be filled with
- be finished with
- be frightened of, by
- be gone from
- be interested in
- be involved in
- be known for
- be limited to
- be located in
- be made of
- be married to

- be opposed to
- be pleased with
- be prepared for
- be provided with
- be qualified for
- be related to
- be remembered for
- be satisfied with
- be scared of, by
- be terrified of, by
- be tired of, from
- be worried about

**EXERCISE 20. Stative passive + prepositions. (Chart 11-6)**

**Directions:** Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions.

1. Our high school soccer team was very excited about going to the national finals.
2. I'm not acquainted with that man. Do you know him?
3. Mark Twain is known for his stories about life on the Mississippi.
4. A person who is addicted to drugs needs professional medical help.
5. Jack is married to Joan.
6. Could I please have the dictionary when you are finished with it?
7. A: Aren't you ready yet? We have to be at the ferry dock at 7:45.
   B: I'll never make it. I'm still dressed in my pajamas.
8. My car is equipped with air conditioning and a sun roof.
9. The school children were exposed to the measles by a student who had them.
10. Gandhi was committed ________ nonviolence. He believed in it all of his life.
11. The large table was covered ________ every kind of food you could imagine.
12. Barbara turned off the TV because she was tired ________ listening to the news.
13. The choices in that restaurant are limited ________ pizza and sandwiches.
14. A: Are you in favor of a worldwide ban on nuclear weapons, or are you opposed ________ it?
    B: I'm in favor of it. I'm terrified ________ the possibility of a nuclear war starting by accident. However, my wife is against disarmament.
15. The department store was filled ________ toys for the holiday sale.
16. John's bald head is protected ________ the hot sun when he's wearing his hat.

17. The store was crowded ________ last-minute shoppers on the eve of the holiday.
18. I think you're involved ________ too many activities. You don't have enough time to spend with your family.
19. Your leg bone is connected ________ your hip bone.
20. Their apartment is always messy. It's cluttered ________ newspapers, books, clothes, and dirty dishes.
21. Don't leave those seedlings outside tonight. If they're exposed ________ temperatures below freezing, they will die.
22. An interior decorator makes certain that the color of the walls is coordinated with the color of the carpets and window coverings.

23. We finished packing our sleeping bags, tent, first-aid kit, food, and warm clothes. We are finally prepared for our camping trip.

24. I was very disappointed by that movie. The whole first hour was devoted to historical background, with a cast of thousands fighting endless battles. I was bored before the plot took shape.

25. A: Are you still associated with the International Red Cross and Red Crescent?
   B: I was, until this year. Are you interested in working with them?
   A: I think I'd like to. They are dedicated to helping people in time of crisis, and I admire the work they have done. Can you get me some information?

□ EXERCISE 21. Stative passive + prepositions. (Chart 11-6)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Supply the correct preposition and finish the sentence with your own words.

Example: I'm interested in architecture.

Speaker A (book open): I'm interested . . .
Speaker B (book closed): I'm interested in the history of architecture.

Switch roles.

1. Are you related to . . .
2. ( . . . ) is worried about . . .
3. I'm not accustomed to . . .
4. ( . . . ) is dressed for . . .
5. My foot is connected to . . .
6. The walls of this room are covered with . . .
7. This class is composed of . . .
8. ( . . . ) is married to . . .
9. I'm opposed to . . .
10. Are you acquainted with . . .

□ EXERCISE 22. Stative passive + prepositions. (Chart 11-6)

Directions: Supply the correct form of the verb in parentheses and an appropriate preposition. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT.

1. (interest) Carol is interested in ancient history.
2. (compose) Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen.
3. (accustom) I am accustomed to living here.
4. (terrify) Our son is terrified of dogs.
5. (finish) Pat is finishing her composition.
6. (addict) Ann laughingly calls herself a "chocoholic." She says she
_________ ____________ chocolate.

7. (cover) It's winter, and the ground ____________________ snow.

8. (satisfy) I ________________________ the progress I have made.


10. (divorce) Elaine ______________________ Ed.

11. (acquaint) I ______ not ______________________ that author's work.

12. (tire) I ______________________ sitting here.

13. (relate) Your name is Mary Smith. ______ you ____________________
John Smith?

14. (dedicate) Mrs. Robinson works in an orphanage. She ____________
________ her work.

15. (disappoint) Jim got a bad grade because he didn't study. He ____________
________ himself.

16. (scare) Bobby is not very brave. He ____________ ________ his own shadow.

17. (commit) The administration ____________ improving the quality of education at our school.

18. (devote) Mr. and Mrs. Miller ____________ each other.

19. (dress) Walter ____________ his best suit for his wedding today.

20. (do) We ____________ this exercise.
11-7 THE PASSIVE WITH GET

GET + ADJECTIVE
(a) I'm getting hungry. Let's eat soon.
(b) You shouldn't eat so much. You'll get fat.
(c) I stopped working because I got sleepy.

GET may be followed by certain adjectives.* Get gives the idea of change — the idea of becoming, beginning to be, growing to be. In (a): I'm getting hungry = I wasn't hungry before, but now I'm beginning to be hungry.

GET + PAST PARTICIPLE
(d) I stopped working because I got tired.
(e) They are getting married next month.
(f) I got worried because he was two hours late.

*Some of the common adjectives that follow get are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angry</td>
<td>chilly</td>
<td>fat</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anxious</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>full</td>
<td>late</td>
<td>rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bald</td>
<td>dark</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>light</td>
<td>sick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>better</td>
<td>dizzy</td>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>mad</td>
<td>sleepy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>nervous</td>
<td>tall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 23. The passive with GET. (Chart 11-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with any appropriate tense of get and an adjective from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>better</th>
<th>hot</th>
<th>nervous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>sleepy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dark</td>
<td>late</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full</td>
<td>light</td>
<td>wet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. What time are we going to eat? I _____ am getting hungry _____.

2. A: T _______________________.
   B: Why don't you take a nap? A couple of hours of sleep will do you good.

3. A: What time is it?
   B: Almost ten.
   A: I'd better leave soon. It ______________________. I have to be at the airport by eleven.

4. I didn't have an umbrella, so I ___________________ while I was waiting for the bus yesterday.

5. Let's turn on the air conditioner. It ___________________ in here.

6. Every time I have to give a speech, I ___________________.

8. A: It's a long drive from Denver to here. I'm glad you finally arrived. What time did you leave this morning?
B: At sunrise. We left as soon as it__________________________ outside.

9. A: Won't you have another helping?
B: This dinner is delicious, but I really can't eat any more. I__________________________.

10. Maria's English is improving. It _____________________.

11. Shake a leg! We don't have all day to finish this work! Get moving! Let's step on it!__________________________ and finish your work. There's no time to waste.

12. My friend was sick, so I sent him a card. It said, “________________________ soon.”

Exercise 24. The passive with GET. (Chart 11-7)
Directions: Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of get and the given verbs.

1. (tire) I think I'll stop working. I _____________________.
2. (hurt) There was an accident, but nobody _____________________.
3. (lose) We didn't have a map, so we__________________________.
4. (dress) We can leave as soon as you__________________________.
5. (marry) When__________________________ you__________________________?
6. (accustom) How long did it take you to ____________________ to living here?
7. (worry) Sam was supposed to be home an hour ago, but he still isn't here. I _____________________.
8. (upset) Just try to take it easy. Don't _____________________.
9. (confuse) I ____________________ because everybody gave me different advice.
10. (do) We can leave as soon as I ____________________ with this work.
11. (depress) Chris ____________________ when she lost her job, so I tried to cheer her up.
12. (invite) ____________________ you ____________________ to the party?
13. (bore) I ____________________, so I didn't stay for the end of the movie.

The Passive 233
14. (pack) I'll be ready to leave as soon as I ____________________.

15. (pay) I__________________ on Fridays. I'll give you the money I owe you next Friday. Okay?

16. (hire) After Ed graduated, he__________________ by an engineering firm.

17. (fire) But later he__________________ because he didn't do his work.

18. (finish, not) Last night I__________________ with my homework until after midnight.

19. (disgust) I__________________ and left because the things they were saying at the meeting were ridiculous.

20. (engage) First, they__________________.

(marry) Then, they__________________.

(divorce) Later, they__________________.

(remarry) Finally, they__________________.

Today they are very happy.

EXERCISE 25. The passive with GET. (Chart 11-7)

Directions: Create sentences with get and the given words.

Example: dizzy

Possible response: I went on a really great ride at the carnival last summer. It was a lot of fun even though I got dizzy.

1. sleepy
2. confused
3. married
4. wet
5. done
6. full
7. mad
8. nervous
9. excited
10. scared
11. dressed
12. rich
13. finished
14. lost
15. hurt
16. cheated
17. bored
18. elected
19. older
20. worried
21. worse
22. prepared
23. wrinkled
24. better and better
11-8 PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVES

—The problem confuses the students.
(a) It is a confusing problem.
—The students are confused by the problem.
(b) They are confused students.

The present participle serves as an adjective with an active meaning. The noun it modifies performs an action. In (a): The noun problem does something; it confuses. Thus, it is described as a "confusing problem."
The past participle serves as an adjective with a passive meaning. In (b): The students are confused by something. Thus, they are described as "confused students."

—The story amuses the children.
(c) It is an amusing story.
—The children are amused by the story.
(d) They are amused children.

In (c): The noun story performs the action.
In (d): The noun children receives the action.

□ EXERCISE 26. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the present or past participle of the verbs in italics.
1. The class bores the students. It is a _____boring_____ class.
2. The students are bored by the class. They are _____bored_____ students.
3. The game excites the people. It is an_______game.
4. The people are excited by the game. They are ________people.
5. The news surprised the man. It was________news.
6. The man was surprised by the news. He was a ________man.
7. The child was frightened by the strange noise. The________child sought comfort from her father.
8. The strange noise frightened the child. It was a_______sound.
9. The work exhausted the men. It was________work.
10. The men were exhausted. The ________men sat down to rest under the shade of a tree.

□ EXERCISE 27. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8)
Directions: Respond with a present or a past participle. Switch roles halfway through if you work in pairs.
Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): If a book confuses you, how would you describe the book?
SPEAKER B (book closed): confusing
SPEAKER A (book open): How would you describe yourself?
SPEAKER B (book closed): confused

1. If a story amazes you, how would you describe the story?
   How would you describe yourself?
2. If a story depresses you, how would you describe the story?
   How would you describe yourself?
3. If some work tires you, how would you describe yourself?
   How would you describe the work?
4. If a movie bores you, how would you describe the movie?
   How would you describe yourself?
5. If a painting interests you, how would you describe yourself?
   How would you describe the painting?
6. If a situation embarrasses you . . .
7. If a book disappoints you . . .
8. If a person fascinates you . . .
9. If a situation frustrates you . . .
10. If a noise annoys you . . .
11. If an event shocks you . . .
12. If an experience thrills you . . .

EXERCISE 28. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the present or past participle of the verbs in parentheses.

1. The (steal)__________stolen_________jewelry was recovered.
2. Success in one's work is a (satisfy)________________________experience.
3. The dragon was a (terrify)________________________sight for the villagers.
4. The (terrify)________________________villagers ran for their lives.
5. I found myself in an (embarrass)________________________situation last night.
6. A kid accidentally threw a ball at one of the school windows. Someone needs to repair the (break)________________________window.
7. I elbowed my way through the (crowd)________________________room.
8. The thief tried to pry open the (lock)________________________cabinet.
9. The (injure)________________________woman was put into an ambulance.
10. That (annoy)________________________buzz is coming from the fluorescent light.
11. The teacher gave us a (challenge)________________________assignment, but we all enjoyed doing it.
12. The (expect)________________________event did not occur.
13. A (grow)________________________child needs a (balance)________________________diet.
14. No one appreciates a (spoil)________________________child.
15. There is an old saying: Let (sleep) _______________ dogs lie.

16. We had a (thrill) _______________ but hair-raising experience on our backpacking trip into the wilderness.

17. The (abandon) '_______________ car was towed away by a tow truck.

18. I still have five more (require)__________________ courses to take.

19. (Pollute)__________________ water is not safe for drinking.

20. I don’t have any furniture of my own. Do you know where I can rent a (furnish) __________________ apartment?

21. The equator is the (divide)____________________ line between the Northern and Southern hemispheres.

22. We all expect our (elect)_______________ officials to be honest.

23. The invention of the (print)__________________ press was one of the most important events in the history of the world.

24. (Experience)______________________ travelers pack lightly. They carry little more than necessities.

25. The psychologist spoke to us about some of the (amaze) ________________ coincidences in the lives of twins living apart from each other from birth.

☐ EXERCISE 29. Error analysis: the passive. (Chapter 11)

Directions: Correct the errors in these sentences.

1. I am interesting in his ideas.

2. Two people got hurted in the accident and were took to the hospital by an ambulance.

3. The movie was so bored that we fell asleep after an hour.

4. The students helped by the clear explanation that the teacher gave.

5. That alloy is composing by iron and tin.
6. The winner of the race hasn't been announcing yet.

7. If you are interesting in modern art, you should see the new exhibit at the museum. It is fascinated.

8. Progress is been made every day.

9. When and where has the automobile invented?

10. My brother and I have always been interesting in learning more about our family tree.

11. I am not agree with you, and I don't think you'll ever to convince me.

12. Each assembly kit is accompany by detailed instructions.

13. Arthur was giving an award by the city for all of his efforts in crime prevention.

14. It was late, and I was getting very worry about my mother.

15. The problem was very puzzled. I couldn’t figure it out.

16. Many strange things were happened last night.

17. How many peoples have you been invited to the party?

18. When I returned home, everything is quite. I walk to my room, get undress, and going to bed.

19. I didn't go to dinner with them because I had already been eaten.

20. In class yesterday, I was confusing. I didn't understand the lesson.

21. I couldn't move. I was very frighten.

22. When we were children, we are very afraid of caterpillars. Whenever we saw one of these monsters, we run to our house before the caterpillars could attack us. I am still scare when I saw a caterpillar close to me.

23. One day, while the old man was cutting down a big tree near the stream, his axe was fallen into the river. He sat down and begin to cry because he does not have enough money to buy another axe.
## 12-1 INTRODUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>independent clause</th>
<th>dependent clause</th>
<th>noun phrase</th>
<th>noun clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Sue lives in Tokyo.</td>
<td>(c) where Sue lives</td>
<td>(e) His story was interesting.</td>
<td>(g) I heard his story.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Where does Sue live?</td>
<td>(d) I know where Sue lives.</td>
<td>(f) What he said was interesting.</td>
<td>(h) I heard what he said.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A clause is a group of words containing a subject and a verb.*  
An independent clause (or main clause) is a complete sentence. It contains the main subject and verb of a sentence. Examples (a) and (b) are complete sentences. (a) is a statement, and (b) is a question.

Example (d) is a complete sentence. It has an independent clause with the main subject (I) and verb (know) of the sentence. Where Sue lives is a dependent clause connected to an independent clause. Where Sue lives is called a noun clause.

A noun phrase is used as a subject or an object.  
In (e): His story is a noun phrase. It is used as the subject of the sentence. In (f): What he said is a noun clause. It is used as the subject of the sentence. The noun clause has its own subject (he) and verb (said).

In (g): his story is a noun phrase. It is used as the object of the verb heard.

In (h): what he said is a noun clause. It is used as the object of the verb heard.

In (i): his story is a noun phrase. It is used as the object of the preposition to.

In (j): what he said is a noun clause. It is used as the object of the preposition to.

* A phrase is a group of words that does NOT contain a subject and a verb.

** See Appendix Unit B for more information about question words and question forms.
EXERCISE 1. Noun clauses. (Chart 12-1)

Directions: Add the necessary punctuation and capitalization to the following. Underline the noun clauses.

1. I couldn't hear the teacher what did she say
   → I couldn't hear the teacher. What did she say?

2. I couldn't hear what the teacher said.

3. Where did Tom go no one knows

4. No one knows where Tom went

5. Where Tom went is a secret

6. What does Anna want we need to know

7. We need to know what Anna wants

8. What does Alex need do you know

9. Do you know what Alex needs

10. What Alex needs is a new job

11. We talked about what Alex needs

12. What do you need did you talk to your parents about what you need

12-2 NOUN CLAUSES BEGINNING WITH A QUESTION WORD

| QUESTION | NOUN CLAUSE | In (a): where she lives is the object of the verb know. In a noun clause, the subject precedes the verb. Do not use question word order in a noun clause.
| --- | --- | Notice: does, did, and do are used in questions, but not in noun clauses. See Appendix Unit B for more information about question words and question forms.
| Where does she live? | (a) I don't know where she lives. | (b) I couldn't hear what he said.
| What did he say? | (c) Do you know when they arrive? | (d) I don't know who lives there.
| When do they arrive? | (e) Please tell me what happened. | (f) I wonder who is at the door.
| Who lives there? | (g) I don't know who she is. | In (d): The word order is the same in both the question and the noun clause because who is the subject in both.
| What happened? | (h) I don't know who those men are. | In (g): she is the subject of the question, so it is placed in front of the verb be in the noun clause.*
| Who is at the door? | (i) I wonder whose house that is. | In (j): What she said is the subject of the sentence. Notice in (k): A noun clause subject takes a singular verb (e.g., is).
| Who is she? | (j) What she said surprised me. |
| Who are those men? | (k) What they should do is obvious. | *COMPARE: Who is at the door? = who is the subject of the question.
| Whose house is that? | | Who are those men? = those men is the subject of the question, so be is plural.
EXERCISE 2. Noun clauses beginning with a question word. (Chart 12-2)

Directions: Change the question in parentheses to a noun clause.

1. (How old is he?) I don’t know how old he is.

2. (What was he talking about?) What he was talking about was interesting.

3. (Where do you live?) Please tell me where you live.

4. (What did she say?) She said something interesting.

5. (When are they coming?) Do you know when they are coming?

6. (How much does it cost?) I can’t remember how much it costs.

7. (Which one does he want?) Let’s ask him which one he wants.

8. (Who is coming to the party?) I don’t know who is coming to the party.

9. (Who are those people?) I don’t know who those people are.

10. (Whose pen is this?) Do you know whose pen this is?

11. (Why did they leave the country?) They left the country because they were political refugees.

12. (What are we doing in class?) What we are doing in class is easy.

13. (Where did she go?) She went to the library.

14. (How many letters are there in the English alphabet?) I don’t remember how many letters there are in the English alphabet.

15. (Who is the mayor of New York City?) I don’t know who the mayor of New York City is.

16. (How old does a person have to be to get a driver’s license?) I need to find out how old you have to be to get a driver’s license.

17. (What happened?) I don’t know what happened.

18. (Who opened the door?) I don’t know who opened the door.
EXERCISE 3. Noun clauses beginning with a question word. (Chart 12-2)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask the question.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Begin your response with "I don't know . . . ."

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): What time is it?
SPEAKER B (book closed): I don't know what time it is.

1. Where does (...) live?
2. What country is (...) from?
3. How long has (...) been living here?
4. What is ( . . . )'s telephone number?
5. Where is the post office?
6. How far is it to Kansas City?
7. Why is (...) absent?
8. Where is my book?
9. What is ( . . . )'s favorite color?
10. Why was (...) absent yesterday?
11. Where did (...) go yesterday?
12. What kind of government does (Italy) have?

13. What is ( . . . )'s favorite color?
14. How long has ( . . . ) been married?
15. Why are we doing this exercise?
16. Who turned off the lights?
17. Where is ( . . . ) going to eat lunch/dinner?
18. When does (the semester) end?
19. Where did ( . . . ) go after class yesterday?
20. Why is ( . . . ) smiling?
21. How often does ( . . . ) go to the library?
22. Whose book is that?
23. How much did that book cost?
24. Who took my book?

EXERCISE 4. Noun clauses beginning with a question word.
(Chart 12-2 and Appendix Unit B)

Directions: Make a question from the given sentence. The words in parentheses should be the answer to the question you make. Use a question word (who, what, how, etc.)* Then change the question to a noun clause.

1. Tom will be here (next week).
   QUESTION: When will Tom be here?
   NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me when Tom will be here.

2. He is coming (because he wants to visit his friends).
   QUESTION: 
   NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me 

3. He'll be on flight (645, not flight 742).
   QUESTION: 
   NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me 

*See Appendix Unit B for information about forming questions.
4. (Jim Hunter) is going to meet him at the airport.

**QUESTION:**

**NOUN CLAUSE:** Please tell me ____________________________

5. Jim Hunter is (his roommate).

**QUESTION:**

**NOUN CLAUSE:** Please tell me ____________________________

6. Tom's address is (4149 Riverside Road).

**QUESTION:**

**NOUN CLAUSE:** Please tell me ____________________________

7. He lives (on Riverside Road in Columbus, Ohio, USA).

**QUESTION:**

**NOUN CLAUSE:** Please tell me ____________________________

8. He was (in Chicago) last week.

**QUESTION:**

**NOUN CLAUSE:** Please tell me ____________________________

9. He has been working for IBM* (since 1998).

**QUESTION:**

**NOUN CLAUSE:** Do you know ____________________________

10. He has (an IBM) computer at home.

**QUESTION:**

**NOUN CLAUSE:** Do you know ____________________________

---

**EXERCISE 5. Noun clauses beginning with a question word.**

(Chart 12-2 and Appendix Unit B)

**Directions:** Use the words in parentheses to complete the sentences. Use any appropriate verb tense. Some of the completions contain noun clauses, and some contain questions.

1. A: Where (Ruth, go) _______? She's not in her room.

   B: I don't know. Ask her friend Tina. She might know where (Ruth, go) _______.

2. A: Oops! I made a mistake. Where (my eraser, be) _______? Didn't I lend it to you?

   B: I don't have it. Ask Sally where (it, be) _______. I think I saw her using it.

---

*IBM = the name of a corporation (International Business Machines)
3. A: The door isn't locked! Why (Fred, lock, not) ________________________ it before he left?*
B: Why ask me? How am I supposed to know why (he, lock, not) ______________
_________________________ it? Maybe he just forgot.

4. A: Mr. Lee is a recent immigrant, isn't he? How long (he, be) ______________ in this country?
B: I have no idea, but I'll be seeing Mr. Lee this afternoon. Would you like me to ask him how long (he, live) ________________________ here?

5. A: Are you a student here? I'm a student here, too. Tell me what classes (you, take)
__________________________ this term. Maybe we're in some of the same classes.
B: Math 4, English 2, History 6, and Chemistry 101. What classes (you, take)
__________________________?

6. A: Help! Quick! Look at that road sign! Which road (we, be supposed) __________ to take?
B: You're the driver! Don't look at me! I don't know which road (we, be supposed)
__________________________ to take. I've never been here before in my entire life.

*Word order in negative questions:
Usual: Why didn't you call me? (with did + not contracted)
Very formal: Why did you not call me?
EXERCISE 6. Information questions and noun clauses.
(Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Unit B)

Directions: Work in pairs. Switch roles after every group of five items.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask any question using the given words.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. To make sure you understood Speaker A correctly, repeat
what s/he said, using a noun clause. Begin by saying “You want to know . . . .”
Listen to each other’s grammar carefully, especially word order.

Example: who \ roommate
SPEAKER A (book open): Who is your roommate?
SPEAKER B (book closed): You want to know who my roommate is.

Example: where \ go
SPEAKER A (book open): Where did you go after class yesterday?
SPEAKER B (book closed): You want to know where I went after class yesterday.

Example: how far \ it
SPEAKER A (book open): How far is it from Bangkok to Rangoon?
SPEAKER B (book closed): You want to know how far it is from Bangkok to Rangoon.

1. whose \ that       11. who \ prime minister
2. how much \ cost    12. which \ want
3. what time \ get     13. why \ blue
4. how long \ you      14. what \ after
5. what kind \ have    15. from whom \ borrow
6. when \ you         16. where \ born
7. where \ last night  17. what color \ eyes
8. why \ didn’t       18. whose \ is
9. what \ like         19. which \ you
10. where \ the teacher 20. why \ ask
21. when \ get
22. where \ located
23. who \ is
24. who \ talk
25. how many \ go
26. what \ tomorrow
27. how far \ it
28. what kind \ buy
29. how often \ you
30. to whom \ give

12-3 NOUN CLAUSES BEGINNING WITH WHETHER OR IF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YES/NO QUESTION</th>
<th>NOUN CLAUSE</th>
<th>NOUN CLAUSE</th>
<th>WHEN A YES/NO QUESTION IS CHANGED TO A NOUN CLAUSE, WHETHER OR IF IS USED TO INTRODUCE THE CLAUSE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Will she come?</td>
<td>(a) I don’t know <strong>whether she will come</strong>. I don’t know <strong>if she will come</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td>When a yes/no question is changed to a noun clause, <em>whether</em> or <em>if</em> is used to introduce the clause.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) I wonder <strong>whether he needs help</strong>. I wonder <strong>if he needs help</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Note: <em>Whether</em> is more acceptable in formal English, but <em>if</em> is quite commonly used, especially in speaking.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does he need help?</td>
<td>(c) I wonder <strong>whether or not</strong> she will come.</td>
<td></td>
<td>In (c), (d), and (e): Notice the patterns when <strong>or not</strong> is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) I wonder <strong>whether</strong> she will come <strong>or not</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td>In (f): Notice that the noun clause is in the subject position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(e) I wonder <strong>if she will come or not</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td>In (f): Notice that the noun clause is in the subject position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(f) <strong>Whether she comes or not</strong> is unimportant to me.</td>
<td></td>
<td>In (f): Notice that the noun clause is in the subject position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 7. Noun clauses beginning with WHETHER or IF. (Chart 12-3)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class. Begin all responses with "I wonder . . . . ."

Examples:
SPEAKER A (book open): Does ( . . . ) need any help?
SPEAKER A (book open): Where is ( . . . ) ?
SPEAKER B (book closed): I wonder where ( . . . ) is.

1. Where is your friend?
2. Should we wait for him?
3. Should you call him?
4. Where is your dictionary?
5. Who took your dictionary?
6. Did ( . . . ) borrow your dictionary?
7. Who is that woman?
8. Does she need any help?
9. Why is the sky blue?
10. How long does a butterfly live?
11. What causes earthquakes?
12. When was the first book written?
13. Who is that man?
14. What is he doing?
15. Is he having trouble?
16. Should you offer to help him?
17. How far is it to (Florida)?
18. Do we have enough time to go to (Florida) over vacation?
19. Whose book is this?
20. Does it belong to ( . . . ) ?
21. Why did dinosaurs become extinct?
22. Is there life on other planets?
23. How did life begin?
24. Will people live on the moon someday?

EXERCISE 8. Noun clauses. (Charts 12-2 and 12-3)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class. Begin all responses with "Could you please tell me . . . . ."

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): What is this?
SPEAKER B (book closed): Could you please tell me what this is?

1. Does this bus go downtown?
2. How much does this book cost?
3. When is Flight 62 expected to arrive?
4. Where is the nearest phone?
5. Is this word spelled correctly?
6. What time is it?
7. Is this information correct?
8. How much does it cost to fly from (Chicago) to (New York)?
9. Where is the bus station?
10. Whose pen is this?
EXERCISE 9. Error analysis: noun clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-3)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Please tell me what is your name. → Please tell me what your name is.
2. No one seems to know when will Maria arrive.
3. I wonder why was Bob late for class.
4. I don't know what does that word mean.
5. I wonder does the teacher know the answer?
6. What should they do about the hole in their roof is their most pressing problem.
7. I'll ask her would she like some coffee or not.
8. Be sure to tell the doctor where does it hurt.
9. Why am I unhappy is something I can't explain.
10. I wonder does Tom know about the meeting or not.
11. I need to know who is your teacher.
12. I don't understand why is the car not running properly.
13. My young son wants to know where do the stars go in the daytime?

12-4 QUESTION WORDS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES

| (a) | I don't know what I should do.       |
| (b) | I don't know what to do.             |
| (c) | Pam can't decide whether she should go or stay home. |
| (d) | Pam can't decide whether to go or (to) stay home. |
| (e) | Please tell me how I can get to the bus station. |
| (f) | Please tell me how to get to the bus station. |
| (g) | Jim told us where we could find it.   |
| (h) | Jim told us where to find it.         |

Question words (when, where, how, who, whom, whose, what, which) and whether may be followed by an infinitive. Each pair of sentences in the examples has the same meaning. Notice that the meaning expressed by the infinitive is either should or can/could.

EXERCISE 10. Question words followed by infinitives. (Chart 12-4)

Directions: Create sentences with the same meaning by using infinitives.

1. He told me when I should come. → He told me when to come.
2. The plumber told me how I could fix the leak in the sink.
3. Please tell me where I should meet you.
4. Don had an elaborate excuse for being late for their date, but Sandy didn't know whether she should believe him or not.
5. Jim found two shirts he liked, but he had trouble deciding which one he should buy.
6. I've done everything I can think of to help Andy get his life straightened out. I don't know what else I can do.
Complete the following; use infinitives in your completions.

7. I was tongue-tied. I didn't know what________________________.

8. A: I can't decide________________________ to the reception.
   B: How about your green suit?

9. A: Where are you going to live when you go to the university?
   B: I'm not sure. I can't decide whether________________________.

10. A: Do you know how________________________?
    B: No, but I'd like to learn.

11. A: I don't know what________________________ for her birthday. Got any suggestions?
    B: How about a book?

12. My cousin has a dilemma. He can't decide whether________________________ or________________________. What do you think he should do?

13. Before you leave on your trip, read this tour book. It tells you where________________________ and how________________________.

12-5 NOUN CLAUSES BEGINNING WITH THAT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STATEMENT</th>
<th>NOUN CLAUSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He is a good actor.</td>
<td>(a) I think that he is a good actor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) I think he is a good actor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The world is round.</td>
<td>(c) We know (that) the world is round.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She doesn't understand spoken</td>
<td>(d) That she doesn't understand spoken English is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English.</td>
<td>obvious.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The world is round.</td>
<td>(e) It is obvious (that) she doesn't understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>spoken English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(f) That the world is round is a fact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(g) It is a fact that the world is round.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In (a): that he is a good actor is a noun clause. It is used as the object of the verb think.

The word that, when it introduces a noun clause, has no meaning in itself. It simply marks the beginning of the clause.

Frequently it is omitted, as in (b), especially in speaking. (If used in speaking, it is unstressed.)

In (d): The noun clause (That she doesn't understand spoken English) is the subject of the sentence. The word that is not omitted when it introduces a noun clause used as the subject of a sentence, as in (d) and (f).

More commonly, the word it functions as the subject and the noun clause is placed at the end of the sentence, as in (e) and (g).
EXERCISE 11. Noun clauses beginning with THAT. (Chart 12-5)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.
Speaker A: Change the given sentence into a noun clause. Use it + any appropriate expression from the list.
Speaker B: Give the equivalent sentence by using a that-clause as the subject.

Example: The world is round.

SPEAKER A (book open): It is a fact that the world is round.
SPEAKER B (book closed): That the world is round is a fact.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a fact</th>
<th>obvious</th>
<th>surprising</th>
<th>unfair</th>
<th>a shame</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a well-known fact</td>
<td>apparent</td>
<td>strange</td>
<td>wo bad</td>
<td>a pity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>clear</td>
<td></td>
<td>unfortunate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Tim hasn't been able to make any friends.
2. Drug abuse can ruin one's health.
3. Some women do not earn equal pay for equal work.
4. The earth revolves around the sun.
5. Irene, who is an excellent student, failed her entrance examination.
6. Smoking can cause cancer.
7. English is the principal language of the business community throughout much of the world.

EXERCISE 12. Noun clauses beginning with THAT. (Chart 12-5)

Directions: Work in pairs or as a class.
Speaker A: Make an original sentence by using it and the given expression.
Speaker B: Give the equivalent sentence by using a that-clause as the subject.

Example: true

SPEAKER A: It is true that plants need water in order to grow.
SPEAKER B: That plants need water in order to grow is true.

(Switch roles if working in pairs)

1. a fact
2. surprising
3. obvious
4. too bad
5. a well-known fact
6. unfortunate
7. true
8. strange
9. unlikely
10. undeniable

EXERCISE 13. Noun clauses beginning with THAT. (Chart 12-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences.

1. It is my belief that . . . the war between those two countries will end soon.
2. It seems to me that . . .
3. It is my impression that . . .
4. It is my theory that . . .
5. It is widely believed that . . .
6. It is thought that . . .
7. It has been said that . . .
8. It is a miracle that . . .
EXERCISE 14. Noun clauses beginning with THAT. (Chart 12-5)
Directions: That-clauses may follow be + certain adjectives that express feelings or attitudes. Complete the following with your own words.

1. I'm sorry (that) . . . I was late for class.
2. I'm glad (that)
3. I'm disappointed (that)
4. I'm pleased (that)
5. I'm surprised (that)
6. I'm sure (that)
7. I'm amazed (that)
8. I'm happy (that)
9. Yesterday I was annoyed (that)
10. I'm afraid (that)*

EXERCISE 15. Noun clauses beginning with THAT. (Chart 12-5)
Directions: A that-clause may follow be directly. Complete the sentences with your own ideas by using that-clauses.

1. He says he is twenty-one, but the truth is . . . that he is only eighteen.
2. There are two reasons why I do not want to go out tonight.
   The first reason is . . . that I have to study.
   The second reason is . . . that I do not have enough money.**
3. There are several reasons why I am studying English.
   One reason is . . .
   Another reason is . . .
   A third reason is . . .
4. I have had three problems since I came here.
   One problem is . . .
   Another problem is . . .
   The third problem I have had is that . . .
5. One advantage of owning your own car is . . .
   Another advantage is . . .
   One disadvantage, however, of owning your own car is . . .

EXERCISE 16. Noun clauses beginning with THAT. (Chart 12-5)
Directions: A that-clause is frequently used with the fact. Combine the sentences using "the fact that" to introduce a noun clause.

1. Ann was late. That didn't surprise me.
   → The fact that Ann was late didn't surprise me.
2. Rosa didn't come. That made me angry.
3. I'm a little tired. I feel fine except for that.
4. Natasha didn't pass the entrance examination. She was not admitted to the university due to that.
5. Many people in the world live in intolerable poverty. That must concern all of us.

*To be afraid has two possible meanings:
(1) It can express fear: I'm afraid of dogs. I'm afraid that his dog will bite me.
(2) In informal English, it often expresses a meaning similar to "to be sorry":
   I'm afraid that I can't accept your invitation.
   I'm afraid you have the wrong number.

**NOTE: That is used, not because, to introduce the clause. (Because might occur only in very informal spoken English: The first reason is because I have to study.)
6. **Surasuk** is frequently absent from class. *That* indicates his lack of interest in school.

7. I was supposed to bring my passport to the examination for identification. I was not aware of *that*.

8. The people of the town were given no warning of the approaching tornado. Due to *that*, there were many casualties.

---

**12-6 QUOTED SPEECH**

*Quoted speech* refers to reproducing words exactly as they were originally spoken.*

Quotation marks ("...") are used.**

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUOTING ONE SENTENCE</th>
<th>QUOTING MORE THAN ONE SENTENCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) She said, <em>&quot;My brother is a student.&quot;</em></td>
<td>In (d): Quotation marks are placed at the beginning and end of the complete quote. Notice: There are no quotation marks after <em>student.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) &quot;My brother is a student,&quot; she said.</td>
<td>In (e): If <em>she said</em> comes between two quoted sentences, the second sentence begins with quotation marks and a capital letter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) &quot;My brother,&quot; she said, &quot;is a student.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUOTING A QUESTION OR AN EXCLAMATION</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(f) She asked, &quot;When will you be here?&quot;</td>
<td>In (f): The question mark is inside the quotation marks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) &quot;When will you be here?&quot; she asked.</td>
<td>In (g): If a question mark is used, no comma is used before <em>she asked.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) She said, &quot;Watch out!&quot;</td>
<td>In (h): The exclamation point is inside the quotation marks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| (i) "My brother is a student," said Anna. |
| "My brother," said Anna, "is a student." |

| (j) "Let's leave," whispered Dave. |
| (k) "Please help me," begged the unfortunate man. |
| (l) "Well," Jack began, "it's a long story." |

---

*Quoted speech* is also called "direct speech." *Reported speech* (discussed in Chart 12-7, p. 254) is also called "indirect speech."

**In British English, quotation marks are called "inverted commas" and can consist of either double marks (") or a single mark ('). She said, "My brother is a student."
EXERCISE 17. Quoted speech. (Chart 12-6)

Directions: Add the necessary punctuation and capitalization.

1. Henry said there is a phone call for you
2. There is a phone call for you he said
3. There is said Henry a phone call for you
4. There is a phone call for you it's your sister said Henry
5. There is a phone call for you he said it's your sister
6. I asked him where is the phone
7. Where is the phone she asked
8. Stop the clock shouted the referee we have an injured player
9. Who won the game asked the spectator
10. I'm going to rest for the next three hours she said I don't want to be disturbed
   That's fine I replied you get some rest I'll make sure no one disturbs you

EXERCISE 18. Quoted speech. (Chart 12-6)

Directions: Add the necessary punctuation and capitalization. Notice that a new paragraph begins each time the speaker changes.

When the police officer came over to my car, he said let me see your driver's license, please

What's wrong, Officer I asked was I speeding

No, you weren't speeding he replied you went through a red light at the corner of Fifth Avenue and Main Street you almost caused an accident

Did I really do that I said I didn't see a red light
EXERCISE 19. Activity: quoted speech. (Chart 12-6)
Directions: Choose two of your classmates to have a brief conversation in front of the class, and decide upon a topic for them (what they did last night, what they are doing right now, sports, music, books, etc.). Give them a few minutes to practice their conversation. Then, while they are speaking, take notes so that you can write their exact conversation. Use quoted speech in your written report. Be sure to start a new paragraph each time the speaker changes.

EXERCISE 20. Activity: quoted speech. (Chart 12-6)
Directions: Write fables using quoted speech.

1. In fables, animals have the power of speech. Discuss what is happening in the illustrations of the grasshopper and the ants. Then write a fable based on the illustrations. Use quoted speech in your fable.

2. Write a fable that is well known in your country. Use quoted speech.


12-7 REPORTED SPEECH: VERB FORMS IN NOUN CLAUSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUOTED SPEECH</th>
<th>REPORTED SPEECH</th>
<th>Reported speech refers to using a noun clause to report what someone has said. No quotation marks are used.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) &quot;I watch TV every day.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she watched TV every day.</td>
<td>If the reporting verb (the main verb of the sentence, e.g., said) is simple past, the verb in the noun clause will usually also be in a past form, as in the examples.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) &quot;I am watching TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she was watching TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) &quot;I have watched TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she had watched TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) &quot;I watched TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she would watch TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) &quot;I had watched TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she had watched TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) &quot;I will watch TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she might watch TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) &quot;I am going to watch TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she was going to watch TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) &quot;I can watch TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she could watch TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) &quot;I may watch TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she might watch TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j) &quot;I must watch TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she had to watch TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) &quot;I have to watch TV.&quot;</td>
<td>→ She said she had to watch TV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| (l) "I should watch TV." | → She said she should watch TV. | In (l): should, ought to, and might do not change to a past form. |
| "I ought to watch TV." | → She said she ought to watch TV. | |
| "I might watch TV." | → She said she might watch TV. | |

| (m) Immediate reporting: | | Changing verbs to past forms in reported speech is common in both speaking and writing. However, sometimes in spoken English, no change is made in the noun clause verb, especially if the speaker is reporting something immediately or soon after it was said. |
| —What did the teacher just say? I didn’t hear him. | —He said he wants us to read Chapter Six. | |
| —He said he wants us to read Chapter Six. | —He said he wants us to read Chapter Six. | |

| (n) Later reporting: | | Also, sometimes the present tense is retained even in formal English when the reported sentence deals with a general truth, as in (o). |
| —I didn’t go to class yesterday. Did Mr. Jones make any assignments? | —Yes. He said he wanted us to read Chapter Six. | |
| —Yes. He said he wanted us to read Chapter Six. | —Yes. He said he wanted us to read Chapter Six. | |

| (o) "The world is round." | → She said the world is round. | When the reporting verb is simple present, present perfect, or future, the noun clause verb is not changed. |

| (p) "I watch TV every day." | → She says she watches TV every day. | In reported speech, an imperative sentence is changed to an infinitive. Tell is used instead of say as the reporting verb. See Chart 14-7, p. 307, for other verbs followed by an infinitive that are used to report speech. |
| (q) "I watch TV every day." | → She has said that she watches TV every day. | |
| (r) "I watch TV every day." | → She will say that she watches TV every day. | |
| (s) "Watch TV." | → She told me to watch TV* | |

*NOTE: Tell is immediately followed by a (pro)noun object, but say is not: He told me he would be late. He said he would be late. Also possible: He said to me he would be late. |

Exercise 21. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by reporting the speaker’s words in a noun clause. Use past verb forms in noun clauses if appropriate.

1. Pedro said, "I will help you."
   
   Pedro said (that) he would help me.

2. "Do you need a pen?" Annie asked.
   
   Annie asked me if I needed a pen.
3. Jennifer asked, "What do you want?"
   Jennifer asked me how he wanted.

4. Talal asked, "Are you hungry?"
   Talal wanted to know

5. "I want a sandwich," Elena said.
   Elena said

6. "I'm going to move to Ohio," said Bruce.
   Bruce informed me

7. "Did you enjoy your trip?" asked Kim.
   Kim asked me

8. Oscar asked, "What are you talking about?"
   Oscar asked me

9. Maria asked, "Have you seen my grammar book?"
   Maria wanted to know

10. Yuko said, "I don't want to go."
    Yuko said

11. Sam asked, "Where is Nadia?"
    Sam wanted to know

12. "Can you help me with my report?" asked David.
    David asked me

13. "I may be late," said Mike.
    Mike told me

14. Felix said, "You should work harder."
    Felix told me

15. Rosa said, "I have to go downtown."
    Rosa said

16. "Why is the sky blue?" my young daughter often asks.
    My young daughter often asks me

17. My mother asked, "Why are you tired?"
    My mother wondered

18. "I will come to the meeting," said Pedro.
    Pedro told me

19. Ms. Adams just asked Ms. Chang, "Will you be in class tomorrow?"
    Ms. Adams wanted to know
Mr. Clark, an elementary school teacher, explained to his students _

21. "Someday we'll be in contact with beings from outer space."
The scientist predicted _

22. "I think I'll go to the library to study."
Joe said _

23. "Does Omar know what he's doing?"
I wondered _

24. "Is what I've heard true?"
I wondered _

25. "Sentences with noun clauses are a little complicated."
Olga thinks _

□ EXERCISE 22. Activity: reported speech. (Chart 12-7)
Directions: Form groups of three and choose a leader. Only the leader's book is open.
Speaker A: You are the leader. Your book is open. Whisper a question to Speaker B.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Make sure you understand the question.
Speaker C: Your book is closed. Ask Speaker B something like "What did Speaker A want to know/say/ask you?"
Speaker B: Begin your response with "He (She) asked me . . . . ."

Example:

SPEAKER A to B (whispered): Where is your friend?
SPEAKER c to B (aloud): What did (Speaker A) want to know?
SPEAKER B to c (aloud): He (She) asked me where my friend was (OR is).

1. What time is it?
2. Can you speak Arabic?
3. Have you seen (title of a movie)?
4. Will you be here tomorrow?
5. What kind of camera do you have?
6. What courses are you taking?
7. Did you finish your assignment?
8. (Make up your own question.)

Switch roles.
9. Have you read any good books lately?
10. How do you like living here?
11. May I borrow your dictionary?
12. Where will you be tomorrow around three o'clock?
13. What are you going to do during vacation?
14. Did you go to a party last night?
15. Can I use your pen?
16. (Make up your own question.)

Switch roles.
17. How many people have you met in the last couple of months?
18. Where should I meet you after class?
19. Do you understand what I am saying?
20. Did you go to class yesterday?
21. Is what you said really true?
22. Is what you want to talk to me about important?
23. How do you know that what you said is true?
24. (Make up your own question.)
EXERCISE 23. Activity: reported speech. (Chart 12-7)
Directions: With books closed, report to the class at least one question you were asked in the previous exercise and who asked it. Use a past verb form in the noun clause.

Example: Roberto asked me if I'd read any good books lately.

EXERCISE 24. Reported speech: verb forms in noun clauses. (Chart 12-7)
Directions: Complete the sentences, using the information in the dialogue. Change the verbs to a past form as appropriate.

1. Fred asked me, “Can we still get tickets to the game?”
   I said, “I've already bought them.”
   When Fred asked me if we ________ could still get ________ tickets to the game, I told him that I ________ had already bought ________ them.

2. Mrs. White said, “Janice, you have to clean up your room and empty the dishwasher before you leave for the game.”
   Janice said, “Okay, Mom. I will.”
   Mrs. White told Janice that she ________ had to clean up ________ her room and empty the dishwasher before she ________ could leave ________ for the game. Janice promised her mom that she ________ would ________.

3. I asked the ticket seller, “Is the concert going to be rescheduled?”
   The ticket seller said, “I don't know, Ma'am. I just work here.”
   When I asked the ticket seller if the concert ________ is the concert going to be rescheduled, she told me that she ________ and said that she just ________ there.

4. I asked Boris, “Where will the next chess match take place?”
   Boris replied, “It hasn't been decided yet.”
   When I asked Boris ________ where will the next chess match take place, he replied that it ________ yet.

5. I said to Alan, “I'm very discouraged. I don't think I'll ever speak English well.”
   Alan said, “Your English is getting better every day. In another year, you'll be speaking English with the greatest of ease.”
   I complained that I ________ very discouraged. I said that I ________ I ________ ever ________ English well. Alan told me that my English ________ better every day. He assured me that in another year, I ________ English with the greatest of ease.

Noun Clauses 257
A person in the audience asked the speaker, "Are the necessary means to increase the world's food supply presently available?"

The agronomy professor said, "It might be possible to grow 50 percent of the world's food in underwater cultivation if we can develop inexpensive methods."

A person in the audience asked the agronomy professor if the necessary means to increase the world's food supply presently available. The professor stated that it was possible to grow 50 percent of the world's food underwater if we had inexpensive methods.

EXERCISE 25. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Change the quoted speech to reported speech. Study the example carefully and use the same pattern: said that . . . and that OR said that . . . but that.

1. "My father is a businessman. My mother is an engineer."
   He said that his father was a businessman and that his mother was an engineer.

2. "I'm excited about my new job. I've found a nice apartment."
   I got a letter from my sister yesterday. She said I got a letter from my sister yesterday. She said

3. "Your Uncle Harry is in the hospital. Your Aunt Sally is very worried about him."
   The last time my mother wrote to me, she said

4. "I expect you to be in class every day. Unexcused absences may affect your grades."
   Our sociology professor said

5. "Highway 66 will be closed for two months. Commuters should seek alternate routes."
   The newspaper said

6. "I'm getting good grades, but I have difficulty understanding lectures."
   My brother is a junior at a state university. In his last letter, he wrote

7. "Every obstacle is a steppingstone to success. You should view problems in your life as opportunities to prove yourself."
   My father often told me

258 CHAPTER 12
8. "I'll come to the meeting, but I can't stay for more than an hour."
Julia told me

☐ EXERCISE 26. Activity: reported speech. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Work in groups or as a class.
Speaker A: Ask a question on the given topic—whatever comes into your mind. Use a question word (when, how, where, what, why, etc.).
Speaker B: Answer the question in a complete sentence.
Speaker C: Report what Speaker A and Speaker B said.

Example: tonight
SPEAKER A (ROSA): What are you going to do tonight?
SPEAKER B (ALI): I'm going to study.
SPEAKER C (YUNG): Rosa asked Ali what he was going to do tonight, and AH replied that he was going to study.

1. tonight
2. music
3. courses
4. tomorrow
5. book
6. this city
7. population
8. last year
9. television
10. dinner
11. next year
12. vacation

☐ EXERCISE 27. Review: noun clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences.

1. I cannot understand why . . . .
2. One of the students remarked that . . . .
3. I was not sure whose . . . .
4. What . . . . surprised me.
5. That she . . . . surprised me.
6. One of the students stated that . . . .
7. I could not . . . . due to the fact that . . . .
8. What he said was that . . . .
9. No one knows who . . . .
10. The instructor announced that . . . .
11. What I want to know is why . . . .
12. What . . . . is not important.
13. We discussed the fact that . . . .

☐ EXERCISE 28. Activity: noun clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Read each dialogue and then write a report about it. The report should include an accurate idea of the speakers' words, but doesn't have to use their exact words.

Example: Jack said, "I can't go to the game."
Tom said, "Oh? Why not?"
"I don't have enough money for a ticket," replied Jack.

Possible written reports of the above dialogue:

a. Jack told Tom that he couldn't go to the game because he didn't have enough money for a ticket.
b. When Tom asked Jack why he couldn't go to the game, Jack said he didn't have enough money for a ticket.
c. Jack said he couldn't go to the game. When Tom asked him why not, Jack replied that he didn't have enough money for a ticket.
Write reports of the following dialogues:

1. "What are you doing?" Alex asked.
   "I'm drawing a picture," I said.

2. Ann said, "Do you want to go to a movie Sunday night?"
   Sue said, "I'd like to, but I have to study."

3. "How old are you, Mrs. Robinson?" the little boy asked.
   Mrs. Robinson said, "It's not polite to ask people their age."

4. "Is there anything you especially want to watch on TV tonight?" my sister asked.
   "Yes," I replied. "There's a show at eight that I've been waiting to see for a long time."
   "What is it?" she asked.
   "It's a documentary on green sea turtles," I said.
   "Why do you want to see that?"
   "I'm doing a research paper on sea turtles. I think I might be able to get some good information from the documentary. Why don't you watch it with me?"
   "No, thanks," she said. "I'm not especially interested in green sea turtles."

EXERCISE 29. Activity: noun clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)
Directions: Make up a dialogue for the two characters waiting in the supermarket line, and then write a story about the picture. The events in the picture happened yesterday.
Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Tell the taxi driver where do you want to go.

2. My roommate came into the room and asked me why aren't you in class? I said I am waiting for a telephone call from my family.

3. It was my first day at the university, and I am on my way to my first class. I wondered who else will be in the class. What the teacher would be like?

4. He asked me that what did I intend to do after I graduate?

5. Many of the people in the United States doesn't know much about geography. For example, people will ask you where is Japan located.

6. What does a patient tell a doctor it is confidential.

7. What my friend and I did it was our secret. We didn't even tell our parents what did we do.

8. The doctor asked that I felt okay. I told him that I don't feel well.

9. Is clear that the ability to use a computer it is an important skill in the modern world.

10. I asked him what kind of movies does he like, he said me, I like romantic movies.

11. Is true you almost drowned? my friend asked me. Yes, I said. I'm really glad to be alive. It was really frightening.

12. It is a fact that I almost drowned makes me very careful about water safety whenever I go swimming.

13. I didn't know where am I supposed to get off the bus, so I asked the driver where is the science museum. She tell me the name of the street. She said she will tell me when should I get off the bus.

14. My mother did not live with us. When other children asked me where was my mother, I told them she is going to come to visit me very soon.

15. When I asked the taxi driver to drive faster he said I will drive faster if you pay me more. At that time I didn't care how much would it cost, so I told him to go as fast as he can.
16. We looked back to see where are we and how far are we from camp. We don't know, so we decided to turn back. We are afraid that we wander too far.

17. After the accident, I opened my eyes slowly and realize that I am still alive.

18. My country is prospering due to it is a fact that it has become a leading producer of oil.

19. Is true that one must to know English in order to study at an American university.

20. My mother told me what it was the purpose of our visit.

☐ EXERCISE 31. Activity: noun clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)
Directions: Choose one of the following.

1. Think of a letter written in English that you have received recently. In a short paragraph, summarize some of the news or information in this letter. (If you have not recently received a letter written in English, invent one.) Include at least two sentences that use the pattern said that . . . and that OR said that . . . but that.

2. Student A: Write a letter to a classmate (Student B). Give it to Student B.
   Student B: Write a report summarizing Student A's letter.

☐ EXERCISE 32. Activity: noun clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)
Directions: Form small groups and discuss one (or more) of the following topics. Then write a report of the main points made by each speaker in your group. (Do not attempt to report every word that was spoken.)

In your report, use words such as think, believe, say, remark, and state to introduce noun clauses. When you use think or believe, you will probably use present tenses (e.g., Omar thinks that money is the most important thing in life.). When you use say, remark, or state, you will probably use past tenses (e.g., Olga said that many other things were more important than money.).

Do you agree with the given statements? Why or why not?

1. Money is the most important thing in life.
2. A woman can do any job a man can do.
3. When a person decides to get married, his or her love for the other person is the only important consideration.
4. A world government is both desirable and necessary. Countries should simply become the states of one nation, the Earth. In this way, wars could be eliminated and wealth could be equally distributed.

☐ EXERCISE 33. Activity: noun clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)
Directions: Give a one-minute impromptu speech on any topic that comes to mind (pollution, insects, soccer, dogs, etc.). Your classmates will take notes as you speak. Then, in a short paragraph or orally, they will report what you said.
EXERCISE 34. Activity: noun clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: You and your classmates are newspaper reporters at a press conference. You will all interview your teacher or a person whom your teacher invites to class. Your assignment is to write a newspaper article about the person whom you interviewed.

Take notes during the interview. Write down some of the important sentences so that you can use them for quotations in your article. Ask for clarification if you do not understand something the interviewee has said. It is important to report information accurately. In your article, try to organize your information into related topics. For example, if you interview your teacher:

I. General introductory information
II. Professional life
   A. Present teaching duties
   B. Academic duties and activities outside of teaching
   C. Past teaching experience
   D. Educational background
III. Personal life
   A. Basic biographical information (e.g., place of birth, family background, places of residence)
   B. Spare-time activities and interests
   C. Travel experiences

The above outline only suggests a possible method of organization. You must organize your own article, depending upon the information you have gained from your interview.

When you write your report, most of your information will be presented in reported speech; use quoted speech only for the most important or memorable sentences. When you use quoted speech, be sure you are presenting the interviewee's exact words. If you are simply paraphrasing what the interviewee said, do not use quotation marks.

12-8 USING THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN NOUN CLAUSES

(a) The teacher demands that we be on time.
(b) I insisted that he pay me the money.
(c) I recommended that she not go to the concert.
(d) It is important that they be told the truth.

A subjunctive verb uses the simple form of a verb. It does not have present, past, or future forms; it is neither singular nor plural. Sentences with subjunctive verbs generally stress importance or urgency. A subjunctive verb is used in that-clauses that follow the verbs and expressions listed below. In (a): be is a subjunctive verb; its subject is we. In (b): pay (not pays, not paid) is a subjunctive verb; it is in its simple form, even though its subject (he) is singular.

Negative: not + simple form, as in (c).
Passive: simple form of be + past participle, as in (d).

(e) I suggested that she see a doctor.
(f) I suggested that she should see a doctor.

Should is also possible after suggest and recommend.*

COMMON VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS FOLLOWED BY THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN A NOUN CLAUSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb/Expression</th>
<th>Subjunctive Form</th>
<th>Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advise (that)</td>
<td>it is essential</td>
<td>it is critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propose (that)</td>
<td>it is imperative</td>
<td>it is necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask (that)</td>
<td>it is important</td>
<td>it is vital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recommend (that)</td>
<td>it is imperative</td>
<td>it is necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demand (that)</td>
<td>it is important</td>
<td>it is vital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insist (that)</td>
<td>should see</td>
<td>should see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggest (that)</td>
<td>see a doctor</td>
<td>see a doctor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The subjunctive is more common in American English than British English. In British English, should + simple form is more usual than the subjunctive: The teacher insists that we should be on time.
EXERCISE 35. Using the subjunctive in noun clauses. (Chart 12-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences. There is often more than one possible completion.

1. Mr. Adams insists that we _______ be _______ careful in our writing.
2. They requested that we not _______ _______ _______ after midnight.
3. She demanded that I _______ _______ _______ her the truth.
4. I recommended that Jane _______ _______ _______ to the head of the department.
5. I suggest that everyone _______ _______ _______ a letter to the governor.
6. It is essential that I _______ _______ _______ you tomorrow.
7. It is important that he _______ _______ _______ the director of the English program.
8. It is necessary that everyone _______ _______ _______ here on time.

EXERCISE 36. Using the subjunctive in noun clauses. (Chart 12-8)

Directions: Give the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Some of the verbs are passive.

1. Her advisor recommended that she (take) _______ _______ five courses.
2. Roberto insisted that the new baby (name) _______ _______ after his grandfather.
3. The doctor recommended that she (stay) _______ _______ in bed for a few days.
4. The students requested that the test (postpone) _______ _______ _______ , but the instructor decided against a postponement.
5. It is essential that no one (admit) _______ _______ _______ to the room without proper identification.
6. It is critical that pollution (control) _______ _______ _______ and eventually (eliminate) _______ _______ _______.
7. It was such a beautiful day that one of the students suggested we (have) _______ _______ _______ class outside.
8. The movie director insisted that everything about his productions (be) _______ _______ authentic.
9. It is vital that no one else (know) _______ _______ _______ about the secret government operation.
10. Mrs. Wan asked that we (be) _______ _______ _______ sure to lock the door behind us.
11. I requested that I (permit) _______ _______ _______ to change my class.
12. It is important that you (be, not) _____________ late.

13. It is imperative that he (return) _____________ home immediately.

14. The governor proposed that a new highway (build) _____________.

15. Fumiko specifically asked that I (tell, not) _____________ anyone else about it.
   She said it was important that no one else (tell) _____________ about it.

### 12-9 USING -EVER WORDS

The following -ever words give the idea of "any." Each pair of sentences in the examples has the same meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-ever word</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>whoever</td>
<td>Whoever wants to come is welcome. Anyone who wants to come is welcome.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who(m)ever</td>
<td>He makes friends easily with who(m)ever he meets.* He makes friends easily with anyone who(m) he meets.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whatever</td>
<td>He always says whatever comes into his mind. He always says anything that comes into his mind.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whichever</td>
<td>There are four good programs on TV at eight o'clock. We can watch whichever program (whichever one) you prefer. We can watch any of the four programs that you prefer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whenever</td>
<td>You may leave whenever you wish. You may leave at any time that you wish.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wherever</td>
<td>She can go wherever she wants to go. She can go anyplace that she wants to go.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>however</td>
<td>The students may dress however they please. The students may dress in any way that they please.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In (b): whomever is the object of the verb meets. In American English, whomever is rare and very formal. In British English, whoever (not whomever) is used as the object form: He makes friends easily with whoever he meets.

### EXERCISE 37. Using -EVER words. (Chart 12-9)

Directions: Complete the following by using -ever words.

1. Mustafa is free to go anyplace he wishes. He can go _________ wherever ______ he wants.

2. Mustafa is free to go anytime he wishes. He can go __________________ he wants.

3. I don't know what you should do about that problem. Do ______ seems best to you.

4. There are five flights to Chicago every day. I don't care which one we take. We can take ______ one fits in best with your schedule.

5. I want you to be honest. I hope you feel free to say ______ is on your mind.

6. ______ leads a life full of love and happiness is rich.
7. No one can tell him what to do. He does________he wants.

8. If you want to rearrange the furniture, go ahead. You can rearrange it
    ____________you want. I don't care one way or the other.

9. Those children are wild! I feel sorry ___________has to be their
    babysitter.

10. I have a car. I can take you_________you want to go.

11. Scott likes to tell people about his problems. He will talk to_________
    will listen to him. But he bores_________he talks to.

12. To Ellen, the end justifies the means. She will do_________she has to do
    in order to accomplish her objective.

13. I have four. Take_________one pleases you most.

14. My wife and I are going to ride our bicycles across the country. We'll ride for six to
    seven hours every day, then stop for the night_________we happen to be.

15. Irene does_________she wants to do, goes_________she wants
    to go, gets up_________she wants to get up, makes friends with
    ___________she meets, and dresses ___________she pleases.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13-1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-2</td>
<td>Adjective clause pronouns used as the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-3</td>
<td>Adjective clause pronouns used as the object of a verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-4</td>
<td>Adjective clause pronouns used as the object of a preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-5</td>
<td>Usual patterns of adjective clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-6</td>
<td>Using <em>whose</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-7</td>
<td>Using <em>where</em> in adjective clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-8</td>
<td>Using <em>when</em> in adjective clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-9</td>
<td>Using adjective clauses to modify pronouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-10</td>
<td>Punctuating adjective clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-11</td>
<td>Using expressions of quantity in adjective clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-12</td>
<td>Using <em>noun + of which</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-13</td>
<td>Using <em>which</em> to modify a whole sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-14</td>
<td>Reducing adjective clauses to adjective phrases: introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-15</td>
<td>Changing an adjective clause to an adjective phrase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13-1 INTRODUCTION

**CLAUSE:** A clause is a group of words containing a subject and a verb.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSE:** An independent clause is a complete sentence. It contains the main subject and verb of a sentence. (It is also called "a main *clause.*")

**DEPENDENT CLAUSE:** A dependent clause is not a complete sentence. It must be connected to an independent clause.

**ADJECTIVE CLAUSE:** An adjective clause is a dependent clause that modifies a noun. It describes, identifies, or gives further information about a noun. (An adjective clause is also called "a relative *clause.*")

**ADJECTIVE CLAUSE PRONOUNS:** An adjective clause uses pronouns to connect the dependent clause to the independent clause. The *adjective clause pronouns* are *who, whom, which, that,* and *whose.* (Adjective clause pronouns are also called "relative *pronouns.*")
### 13-2 ADJECTIVE CLAUSE PRONOUNS USED AS THE SUBJECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example (a)</th>
<th>Example (b)</th>
<th>Example (c)</th>
<th>Example (d)</th>
<th>Example (e)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I thanked the woman.</td>
<td>She helped me.</td>
<td>The book is mine.</td>
<td><em>Which is on the table</em> is mine.</td>
<td>INCORRECT: The book <em>is mine that is on the table.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) I thanked the woman</td>
<td></td>
<td>(c) The book</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) I thanked the woman</td>
<td></td>
<td>(d) The book</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- In (a): *I thanked the woman* = an independent clause; *who helped me* = an adjective clause. The adjective clause modifies the noun *woman.*
- In (b): *who* is the subject of the adjective clause. In (b): *that* is the subject of the adjective clause. Note: (a) and (b) have the same meaning. (c) and (d) have the same meaning.
- *who* = used for people
- *which* = used for things
- *that* = used for both people and things

### EXERCISE 1. Adjective clause pronouns used as subjects. (Chart 13-2)

**Directions:** Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

1. I saw the man. He closed the door. → *I saw the man who closed the door.*
2. The girl is happy. She won the race.
3. The student is from China. He sits next to me.
4. The students are from China. They sit in the front row.
5. We are studying sentences. They contain adjective clauses.
6. I am using a sentence. It contains an adjective clause.
7. Algebra problems contain letters. They stand for unknown numbers.
8. The taxi driver was friendly. He took me to the airport.

### 13-3 ADJECTIVE CLAUSE PRONOUNS USED AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example (a)</th>
<th>Example (b)</th>
<th>Example (c)</th>
<th>Example (d)</th>
<th>Example (e)</th>
<th>Example (f)</th>
<th>Example (g)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The man was Mr. Jones. I saw <em>him.</em></td>
<td><em>Who(m)</em> I saw was Mr. Jones.</td>
<td><em>That</em> I saw was Mr. Jones.</td>
<td><em>Which</em> we saw last night wasn’t very good. We saw <em>it</em> last night.</td>
<td><em>Which</em> we saw last night wasn’t very good.</td>
<td><em>That</em> we saw last night wasn’t very good.</td>
<td>INCORRECT: The man <em>who(m) saw him</em> was Mr. Jones. The man that I saw <em>him</em> was Mr. Jones. The man I saw <em>him</em> was Mr. Jones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) The man</td>
<td>(b) The man</td>
<td>(c) The man</td>
<td>(d) The movie</td>
<td>(e) The movie</td>
<td>(f) The movie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) INCORRECT: The man <em>who(m)</em> I saw <em>him</em> was Mr. Jones. The man that I saw <em>him</em> was Mr. Jones. The man I saw <em>him</em> was Mr. Jones.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Notice in the examples: The adjective clause pronouns are placed at the beginning of the clause.
- In (a): *who* is usually used instead of *whom,* especially in speaking. *Whom* is generally used only in very formal English.
- In (c) and (f): An object pronoun is often omitted from an adjective clause. (A subject pronoun, however, may not be omitted.)
- *Who(m)* — used for people
- *Which* = used for things
- *That* = used for both people and things
- In (g): The pronoun *him* must be removed. It is unnecessary because *who(m), that,* or *0* functions as the object of the verb *saw.*
EXERCISE 2. Adjective clause pronouns used as the object of a verb. (Chart 13-3)

Directions: Combine the sentences, using the second sentence as an adjective clause. Give all the possible patterns.

1. The book was good. I read it.
2. I liked the woman. I met her at the party last night.
3. I liked the composition. You wrote it.
4. The people were very nice. We visited them yesterday.
5. The man is standing over there. Ann brought him to the party.

EXERCISE 3. Adjective clause pronouns used as the object of a preposition.

Directions: Combine the sentences, using the second sentence as an adjective clause. Give all the possible patterns.

1. The meeting was interesting. I went to it.
2. The man was very kind. I talked to him yesterday.
3. I must thank the people. I got a present from them.
4. The picture was beautiful. She was looking at it.
5. The man is standing over there. I was telling you about him.
6. I ran into a woman. I had gone to elementary school with her.
7. The topic was interesting. Omar talked about it.
8. The people were friendly. I spoke to them.
9. Olga wrote on a topic. She knew nothing about it.
10. The candidate didn't win the election. I voted for her.
EXERCISE 4. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-2 → 13-4)

Directions: Identify the adjective clause in each sentence. Then give the other possible patterns.

Example: The dress which she is wearing is new.

→ Adjective clause: which she is wearing.

Other possible patterns: The dress she is wearing is new.

1. Did I tell you about the woman I met last night?
2. The woman I was dancing with stepped on my toe.
3. The report Joe is writing must be finished by Friday.
4. The doctor who examined the sick child was gentle.
5. The people I was waiting for were late.
6. Did you hear about the earthquake that occurred in California?

13–5 USUAL PATTERNS OF ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>USUAL</th>
<th>LESS USUAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>I like the people who live next to me.</td>
<td>I like the people that live next to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>I like books that have good plots.</td>
<td>I like books which have good plots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>I liked the people we met last night.</td>
<td>In (c) and (d): Object pronouns are commonly omitted especially in speaking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td>I liked the book we read last week.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See Chart 13-10, p. 281, for patterns of pronoun usage when an adjective clause requires commas.

EXERCISE 5. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-2 → 13-5)

Directions: Combine the sentences, using the second sentence as an adjective clause. Give all the possible adjective clause patterns. Discuss which patterns are used more commonly than others.

Example: The scientist is well known for her research. We met her yesterday.

→ The scientist who(m) we met yesterday is well known for her research.

1. She lectured on a topic. I know very little about it.
2. The students missed the assignment. They were absent from class.
3. Yesterday I ran into an old friend. I hadn't seen him for years.
4. The young women are all from Japan. We met them at the meeting last night.
5. I am reading a book. It was written by Jane Austen.
6. The man gave me good advice. I spoke to him.
7. I returned the money. I had borrowed it from my roommate.
8. The dogcatcher caught the dog. It had bitten my neighbor's daughter.
9. I read about a man. He keeps chickens in his apartment.

□ EXERCISE 6. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-2 → 13-5)
Directions: All of these sentences contain errors in adjective clause structures. Correct the errors.

1. In our village, there were many people didn't have much money.
2. I enjoyed the book that you told me to read it.
3. I still remember the man who he taught me to play the violin when I was a boy.
4. I showed my father a picture of the car I am going to buy it as soon as I save enough money.
5. The woman about who I was talking about suddenly walked into the room. I hope she didn't hear me.
6. Almost all of the people appear on television wear makeup.
7. I don't like to spend time with people which loses their temper easily.
8. The boy drew pictures of people at an airport which was waiting for their planes.
9. People who work in the hunger program they estimate that 3500 people in the world die from starvation every day of the year.

10. In one corner of the marketplace, an old man who was playing a violin.

---

EXERCISE 7. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-2 → 13-5)

Directions: Work in pairs (switching roles after item 6), in groups, or as a class.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask the questions. Use the names of classmates.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Begin your answer with "Yes, she/he did. She/He told me about the . . . ." Use an adjective clause in the completion. Omit the object pronoun.

Example: Did ( . . . ) write a report?

SPEAKER A (book open): Did Carmen write a report?
SPEAKER B (book closed): Yes, she did. She told me about the report she wrote.

1. Did ( . . . ) get a letter from (her/his) brother yesterday?
2. Did ( . . . ) write a letter to (name of a person)?
3. Did ( . . . ) go to a party yesterday?
4. Did ( . . . ) meet some people at that party?
5. Did ( . . . ) take a trip to (name of a country) last summer?
6. Did ( . . . ) have some experiences in (name of that country)?
7. Did ( . . . ) use to live in a small town?
8. Did ( . . . ) watch a program on TV last night?
9. Did ( . . . ) interview for a job?
10. Did ( . . . ) have to write a report for (her/his) boss?
11. Did ( . . . ) talk to a person about health insurance?
12. Did ( . . . ) go to the meeting for new employees?
EXERCISE 8. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-2 → 13-5)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Look at a cue briefly. Then, without looking at the text, say the cue sentence to Speaker B.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Begin your answer with "Yes."

Examples:

SPEAKER A: You read a book. Was it interesting?
SPEAKER B: Yes, the book I read was interesting.

SPEAKER A: You drank some tea. Did it taste good?
SPEAKER B: Yes, the tea I drank tasted good.

SPEAKER A: A stranger gave you directions to the post office. Did she speak too fast?
SPEAKER B: Yes, the stranger who gave me directions to the post office spoke too fast.

SPEAKER A: A police officer helped you. Did you thank her?
SPEAKER B: Yes, I thanked the police officer who helped me.

1. You are sitting in a chair. Is it comfortable?
2. You saw a man. Was he wearing a brown suit?
3. You talked to a woman. Did she answer your question?
4. A woman stepped on your toe. Did she apologize?
5. Some students took a test. Did most of them pass?
6. You had some meat for dinner last night. Was it good?
7. A woman shouted at you. Was she angry?
8. A person is sitting next to you. Do you know him/her?
9. A woman came into the room. Did you recognize her?
10. You bought a coat. Does it keep you warm?
11. You watched a TV program last night. Was it good?
12. You were reading a book. Did you finish it?

Switch roles.

13. You stayed at a hotel. Was it in the middle of the city?
14. We are doing an exercise. Is it easy?
15. A waiter served you at a restaurant. Was he polite?
16. A student stopped you in the hall. Did he ask you for the correct time?
17. Some students are sitting in this room. Can all of them speak English?
18. You were looking for a book. Did you find it?
19. You are wearing (boots/tennis shoes/loafers). Are they comfortable?
20. A taxi driver took you to the bus station. Did you have a conversation with her?
21. A man opened the door for you. Did you thank him?
22. A clerk cashed your check. Did he ask for identification?
23. You got a package in the mail. Was it from your parents?
24. A man stopped you on the street. Did he ask you for directions?
EXERCISE 9. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-4 → 13-5)

Directions: Work in pairs or as a class.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the cues from the text.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Repeat the cue, changing "you" to 'I' as necessary. Then make a second sentence with an adjective clause. The adjective clause should modify the noun at the end of the first sentence, as in the examples.

Examples:

SPEAKER A (book open): You're looking at a person.
SPEAKER B (book closed): I'm looking at a person. The person I'm looking at is Peter Lo.

SPEAKER B (book closed): I'm sitting at a desk. The desk I'm sitting at has many scratches on it.

1. You're studying at a school.
2. You're living in a (city/town).
3. That book belongs to a student.*
4. (...) and you listened to some music.
5. (...) went to a movie last night.
6. You are sitting next to a person.

1. You're studying at a school.
2. You're living in a (city/town).
3. That book belongs to a student.*
4. (...) and you listened to some music.
5. (...) went to a movie last night.
6. You are sitting next to a person.

(Switch roles if working in pairs.)
7. You're living with some people.
8. (...) was talking about a movie.
9. You're interested in a field of study.
10. That (bookbag/backpack/bag) belongs to a person.
11. You spoke to some people.
12. You went to a doctor to get some medicine.

13-6 USING WHOSE

I know the man. His bicycle was stolen. (a) I know the man whose bicycle was stolen.

The student writes well. I read her composition. (b) The student whose composition I read writes well.

Mr. Catt has a painting. Its value is inestimable. (c) Mr. Catt has a painting whose value is inestimable.

Whose is used to show possession. It carries the same meaning as other possessive pronouns used as adjectives: his, her, its, and their. Like his, her, its, and their, whose is connected to a noun:

his bicycle → whose bicycle

her composition → whose composition

Both whose and the noun it is connected to are placed at the beginning of the adjective clause. Whose cannot be omitted.

Whose usually modifies people, but it may also be used to modify things, as in (c).

*Sometimes a sentence has "that that": I've read the book that that man wrote. In this example, the first that is an adjective clause pronoun. The second that is a demonstrative adjective, like this or those.
EXERCISE 10. Using *WHOSE* in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-6)

*Directions:* Combine the sentences, using the second sentence as an adjective clause.

1. I know a man. His last name is Goose.
   → I know a man whose last name is Goose.
2. I apologized to the woman. I spilled her coffee.
3. The man called the police. His wallet was stolen.
4. I met the woman. Her husband is the president of the corporation.
5. The professor is excellent. I am taking her course.
6. Mr. North teaches a class for students. Their native language is not English.
7. The people were nice. We visited their house.
8. I live in a dormitory. Its residents come from many countries.
9. I have to call the man. I accidentally picked up his umbrella after the meeting.
10. The man poured a glass of water on his face. His beard caught on fire when he lit a cigarette.

EXERCISE 11. Using *WHOSE* in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-6)

*Directions:* Work in pairs (switching roles after item 4), in groups, or as a class.

Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the cues from the text.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Repeat the cue, changing "you" to "I" as necessary. Then combine the two sentences into one that contains an adjective clause with *whose*.

Example:

SPEAKER A *(book open)*: Dr. Jones is a professor. You’re taking his course.
SPEAKER B *(book closed)*: Dr. Jones is a professor. I’m taking his course.

Dr. Jones is the professor whose course I’m taking.

1. Maria is a student. You found her book.
2. Omar is a student. You borrowed his dictionary.
3. You used a woman’s phone. You thanked her.
4. You broke a child’s toy. He started to cry.
5. You stayed at a family’s house. They were very kind.
6. A woman’s purse was stolen. She called the police.
7. *(Name of a famous singer)* is a singer. You like his/her music best.
8. Everyone tried to help a family. Their house had burned down.
EXERCISE 12. Using WHOSE in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-6)

Directions: Pair up. Pretend you are in a room full of people. You and your classmate are speaking. Together, you are identifying various people in the room. Begin each sentence with "There is . . . ," Alternate items, with Speaker A doing Item 1, Speaker B doing Item 2, Speaker A doing Item 3, etc.

1. That man's wife is your teacher.
   → SPEAKER A: There is the man whose wife is my teacher.

2. That woman's husband is a football player.
   → SPEAKER B: There is the woman whose husband is a football player.

3. That boy's father is a doctor.
4. That girl's mother is a dentist.
5. That person's picture was in the newspaper.
6. That woman's car was stolen.
7. That man's daughter won a gold medal at the Olympic Games.
8. You found that woman's keys.
9. You are in that teacher's class.
10. We met that man's wife.
11. You read that author's book.
12. You borrowed that student's lecture notes.

EXERCISE 13. Using WHOSE in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-6)

Directions: Combine the sentences, using whose in an adjective clause.

1. The man's wife had been admitted to the hospital. I spoke to him.
   → I spoke to the man whose wife had been admitted to the hospital.

2. I read about a child. Her life was saved by her pet dog.
   → I read about a child whose life was saved by her pet dog.

3. The students raised their hands. Their names were called.
4. Jack knows a man. The man's name is William Blueheart Duckbill, Jr.
5. The woman's purse was stolen outside the supermarket. The police came to question her.
6. The day care center was established to take care of children. These children's parents work during the day.
7. We couldn't find the person. His car was blocking the driveway.
8. Three students' reports were turned in late. The professor told them he would accept the papers this time but never again.
13-7 USING WHERE IN ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

| (a) The building | where he lives is very old. |
| (b) The building | in which he lives is very old. |
| The building | which he lives in is very old. |
| The building | that he lives in is very old. |
| The building | he lives in is very old. |

The building is very old.
He lives there (in that building).

Where is used in an adjective clause to modify a place (city, country, room, house, etc.).
If where is used, a preposition is NOT included in the adjective clause, as in (a). If where is not used, the preposition must be included, as in (b).

D EXERCISE 14. Using WHERE in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-7)
Directions: Combine the sentences, using the second sentence as an adjective clause.

1. The city was beautiful. We spent our vacation there (in that city).
2. That is the restaurant. I will meet you there (at that restaurant).
3. The town is small. I grew up there (in that town).
4. That is the drawer. I keep my jewelry there (in that drawer).

13-8 USING WHEN IN ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

| (a) I'll never forget the day | when I met you. |
| (b) I'll never forget the day | on which I met you. |
| (c) I'll never forget the day | that I met you. |
| (d) I'll never forget the day | I met you. |

I'll never forget the day.

When is used in an adjective clause to modify a noun of time (year, day, time, century, etc.).
The use of a preposition in an adjective clause that modifies a noun of time is somewhat different from that in other adjective clauses: a preposition is used preceding which, as in (b). Otherwise, the preposition is omitted.

☐ EXERCISE 15. Using WHEN in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-8)
Directions: Combine the sentences, using the second sentence as an adjective clause.

1. Monday is the day. We will come then (on that day).
2. 7:05 is the time. My plane arrives then (at that time).
3. July is the month. The weather is usually the hottest then (in that month).
4. 1960 is the year. The revolution took place then (in that year).
EXERCISE 16. Using WHERE and WHEN in adjective clauses. (Charts 13-7 and 13-8)

Directions: Combine the sentences by using either where or when to introduce an adjective clause.

1. That is the place. The accident occurred there.
   → That is the place where the accident occurred.

2. There was a time. Movies cost a dime then.
   → There was a time when movies cost a dime.

3. A cafe is a small restaurant. People can get a light meal there.

4. Every neighborhood in Brussels has small cafes. Customers drink coffee and eat pastries there.

5. There was a time. Dinosaurs dominated the earth then.

6. The house was destroyed in an earthquake ten years ago. I was born and grew up there.

7. Summer is the time of year. The weather is the hottest then.

8. The miser hid his money in a place. It was safe from robbers there.

9. There came a time. The miser had to spend his money then.

10. His new shirt didn't fit, so Dan took it back to the store. He'd bought it there.

EXERCISE 17. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-2 → 13-8)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class. Begin your response to the cue with either "I'll never forget the ..." or "I'll always remember the ... ."

Example: trip
Response: I'll never forget the trip . . . I took to France.

1. trip
2. experiences
3. day
4. first day
5. time
6. first time
7. person
8. people
9. woman
10. man
11. house
12. story
13. accident
14. wonderful food
15. room
16. friends
EXERCISE 18. Activity: adjective clauses. (Charts 13-2 → 13-8)

Directions: Work in groups of four or as a class. Only the leader's book is open.

Leader: Direct the questions to the group as a whole, or sometimes to a particular student.

Speaker A: Answer the questions, inventing your answers if necessary.

Leader: Ask another student to summarize the information in Speaker A's responses in one sentence beginning with "The . . . ."

Speaker B: Begin with "The . . . ." Use an adjective clause.

Example:

LEADER TO GROUP: Who got a letter yesterday?

SPEAKER A: I did.

LEADER TO A: Who was it from?

SPEAKER A: My brother.

LEADER TO B: Can you summarize this information? Begin with "The."

SPEAKER B: The letter (Ali) got yesterday was from his brother.

1. Who got a letter last week?
   Where was it from?

2. Who is wearing earrings?
   What are they made of?

3. Who lives in an apartment?
   Is it close to school?

4. Pick up something that doesn't belong to you. What is it?
   Whose is it?

Change leaders.

5. Who grew up in a small town?
   In what part of the country is it located?

6. Who has bought something recently?
   What have you bought recently?
   Was it expensive?

   What is the title?

8. Who went to a bar/restaurant last night?
   Was it crowded?

Change leaders.

9. What did you have for dinner last night?
   Was it good?

10. Who watched a TV program last night?
    What was it about?

11. Who has borrowed something recently?
    What did you borrow?
    Who does it belong to?

12. Who shops for groceries?
    What is the name of the store?

Change leaders.

13. Who eats lunch away from home?
    Where do you usually eat?
    Does it have good food?

14. Who took the bus to class today?
    Was it late or on time?

15. Who read a newspaper today?
    Which newspaper?

16. Point at a person.
    Who are you pointing at?
### 13-9 Using Adjective Clauses to Modify Pronouns

| (a) There is someone (whom) I want you to meet. | Adjective clauses can modify indefinite pronouns (e.g., someone, everybody). Object pronouns (e.g., who(m), that, which) are usually omitted in the adjective clause. |
| (b) Everything he said was pure nonsense. | |
| (c) Anybody who wants to come is welcome. | |
| (d) Paula was the only one I knew at the party. | Adjective clauses can modify the one(s) and those* |
| (e) Scholarships are available for those who need financial assistance. | |

**INCORRECT:** I who am a student at this school come from a country in Asia.

| (f) It is I who am responsible. |
| (g) He who laughs last laughs best. |

Adjective clauses are almost never used to modify personal pronouns. Native English speakers would not write the sentence in (f). (g) is possible, but very formal and uncommon. (h) is a well-known saying in which he is used as an indefinite pronoun (meaning "anyone," "any person").

*An adjective clause with which can also be used to modify the demonstrative pronoun that. For example:

- We sometimes fear that which we do not understand.
- The bread my mother makes is much better than that which you can buy at a store.

**EXERCISE 19. Using adjective clauses to modify pronouns.** (Chart 13-9)

**Directions:** Complete the sentences with adjective clauses.

1. Ask Jack. He's the only one who knows the answer.

2. I have a question. There is something ____________

3. He can't trust anyone. There's no one ____________

4. I'm powerless to help her. There's nothing ____________

5. I know someone ____________

6. Susan makes a good first impression. She charms everyone ____________

7. What was Mrs. Wood talking about? I didn't understand anything ____________

8. I listen to everything ____________

9. You can believe him. Everything ____________

10. All of the students are seated. The teacher is the only one ____________

11. The test we took yesterday was easier than the one ____________

12. The courses I'm taking this term are more difficult than the ones ____________

13. The concert had already begun. Those ____________ had to wait until intermission to be seated.

14. The class was divided in half. Those ____________ were assigned to Section A. Those ____________ were assigned to Section B.
EXERCISE 20. Review: adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 → 13-9)

Directions: Create sentences in which you use the given groups of words. Each sentence should contain an adjective clause.

Examples: the people that I
→ One of the people that I admire most in the history of the world is Gandhi.
the people with whom we
> I enjoyed talking to the people with whom we had dinner last night.

1. the things I
2. the people who
3. a person who
4. the man to whom I
5. the place I
6. a book that
7. the time my
8. a person whose
9. a woman I
10. employees who
11. the restaurant where
12. someone that I
13. everything you
14. those who
15. the only one who
16. nothing I
17. everyone she
18. the doctor he

13-10 PUNCTUATING ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

General guidelines for the punctuation of adjective clauses:
(1) DO NOT USE COMMAS IF the adjective clause is necessary to identify the noun it modifies.*
(2) USE COMMAS IF the adjective clause simply gives additional information and is not necessary to identify the noun it modifies.**

(a) The professor who teaches Chemistry 101 is an excellent lecturer.
(b) Professor Wilson, who teaches Chemistry 101, is an excellent lecturer.

(c) Hawaii, which consists of eight principal islands, is a favorite vacation spot.
(d) Mrs. Smith, who is a retired teacher, does volunteer work at the hospital.

(e) The man that I met teaches chemistry.
(f) Mr. Lee, whom I met yesterday, teaches chemistry.

Compare the meaning
(g) We took some children on a picnic. The children, who wanted to play soccer, ran to an open field as soon as we arrived at the park.
(h) We took some children on a picnic. The children who wanted to play soccer ran to an open field as soon as we arrived at the park. The others played a different game.

*Adjective clauses that do not require commas are called "essential" or "restrictive" or "identifying."
**Adjective clauses that require commas are called "nonessential" or "nonrestrictive" or "nonidentifying."

NOTE: Nonessential adjective clauses are more common in writing than in speaking.
EXERCISE 21. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-10)

Directions: Add commas where necessary. Change the adjective clause pronoun to that if possible.

1. Alan and Jackie, who did not come to class yesterday, explained their absence to the teacher. ("Who" cannot be changed to "that")

2. The students who did not come to class yesterday explained their absence to the teacher. (No commas; "who" can be changed to "that")

3. Only people who speak Russian should apply for the job.

4. Matthew who speaks Russian applied for the job.

5. The rice which we had for dinner last night was very good.

6. Rice which is grown in many countries is a staple food throughout much of the world.

7. The newspaper article was about a man who died two years ago of a rare tropical disease.

8. Paul O'Grady who died two years ago was a kind and loving man.

9. I have fond memories of my hometown which is situated in a valley.

10. I live in a town which is situated in a valley.

11. The Mississippi River which flows south from Minnesota to the Gulf of Mexico is the major commercial river in the United States.

12. A river which is polluted is not safe for swimming.

13. Mr. Brown whose son won the spelling contest is very proud of his son's achievement. The man whose daughter won the science contest is also very pleased and proud.

14. Goats which were first tamed more than 9,000 years ago in Asia have provided people with milk, meat, and wool since prehistoric times.

15. Mrs. Clark has two goats. She's furious at the goat which got on the wrong side of the fence and is eating her flowers.
EXERCISE 22. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-10)
_Directions:_ Circle the correct explanation (a. or b.) of the meaning of each sentence.

1. The teacher thanked the students, who had given her some flowers.
   (a) The flowers were from _only some_ of the students.
   (b) The flowers were from _all_ of the students.

2. The teacher thanked the students who had given her some flowers.
   (a) The flowers were from _only some_ of the students.
   (b) The flowers were from _all_ of the students.

3. There was a terrible flood. The villagers who had received a warning of the impending flood escaped to safety.
   (a) Only some of the villagers had been warned; only some escaped.
   (b) All of the villagers had been warned; all escaped.

4. There was a terrible flood. The villagers, who had received a warning of the impending flood, escaped to safety.
   (a) Only some of the villagers had been warned; only some escaped.
   (b) All of the villagers had been warned; all escaped.

5. Roberto reached down and picked up the grammar book, which was lying upside down on the floor.
   (a) There was _only one_ grammar book near Roberto.
   (b) There was _more than one_ grammar book near Roberto.

6. Roberto reached down and picked up the grammar book which was lying upside down on the floor.
   (a) There was _only one_ grammar book near Roberto.
   (b) There was _more than one_ grammar book near Roberto.

_Discuss the differences in meaning in the following pairs of sentences._

7. He reached in the basket and threw away the apples that were rotten.
8. He reached in the basket and threw away the apples, which were rotten.
9. The students who had done well on the test were excused from class early.
10. The students, who had done well on the test, were excused from class early.
11. Cindy was delighted when she opened the present, which was from her grandmother.
12. Cindy was delighted when she opened the present that was from her grandmother.
13. The teacher pointed to the maps that were hanging on the rear wall of the classroom.
14. The teacher pointed to the maps, which were hanging on the rear wall of the classroom.

EXERCISE 23. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-10)
_Directions:_ Add commas where necessary.

1. We enjoyed the city where we spent our vacation.
2. We enjoyed Mexico City where we spent our vacation.
3. An elephant which is the earth's largest land mammal has few natural enemies other than human beings.

4. One of the elephants which we saw at the zoo had only one tusk.

5. At the botanical gardens, you can see a *Venus's-flytrap* which is an insectivorous plant.

6. In *Venezuela*, there are plants that eat insects with their roots.

7. One of the most useful materials in the world is glass which is made chiefly from sand, soda, and lime.

8. Glaciers which are masses of ice that flow slowly over land form in the cold polar regions and in high mountains.

9. A rebel is a person who resists or fights against authority.

10. Petroleum which some people refer to as black gold is one of the most valuable resources in the world today.

11. You don't need to take heavy clothes when you go to Bangkok which has one of the highest average temperatures of any city in the world.

12. A political party is an organized group of people who control or seek to control a government.

13. Child labor was a social problem in late eighteenth-century England where employment in factories became virtual slavery for children.

14. We had to use a telephone, so we went to the nearest house. The woman who answered our knock listened cautiously to our request.

15. According to a newspaper article which I read, the police arrested the man who had robbed the First National Bank. The man who was wearing a plaid shirt and blue jeans was caught shortly after he had left the bank.

16. I watched a scientist conduct an experiment on bees. The research scientist who was well protected before she stepped into the special chamber holding the bees was not stung. A person who was unprotected by the special clothing could have gotten 300 to 400 bee stings within a minute.
In my class there are 20 students. *Most of them* are from the Far East.

(a) In my class there are 20 students, *most of whom* are from Asia.

He gave several reasons. *Only a few of them* were valid.

(b) He gave several reasons, *only a few of which* were valid.

The teachers discussed Jim. *One of his problems* was poor study habits.

(c) The teachers discussed Jim, *one of whose problems* was poor study habits.

An adjective clause may contain an expression of quantity with *of*: some of, many of, most of, none of, two of, half of, both of, neither of, each of, all of, several of, a few of, little of, a number of, etc.

The expression of quantity precedes the pronoun. Only *whom*, *which*, and *whose* are used in this pattern.

Adjective clauses that begin with an expression of quantity are more common in writing than speaking. Commas are used.

**EXERCISE 24. Using expressions of quantity in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-11)**

*Directions:* Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

1. The city has sixteen schools. Two of them are junior colleges.
   → *The city has sixteen schools, two of which are junior colleges.*

2. Last night the orchestra played three symphonies. One of them was Beethoven's Seventh.

3. I tried on six pairs of shoes. I liked none of them.

4. The village has around 200 people. The majority of them are farmers.

5. That company currently has five employees. All of them are computer experts.

6. After the riot, over one hundred people were taken to the hospital. Many of them had been innocent bystanders.

**EXERCISE 25. Using expressions of quantity in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-11)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences.

1. Al introduced me to his roommates, *both of whom we from California.*

2. The Paulsons own four automobiles, *one of which we.*

3. I have three brothers, *all of whom we.*

4. I am taking four courses, *one of which we.*

5. I have two roommates, *neither of whom we.*

6. This semester I had to buy fifteen books, *most of which we.*

7. The company hired ten new employees, *some of whom we.*

8. In my apartment building, there are twenty apartments, *several of which we.*
13-12 USING NOUN + OF WHICH

We have an antique table. The top of it has jade inlay.
(a) We have an antique table, the top of which has jade inlay.

An adjective clause may include a noun + of which (e.g., the top of which). This pattern carries the meaning of whose (e.g., We have an antique table whose top has jade inlay). This pattern is used in an adjective clause that modifies a thing and occurs primarily in formal written English. A comma is used.

EXERCISE 26. Using noun + OF WHICH. (Chart 13-12)
Directions: Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

1. We toured a 300-year-old house. The exterior of the house consisted of logs cemented with clay.
   → We toured a 300-year-old house, the exterior of which consisted of logs cemented with clay.

2. They own an original Picasso painting. The value of the painting is more than a million dollars.

3. I bought a magazine. The title of the magazine is Contemporary Architectural Styles.

4. My country is dependent upon its income from coffee. The price of coffee varies according to fluctuations in the world market.

5. The genetic engineers are engaged in significant experiments. The results of the experiments will be published in the Journal of Science.

6. The professor has assigned the students a research paper. The purpose of the research paper is to acquaint them with methods of scholarly inquiry.

13-13 USING WHICH TO MODIFY A WHOLE SENTENCE

(a) Tom was late. (b) That surprised me.
(c) Tom was late, which surprised me.
(d) The elevator is out of order. (e) This is too bad.
(f) The elevator is out of order, which is too bad.

The pronouns that and this can refer to the idea of a whole sentence which comes before. In (b): The word that refers to the whole sentence "Tom was late." Similarly, an adjective clause with which may modify the idea of a whole sentence. In (c): The word which refers to the whole sentence "Tom was late."

Using which to modify a whole sentence is informal and occurs most frequently in spoken English. This structure is generally not appropriate in formal writing. Whenever it is written, however, it is preceded by a comma to reflect a pause in speech.

EXERCISE 27. Using WHICH to modify a whole sentence. (Chart 13-13)
Directions: Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

1. Max isn’t home yet. That worries me.
   → Max isn’t home yet, which worries me.

2. My roommate never picks up after herself. This irritates me.

3. Mrs. Anderson responded to my letter right away. I appreciated that very much.
4. There's been an accident on Highway 5. That means I'll be late to work this morning.
5. I shut the door on my necktie. That was really stupid of me.

6. Sally lost her job. That wasn't surprising.
7. She usually came to work late. That upset her boss.
8. So her boss fired her. That made her angry.
9. She hadn't saved any money. That was unfortunate.
10. So she had to borrow some money from me. I didn't like that.
11. She has found a new job. That is lucky.
12. So she has repaid the money she borrowed from me. I appreciate that.
13. She has promised herself to be on time to work every day. That is a good idea.

EXERCISE 28. Using WHICH to modify a whole sentence. (Chart 13-13)

Directions: Make up a sentence to precede the given sentence. Then combine the two sentences, using the second sentence as an adjective clause.

1. The student next to me kept cracking his knuckles. That bothered me a lot. → The student next to me kept cracking his knuckles, which bothered me a lot.

2. ____________________________ That disappointed me.
3. ____________________________ That made me nervous.
4. ____________________________ That shocked all of us.
5. ____________________________ That means he's probably in trouble.
6. ____________________________ That was a pleasant surprise.
7. ____________________________ That made her very unhappy.
8. ____________________________ I appreciated that very much.
9. ____________________________ That made it difficult for me to concentrate.
10. ____________________________ That bothered me so much that I couldn't get to sleep.
EXERCISE 29. Special adjective clauses. (Charts 13-11 → 13-13)

Directions: Create sentences that contain the following groups of words. Do not change the order of the words as they are given. Add words only before and after the group of words. Add punctuation as necessary.

Examples: . . . yesterday which surprised . . .
→ Tom didn't come to class yesterday, which surprised me.

. . . people to my party some of whom . . .
→ I invited ten people to my party, some of whom are my classmates.

1. . . brothers all of whom . . .
2. . . early which was fortunate . . .
3. . . students three of whom . . .
4. . . ideas none of which . . .
5. . . jewelry the value of which . . .
6. . . teachers some of whom . . .
7. . . mother which made me . . .
8. . . a little money all of which . . .
9. . . sisters each of whom . . .
10. . . new car the inside of which . . .
11. . . clothes some of which . . .
12. . . two days ago which surprised . . .

EXERCISE 30. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 → 13-13)

Directions: Combine the sentences. Use formal written English. Use (b) as an adjective clause. Punctuate carefully.

1. (a) An antecedent is a word.
   (b) A pronoun refers to this word.
   → An antecedent is a word to which a pronoun refers.

2. (a) The blue whale is considered the largest animal that has ever lived.
   (b) It can grow to 100 feet and 150 tons.

3. (a) The plane was met by a crowd of three hundred people.
   (b) Some of them had been waiting for more than four hours.

4. (a) In this paper, I will describe the basic process.
   (b) Raw cotton becomes cotton thread by this process.

5. (a) The researchers are doing case studies of people to determine the importance of heredity in health and longevity.
   (b) These people's families have a history of high blood pressure and heart disease.

6. (a) At the end of this month, scientists at the institute will conclude their AIDS research.
   (b) The results of this research will be published within six months.

7. (a) According to many education officials, "math phobia" (that is, a fear of mathematics) is a widespread problem.
   (b) A solution to this problem must and can be found.

8. (a) The art museum hopes to hire a new administrator.
   (b) Under this person's direction it will be able to purchase significant pieces of art.
9. (a) The giant anteater licks up ants for its dinner.
    (b) Its tongue is longer than 30 centimeters (12 inches).

10. (a) The anteater's tongue is sticky.
    (b) It can go in and out of its mouth 160 times a minute.

EXERCISE 31. Activity: adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 \(\rightarrow\) 13-13)

Directions: Discuss and/or write definitions for one or more of these people. Include an adjective clause in your definition. Include several qualities of each person. If you are writing, expand your definition to a whole paragraph.

1. the ideal friend
2. the ideal mother
3. the ideal father
4. the ideal wife
5. the ideal husband
6. the ideal teacher
7. the ideal student
8. the ideal political leader
9. the ideal doctor
10. the ideal (use your own words)

EXERCISE 32. Activity: adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 \(\rightarrow\) 13-13)

Directions: Discuss and/or write about one or more of these topics.

1. the ideal vacation
2. the ideal job
3. the ideal school
4. the ideal system of government
13-14 REDUCING ADJECTIVE CLAUSES TO ADJECTIVE PHRASES: INTRODUCTION

CLAUSE: A clause is a group of related words that contains a subject and a verb.

PHRASE: A phrase is a group of related words that does not contain a subject and a verb.

(a) ADJECTIVE CLAUSE:
The girl who is sitting next to me is Maria.

(b) ADJECTIVE PHRASE:
The girl sitting next to me is Maria.

(c) CLAUSE: The boy who is playing the piano is Ben.

(d) PHRASE: The boy playing the piano is Ben.

(e) CLAUSE: The boy (whom) I saw was Tom.

(f) PHRASE: (none)

An adjective phrase is a reduction of an adjective clause. It modifies a noun. It does not contain a subject and verb. The adjective clause in (a) can be reduced to the adjective phrase in (b). (a) and (b) have the same meaning.

Only adjective clauses that have a subject pronoun—who, which, or that—are reduced to modifying adjective phrases.

The adjective clause in (e) cannot be reduced to an adjective phrase.

13-15 CHANGING AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE TO AN ADJECTIVE PHRASE

(a) CLAUSE: The man who is talking to John is from Korea.

PHRASE: The man talking to John is from Korea.

(b) CLAUSE: The ideas which are presented in that book are good.

PHRASE: The ideas presented in that book are good.

(c) CLAUSE: Ann is the woman who is responsible for the error.

PHRASE: Ann is the woman responsible for the error.

(d) CLAUSE: The books that are on that shelf are mine.

PHRASE: The books on that shelf are mine.

There are two ways in which an adjective clause is changed to an adjective phrase.

1. If the adjective clause contains the be form of a verb, omit the pronoun and the be form, as in examples (a), (b), (c), and (d).

(e) CLAUSE: English has an alphabet that consists of 26 letters.

PHRASE: English has an alphabet consisting of 26 letters.

(f) CLAUSE: Anyone who wants to come with us is welcome.

PHRASE: Anyone wanting to come with us is welcome.

There is no be form of a verb in the adjective clause, it is sometimes possible to omit the subject pronoun and change the verb to its -ing form, as in (e) and (f).

(g) George Washington, who was the first president of the United States, was a wealthy colonist and a general in the army.

(h) George Washington, the first president of the United States, was a wealthy colonist and a general in the army.

If the adjective clause requires commas, as in (g), the adjective phrase also requires commas, as in (h).

(i) Paris, the capital of France, is an exciting city.

(j) I read a book by Mark Twain, a famous American author.

Adjective phrases in which a noun follows another noun, as in (h), (i), and (j), are called “appositives.”

*If an adjective clause that contains be + a single adjective is changed, the adjective is moved to its normal position in front of the noun it modifies.

CLAUSE: Fruit that is fresh tastes better than old, soft, mushy fruit.

CORRECT PHRASE: Fresh fruit tastes better than old, soft, mushy fruit.

INCORRECT PHRASE: Fruit fresh tastes better than old, soft, mushy fruit.

290 CHAPTER 13
EXERCISE 33. Adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)

Directions: Change the adjective clauses to adjective phrases.

1. Do you know the woman who is coming toward us?
   → Do you know the woman coming toward us?

2. The people who are waiting for the bus in the rain are getting wet.

3. I come from a city that is located in the southern part of the country.

4. The children who attend that school receive a good education.

5. The scientists who are researching the causes of cancer are making progress.

6. The fence which surrounds our house is made of wood.

7. They live in a house that was built in 1890.

8. We have an apartment which overlooks the park.

EXERCISE 34. Adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)

Directions: Change the adjective clauses to adjective phrases.

1. Dr. Stanton, who is the president of the university, will give a speech at the commencement ceremonies.

2. Be sure to follow the instructions that are given at the top of the page.

3. The rules that allow public access to wilderness areas need to be reconsidered.

4. The photographs which were published in the newspaper were extraordinary.

5. There is almost no end to the problems that face a head of state.

6. The psychologists who study the nature of sleep have made important discoveries.

7. The experiment which was conducted at the University of Chicago was successful.

8. Kuala Lumpur, which is the capital city of Malaysia, is a major trade center in Southeast Asia.

9. Antarctica is covered by a huge ice cap that contains 70 percent of the earth's fresh water.

10. When I went to Alex's house to drop off some paperwork, I met Jerry, who is his longtime partner.

11. Our solar system is in a galaxy that is called the Milky Way.

12. Two out of three people who are struck by lightning survive.

13. Simon Bolivar, who was a great South American general, led the fight for independence early in the 19th century.

14. Many of the students who hope to enter the university will be disappointed because only one-tenth of those who apply for admission will be accepted.

15. There must exist in a modern community a sufficient number of persons who possess the technical skill that is required to maintain the numerous devices upon which our physical comforts depend.

16. Many famous people did not enjoy immediate success in their early lives. Abraham Lincoln, who was one of the truly great presidents of the United States, ran for public office 26 times and lost 23 of the elections. Walt Disney, who was the creator of Mickey Mouse and the founder of his own movie production company, once was fired by a newspaper editor because he had no good ideas. Thomas Edison, who was the inventor of the light bulb and the phonograph, was believed by his teachers to be too stupid to learn. Albert Einstein, who was one of the greatest scientists of all time, performed badly in almost all of his high school courses and failed his first college entrance exam.
EXERCISE 35. Adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)

Directions: Change the adjective phrases to adjective clauses.

1. We visited Barcelona, a city in northern Spain.
   - We visited Barcelona, which is a city in northern Spain.
2. Corn was one of the agricultural products introduced to the European settlers by the Indians. Some of the other products introduced by the Indians were potatoes, peanuts, and tobacco.
3. He read The Old Man and the Sea, a novel written by Ernest Hemingway.
4. Mercury, the nearest planet to the sun, is also the smallest of the nine planets orbiting the sun.
5. The pyramids, the monumental tombs of ancient Egyptian pharaohs, were constructed more than 4,000 years ago.
6. The sloth, a slow-moving animal found in the tropical forests of Central and South America, feeds entirely on leaves and fruit.
7. Two-thirds of those arrested for car theft are under twenty years of age.
8. St. Louis, Missouri, known as "The Gateway to the West," traces its history to 1763, when Pierre Laclède, a French fur trader, selected this site on the Mississippi River as a fur-trading post.
9. Any student not wanting to go on the trip should inform the office.
10. I just purchased a volume of poems written by David Keller, a contemporary poet known for his sensitive interpretations of human relationships.

EXERCISE 36. Adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)

Directions: Complete the sentences in PART II with adjective phrases by using the information in PART I. Use commas as necessary.

PART I,

A. It is the lowest place on the earth's surface.
B. It is the highest mountain in the world.
C. It is the capital of Iraq.
D. It is the capital of Argentina.
E. It is the largest city in the Western Hemisphere.
F. It is the largest city in the United States.
G. It is the most populous country in Africa.
H. It is the northernmost country in Latin America.
I. It is an African animal that eats ants and termites.
J. It is a small animal that spends its entire life underground.
K. They are sensitive instruments that measure the shaking of the ground.
L. They are devices that produce a powerful beam of light.

PART II,

1. Mt. Everest, the highest mountain in the world, is in the Himalayas.
2. One of the largest cities in the Middle East is Baghdad.
3. Earthquakes are recorded on seismographs.
4. The Dead Sea is located in the Middle East between Jordan and Israel.

5. The newspaper reported an earthquake in Buenos Aires.

6. Industry and medicine are continually finding new uses for lasers.

7. Mexico lies just south of the United States.

8. The nation Nigeria consists of over 250 different cultural groups even though English is the official language.

9. Both Mexico City and New York City face challenging futures.

10. The mole is almost blind. The aardvark also lives underground but hunts for its food above ground.

EXERCISE 37. Review: adjective clauses and phrases. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Combine each group of short, choppy sentences into one sentence. Use the underlined sentence as the independent clause; build your sentence around the independent clause. Use adjective clauses and adjective phrases wherever possible.

1. Chihuahua is divided into two regions. It is the largest Mexican state. One region is a mountainous area in the west. The other region is a desert basin in the north and east.

   \[ 	ext{Chihuahua, the largest Mexican state, is divided into two regions, a mountainous area in the west and a desert basin in the north and east.} \]

2. Disney World covers a large area of land. It is an amusement park. It is located in Orlando, Florida. The land includes lakes, golf courses, campsites, hotels, and a wildlife preserve.

3. Jamaica is one of the world's leading producers of bauxite. It is the third largest island in the Caribbean Sea. Bauxite is an ore. Aluminum is made from this ore.

4. Robert Ballard made headlines in 1985. He is an oceanographer. In 1985 he discovered the remains of the Titanic. The Titanic was the “unsinkable” passenger ship. It has rested on the floor of the Atlantic Ocean since 1912. It struck an iceberg in 1912.

5. William Shakespeare's father was a glove maker and a town official. William Shakespeare's father was John Shakespeare. He owned a shop in Stratford-upon-Avon. Stratford-upon-Avon is a town. It is about 75 miles (120 kilometers) northwest of London.

6. The Republic of Yemen is an ancient land. It is located at the southwestern tip of the Arabian Peninsula. This land has been host to many prosperous civilizations. These civilizations include the Kingdom of Sheba and various Islamic empires.
Exercise 38. Error analysis: adjective clauses and phrases. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. One of the people which I admire most is my uncle.

2. Baseball is the only sport in which I am interested in it.

3. My favorite teacher, Mr. Chu, he was always willing to help me after class.

4. It is important to be polite to people who lives in the same building.

5. She lives in a hotel is restricted to senior citizens.

6. My sister has two childrens, who their names are Ali and Talal.

7. He comes from Venezuela that is a Spanish-speaking country.

8. There are some people in the government who is trying to improve the lives of poor people.

9. I have some good advice for anyone who he wants to learn a second language.

10. My classroom is located on the second floor of Carver Hall that is a large brick building in the center of the campus.

11. A myth is a story expresses traditional beliefs.

12. There is an old legend telling among people in my country about a man lived in the seventeenth century saved a village from destruction.

13. An old man was fishing next to me on the pier was muttering to himself.

14. When I was a child, I was always afraid of the beggars whom they went from house to house in my neighborhood.

15. At the national park, there is a path leads to a spectacular waterfall.

16. The road that we took it through the forest it was narrow and steep.

17. There are ten universities in Thailand, seven of them locate in Bangkok is the capital city.

18. I would like to write about several problem which I have faced them since I come to United State.

19. There is a small wooden screen separates the bed from the rest of the room.

20. At the airport, I was waiting for some relatives which I had never met them before.
21. It is almost impossible to find two persons who their opinions are the same.

22. On the wall, there is a colorful poster which it consists of a group of young people who dancing.

23. The sixth member of our household is Alex that is my sister's son.

24. Before I came here, I didn't have the opportunity to speak with people who English is their native tongue.

☐ EXERCISE 39. Activity: adjective clauses. (Chapter 13)

Directions: A discovery and an invention are different, but they are related. A discovery occurs when something that exists in nature is recognized for the first time. Fire is an example of a discovery. An invention is something that is made for the first time by a creator. An invention never existed before the act of creation. The telephone and the automobile are two examples of important 20th-century inventions.

Either in a group or by yourself, draw up a list of inventions made in the 20th century. After your list is finished, discuss the inventions you have named, using the following questions as guidelines:

1. What are the three most important 20th-century inventions that you have listed? Why? In other words, why do you rate these as the most influential/important inventions?
2. What were some important inventions prior to the 20th century? Why?
3. Which invention has brought the most happiness to people? Which has caused the most unhappiness?
4. Are any of the inventions you have listed luxury items? Which of the inventions you have listed have become accepted as necessities?
5. What would your world be like without a certain invention? How has your life been influenced by these inventions? Would you like to go back to 1900 when none of these things existed? Can you visualize life as it was then?
6. What would you like to see invented now? What do you think will be one of the most important inventions that will be made in the future? What are you going to invent?

☐ EXERCISE 40. Activity: adjective clauses. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Form a group of three people. Together, make up one sentence with as many adjective clauses as possible. In other words, make the most awkward sentence you can while still using grammatically correct sentence structure. Count the number of adjective clauses you use. See which group can make the worst sentence by using the largest number of adjective clauses.

Example of a stylistically terrible, but grammatically correct, sentence:

The man who was sitting at a table which was at the restaurant where I usually eat dinner, which is something I do every evening, was talking to a woman who was wearing a dress which was blue, which is my favorite color.
EXERCISE 41. Writing: adjective clauses and phrases. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Write on one or more of these topics. Try to use adjective clauses and phrases.

1. Write about three historical figures from your country. Give your reader information about their lives and accomplishments.
2. Write about your favorite TV shows. What are they? What are they about? Why do you enjoy them?
3. Who are some people in your country who are popular with young people (e.g., singers, movie stars, political figures, etc.)? Tell your readers about these people. Assume your readers are completely unfamiliar with them.
4. You are a tourist agent for your hometown/country. Write a descriptive brochure that would make your readers want to visit your hometown/country.
5. What kind of people do you like? What kind of people do you avoid?
6. What kind of person do you want to marry? What kind of person do you not want to marry? If you are already married: What kind of person did you marry?

EXERCISE 42. Activity: speaking and writing.

Directions: Form a group of volunteers who are interested in performing a short play. Work together outside of class to prepare a performance for the rest of the class. Choose a scene from a published play, or write your own.

If you write your own, choose a situation in which there is some kind of conflict, for example, people who are facing a problem. Perhaps the characters or situations can be based on current movies or TV programs, or possibly on historical events. Write down the dialogue so that each member of the group has the exact same script.

Then present your play to the rest of the class.

Possible follow-up activities:

1. Write a synopsis of the play your classmates presented.
2. Write a letter to a character in one of the plays, giving advice on how to handle the conflict in the play.
3. With a group, discuss the relationships and the conflict in the play.
4. With others, re-enact the play you saw, without looking at a script.
CHAPTER 14
Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1

CONTENTS

14-1 Gerunds: introduction
14-2 Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions
14-3 Common preposition combinations followed by gerunds
14-4 Common verbs followed by gerunds
14-5 Go + gerund
14-6 Special expressions followed by -ing
14-7 Common verbs followed by infinitives
14-8 Common verbs followed by either infinitives or gerunds
14-9 Reference list of verbs followed by gerunds
14-10 Reference list of verbs followed by infinitives
14-11 It + infinitive; gerunds and infinitives as subjects

14-1 GERUNDS: INTRODUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>Playing tennis is run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>We enjoy playing tennis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREP</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>He's excited about playing tennis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A gerund is the -ing form of a verb used as a noun.* A gerund is used in the same ways as a noun, i.e., as a subject or as an object. In (a): playing is a gerund. It is used as the subject of the sentence. Playing tennis is a gerund phrase. In (b): playing is a gerund used as the object of the verb enjoy. In (c): playing is a gerund used as the object of the preposition about.

*COMPARE the uses of the -ing form of verbs:
(1) Walking is good exercise.
    → walking — a gerund used as the subject of the sentence.
(2) Bob and Ann are playing tennis.
    → playing = a present participle used as part of the present progressive tense.
(3) I heard some surprising news.
    → surprising = a present participle used as an adjective.
## 14-2 Using Gerunds As the Objects of Prepositions

(a) We talked about going to Canada for our vacation.  
(b) Sue is in charge of organizing the meeting.  
(c) I’m interested in learning more about your work.  
(d) I’m used to sleeping with the window open.  
(e) I’m accustomed to sleeping* with the window open.  
(f) I look forward to going home next month.  
(g) They object to changing their plans at this late date.  
(h) We talked about not going to the meeting, but finally decided we should go.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) We talked about going to Canada for our vacation.</td>
<td>A gerund is frequently used as the object of a preposition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Sue is in charge of organizing the meeting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) I’m interested in learning more about your work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) I’m used to sleeping with the window open.</td>
<td>In (d) through (g); to is a preposition, not part of an infinitive form, so a gerund follows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) I’m accustomed to sleeping* with the window open.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) I look forward to going home next month.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) They object to changing their plans at this late date.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) We talked about not going to the meeting, but finally decided we should go.</td>
<td>Negative form: not precedes a gerund.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Possible in British English: I’m accustomed to sleep with the window open.

### Exercise 1. Preview. (Chart 14-3)

**Directions:** Without referring to Chart 14-3, see how many of the preposition combinations you already know by completing these sentences with an appropriate preposition and verb form.

1. Alice isn’t interested in looking for a new job.
2. Henry is excited about leaving for India.
3. You are capable of doing better work.
4. I have no excuse for being late.
5. I’m accustomed to having a big breakfast.
6. The rain prevented us from completing the work.
7. Fred is always complaining about having a headache.
8. Instead of studying, Margaret went to a ballgame with some of her friends.
9. Thank you for helping me carry my suitcases.
10. Mrs. Grant insisted on knowing the whole truth.
11. I believe to being honest at all times.
12. You should take advantage of living here.
13. Fatima had a good reason for not going to class yesterday.
14. Everyone in the neighborhood participated in searching for the lost child.
15. I apologized to Yoko for making her wait for me.
16. The weather is terrible tonight. I don't blame you _______ (want, not) _______ _____________ to go to the meeting.

17. Who is responsible _______ (wash) _____________ and (dry) _______ _______ the dishes after dinner?

18. In addition _______ (go) _________________ to school full time, Spiro has a part-time job.

19. I stopped the child _______ (run) _______ _______ into the street.

20. Where should we go for dinner tonight? Would you object _______ (go) _________________ to an Italian restaurant?

21. The mayor made another public statement for the purpose _______ (clarify) _________________ the new tax proposal.

22. The thief was accused _______ (steal) _________________ a woman’s purse.

23. The jury found Mr. Adams guilty _______ (take) _________________ money from the company he worked for and (keep) _______ _______ it for himself.

24. Larry isn't used _______ (wear) _______ _______ a suit and tie every day.

25. I’m going to visit my family during the school vacation. I’m looking forward _______ (eat) _________________ my mother’s cooking and (sleep) _______ _______ in my own bed.

14-3 COMMON PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS

| be excited | be worried | about doing it |
| complain | dream | talk | think |
| about/of doing it |
| apologize | blame (someone) | forgive (someone) | have an excuse | have a reason |
| be responsible | thank (someone) | keep (someone) | prevent (someone) | prohibit (someone) |
| from doing it |
| believe | be interested | participate | succeed |
| in doing it |
| be accused | be capable | for the purpose | be guilty |
| instead | take advantage | take care | be tired |
| of doing it |
| insist on doing it | be accustomed | in addition | be committed |
| be devoted | look forward | object | be opposed |
| be used | to doing it |
EXERCISE 2. Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions. (Charts 14-2 and 14-3)

Directions: Using the words in parentheses, complete the sentences.

1. Kostas went to bed instead of finishing his work. (finish)
2. I thanked my friend of lending money. (lend)
3. I’m excited of going. (go)
4. I’m not accustomed to living. (live)
5. Omar didn’t feel good. He complained of having. (have)
6. I don’t blame you of wanting, not wanting. (want, not)
7. I have a good reason of being. (be)
8. It’s getting late. I’m worried of missing. (miss)
9. I’m interested in finding out about. (find out about)
10. I’m thinking of going. (go)
11. I apologized to my friend of being. (be)
12. I am/ am not used to driving. (drive)
13. Nothing can stop me of going. (go)
14. In that office, who is responsible for taking care of. (take care of)
15. I look forward to going. (go)
16. The thief was guilty of stealing. (steal)
17. Sonya has two jobs. In addition to working. (work)
18. Please forgive me of writing, not writing. (write, not)
19. Sarah is an honest person. She is not capable of telling. (tell)
20. Ill health keeps my grandfather from traveling. (travel)

EXERCISE 3. Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions. (Charts 14-2 and 14-3)

Directions: To practice using gerunds following prepositions, answer the questions in complete sentences. If working in pairs, switch roles after Item 7.

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): Your friend was late. Did she apologize?
SPEAKER B (book closed): Yes, she apologized OR No, she didn’t apologize for being late.

1. You were late for class yesterday. Did you have a good excuse?
2. You are going to (a city) to visit your friends this weekend. Are you looking forward to that?
3. (...) picked up your pen when you dropped it. Did you thank him/her?
4. You're living in a cold/warm climate. Are you accustomed to that?
5. You're going to (a place) for a vacation. Are you excited?
6. You interrupted (...) while s/he was speaking. Did you apologize?
7. The students in the class did pantomimes. Did all of them participate?
8. Someone broke the window. Do you know who is responsible?
9. Americans usually have their biggest meal in the evening. Are you used to doing that?
10. The weather is hot/cold. What does that prevent you from doing?
11. (...) has to do a lot of homework. Does s/he complain?
12. (...) was sick last week, so s/he stayed home in bed. Do you blame her/him?
13. (...) didn't study grammar last night. What did s/he do instead?
14. You studied last night. What did you do in addition?

D EXERCISE 4. Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions. (Chart 14-2)

Directions: Complete the following using by + a gerund or gerund phrase to express how something is done.

1. Pat turned off the tape recorder by pushing the stop button.
2. We show people we are happy by smiling.
3. We decided who should get the last piece of pie by flipping a coin.
4. We satisfy our hunger by eating.
5. We quench our thirst by drinking.
6. I found out what "quench" means by quenching.
7. Tony improved his listening comprehension by listening.
8. Alex caught my attention by catching.
9. They got rid of the rats in the building by getting rid of.
10. My dog shows me she is happy by showing.
11. He accidentally electrocuted himself by electrocuting.
12. Sometimes teenagers get into trouble with their parents by getting into trouble.
**14-4 COMMON VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS**

Verbs are followed by gerunds in certain contexts. A gerund is a verb form that behaves like a noun. In English, gerunds are formed by adding -ing to a verb. They are often used as objects of certain verbs, as shown in the examples below.

### Example 1: Enjoying Tennis

- **Verb:** enjoy
- **Gerund:** playing

In the sentence, "I enjoy playing tennis," the gerund "playing" is the object of the verb "enjoy." The correct form is to use a gerund, not an infinitive. The incorrect form is "I enjoy to play tennis."

### Example 2: Giving Up Smoking

- **Verb:** quit
- **Gerund:** smoking

The sentences "Joe quit smoking" and "Joe gave up smoking" are correct, and they mean the same thing. Some phrasal verbs, such as "give up," are followed by gerunds. These phrasal verbs are listed in parentheses in the table below.

### Table of Common Verbs Followed by Gerunds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>playing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appreciate</td>
<td>finish (get through)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
<td>stop**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit (give up)</td>
<td>avoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postpone (put off)</td>
<td>consider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delay</td>
<td>discuss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep (keep on)</td>
<td>mention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider</td>
<td>suggest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stop** can also be followed immediately by an infinitive of purpose (in order to). See Chart 15-1, p. 326.

**Exercise 5. Verbs Followed by Gerunds.**

Directions: Create sentences from the given words, using any tense and subject. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class. The cue's book is open. The responder's book is closed.

Example: enjoy + read the newspaper

**Speaker A (book open):** "enjoy" (pause) "read the newspaper"

**Speaker B (book closed):** I enjoy reading the newspaper every morning while I'm having my first cup of coffee.

1. enjoy + watch TV
2. mind + open the window
3. quit + eat desserts
4. give up + eat desserts
5. finish + eat dinner
6. get through + eat dinner
7. stop + rain
8. avoid + answer my question
9. postpone + do my work
10. put off + do my work
11. delay + leave on vacation
12. keep + work
13. keep on + work
14. consider + get a job
15. think about + get a job
16. discuss + go to a movie
17. talk about + go to a movie
18. mention + go to a concert
19. suggest + go on a picnic*
20. enjoy + listen to music

*For other ways of expressing ideas with suggest, see Chart 12-8, p. 263.
EXERCISE 6. Verbs followed by gerunds. (Chart 14-4)
Directions: Complete each sentence with any appropriate gerund.

1. When Beth got tired, she stopped ________. [working/studying]
2. Would you mind __________ the door? Thanks.
3. The weather will get better soon. We can leave as soon as it quits ____________.
4. The police officer told him to stop, but the thief kept ____________.
5. I enjoy ____________ a long walk every morning.
6. I have a lot of homework tonight, but I'd still like to go with you later on. I'll call you when I get through ____________.
7. I would like to have some friends over. I'm thinking about ____________ a dinner party.
8. He told a really funny joke. We couldn't stop ____________!
9. Jack almost had an automobile accident. He barely avoided ____________ another car at the intersection of 4th and Elm.
10. Where are you considering ____________ for vacation?
11. Sometimes I put off ____________ my homework.
12. You have to decide where you want to go to school next year. You can't postpone ____________ that decision much longer.
13. I wanted to go to Mexico. Sally suggested ____________ to Hawaii.
14. Tony mentioned ____________ the bus to school instead of walking.
15. I appreciate ____________ able to study in peace and quiet.

14-5  **GO + GERUND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(a) Did you go shopping?</th>
<th>Go is followed by a gerund in certain idiomatic expressions to express, for the most part, recreational activities.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b) We went fishing yesterday.</td>
<td>Go fishing*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GO + GERUND**

- go birdwatching
- go boating
- go bowling
- go camping
- go canoeing/kayaking
- go dancing
- go fishing*
- go hiking
- go hunting
- go jogging
- go mountain climbing
- go running
- go sailing
- go shopping
- go sightseeing
- go skateboarding
- go skiing
- go skinnydipping
- go sledding
- go snorkeling
- go swimming
- go tobogganing
- go window shopping

*Also, in British English: go angling
EXERCISE 7. GO + gerund. (Chart 14-5)
Directions: Discuss the activities listed in Chart 14-5.
1. Which ones have you done? When? Briefly describe your experiences.
2. Which ones do you like to do?
3. Which ones do you never want to do?
4. Which ones have you not done but would like to do?

EXERCISE 8. GO + gerund. (Chart 14-5)
Directions: Create sentences from the given words, using any tense and subject. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class. The cuer's book is open. The responder's book is closed.
Example: enjoy + go
SPEAKER A (book open): "enjoy" (pause) "go"
SPEAKER B (book closed): I enjoy going to the zoo. / My friend and I enjoyed going to a rock concert last weekend. / Where do you enjoy going in (this city) when you have some free time?

1. finish + study
2. go + dance
3. keep + work
4. go + bowl
5. think about + wear
6. enjoy + play
7. go + fish
8. talk about + go + swim
9. stop + fight
10. postpone + go + camp
11. quit + rain
12. avoid + go + shop
13. give up + ask
14. discuss + go + birdwatch
15. appreciate + hear
16. mind + wait
17. think about + not go
18. talk about + go + run

14-6 SPECIAL EXPRESSIONS FOLLOWED BY -ING

(a) We had fun playing volleyball.
(b) I had trouble finding his house.
(c) Sam spends most of his time studying.
(d) I waste a lot of time watching TV.
(e) She sat at her desk writing a letter.
(f) I stood there wondering what to do next.
(g) He is lying in bed reading a novel.
(h) When I walked into my office, I found George using my telephone.
(i) When I walked into my office, I caught a thief looking through my desk drawers.

-ing forms follow certain special expressions:
- have fun/a good time + -ing
- have trouble/difficulty + -ing
- have a hard time/difficult time + -ing

In (h) and (i): Both find and catch mean "discover." Catch often expresses anger or displeasure.
EXERCISE 9. Special expressions followed by -ING. (Chart 14-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences.

1. We had a lot of fun _________ games at the picnic.

2. I have trouble ________________ Mrs. Maxwell when she speaks. She talks too fast.

3. I spent five hours ________________ my homework last night.

4. Olga is standing at the corner ________________ for the bus.

5. Ricardo is sitting in class ________________ notes.

6. It was a beautiful spring day. Dorothy was lying under a tree ________________ to the birds sing.

7. We wasted our money ________________ to that movie. It was very boring.

8. Omar spent all day ________________ ready to leave on vacation.

9. Ted is an indecisive person. He has a hard time ________________ up his mind about anything.

10. I wondered what the children were doing while I was gone. When I got home, I found them ________________ TV.

11. When Mr. Chan walked into the kitchen, he caught the children ________________ some candy even though he'd told them not to spoil their dinners.

12. Ms. Gray is a commuter. Every work day, she spends almost two hours ________________ to and from work.
13. A: My friend is going to Germany next month, but he doesn't speak German. What do you suppose he will have difficulty ____________________________?
   B: Well, he might have trouble ________________________________.

14. A: Did you enjoy your trip to New York City?
   B: Very much. We had a good time ________________________________.

15. A: This is your first semester at this school. Have you had any problems?
   B: Not really, but sometimes I have a hard time ________________________.

16. A: What did you do yesterday?
   B: I spent almost all day ________________________________.

**EXERCISE 10. Special expressions followed by -ING. (Chart 14-6)**

Directions: Create sentences from the given verb combinations. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class. The cueer's book is open. The responder's book is closed.

Example: have a difficult time + understand
SPEAKER A (book open): "have a difficult time" (pause) "understand"
SPEAKER B (book closed): I have a difficult time understanding the teacher's explanations in calculus.

Example: spend (time) + polish
SPEAKER A (book open): "spend an hour" (pause) "polish"
SPEAKER B (book closed): The soldier spent an hour polishing his boots.

1. have trouble + remember
2. stand (place) + wait
3. have a hard time + learn
4. sit (place) + think
5. have a good time + play
6. lie (place) + dream
7. have difficulty + pronounce
8. have fun + sing and dance
9. find (someone) + study
10. spend (time) + chat
11. waste (money) + try
12. catch (someone) + take
14-7 COMMON VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + Infinitive</th>
<th>An infinitive - to + the simple form of a verb (to see, to be, to go, etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) I hope to see you again soon.</td>
<td>Some verbs are followed immediately by an infinitive, as in (a) and (b). See Group A below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) He promised to be here by ten.</td>
<td>Negative form: not precedes the infinitive, as in (c).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) He promised not to be late.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + Pronoun + Infinitive</th>
<th>Some verbs are followed by a (pro)noun and then an infinitive, as in (d) and (e). See Group B below.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(d) Mr. Lee told me to be here at ten o'clock.</td>
<td>These verbs are followed immediately by an infinitive when they are used in the passive, as in (f) and (g).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) The police ordered the driver to stop.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) I was told to be here at ten o'clock.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) The driver was ordered to stop.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Ask, expect, would like, want, and need may or may not be followed by a (pro)noun object.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(h) I expect to pass the test.</td>
<td>COMPARE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) I expect Mary to pass the test.</td>
<td>In (h): I think I will pass the test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In (i): I think Mary will pass the test.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GROUP A: VERB + INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hope to</td>
<td>(do something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promise to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intend to*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intend to + to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intend to + infinitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seem to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Intend is usually followed by an infinitive (I intend to go to the meeting), but sometimes may be followed by a gerund (I intend going to the meeting) with no change in meaning.

**GROUP B: VERB + (PRO)NOUN + INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronoun + Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tell someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>force someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise someone to**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allow someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encourage someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warn someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would like someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order someone to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**A gerund is used after advise (active) if there is no (pro)noun object.**

**COMPARE:**

1. He advised buying a Fiat.
2. He advised me to buy a Fiat. I was advised to buy a Fiat.

Exercise 11. Verb + gerund or infinitive. (Charts 14-4 and 14-7)

Directions: Use a gerund or an infinitive to complete each sentence.

1. We're going out for dinner. Would you like _________ to join us?
2. Jack avoided _________ looking at me.
3. Fred didn't have any money, so he decided _________________ a job.
4. The teacher reminded the students _________________ their assignments.
5. Do you enjoy _________________ soccer?
6. I was broke, so Jenny offered _________________ me a little money.
7. Mrs. Allen promised _________________ tomorrow.
8. My boss expects me ______________ this work ASAP.*
9. Would you mind _______________ the door for me?
10. Even though I asked the people in front of me at the movie _______________ quiet, they kept _______________.
11. Joan and David were considering _______________ married in June, but they finally decided _______________ until August.
12. Our teacher encourages us _______________ a dictionary whenever we are uncertain of the spelling of a word.
13. Before I went away to college, my mother reminded me _______________ her a letter at least once a week.
14. Mrs. Jackson had warned her young son _______________ the hot stove.
15. I don’t mind _______________ alone.
16. The teacher seems _______________ in a good mood today, don’t you think?
17. Lucy pretended _______________ the answer to my question.
18. Paulo intends _______________ his friend a letter.
19. Residents are not allowed _______________ pets in my apartment building.
20. All applicants are required _______________ an entrance examination.
21. Someone asked me _______________ this package.
22. I was asked _______________ this package.
23. Jack advised me _______________ a new apartment.
24. I was advised _______________ a new apartment.
27. Ann advised her sister _______________ the plane instead of driving to Oregon.
28. Ann advised _______________ the plane instead of driving to Oregon.

*ASAP = as soon as possible
EXERCISE 12. Verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-7)

Directions: Use an infinitive phrase to create active and passive sentences using the given ideas and the verbs in parentheses. (Omit the fry-phrase in passive sentences.)

1. The teacher said to me, "You may leave early."
   (permit) The teacher permitted me to leave early. (active)
   I was permitted to leave early. (passive)

2. The secretary said to me, "Please give this note to Sue."
   (ask)

3. My advisor said to me, "You should take Biology 109."
   (advise)

4. When I went to traffic court, the judge said to me, "You must pay a fine."
   (order)

5. During the test, the teacher said to Greg, "Keep your eyes on your own paper."
   (warn)

6. During the test, the teacher said to Greg, "Don't look at your neighbor's paper."
   (warn)

7. At the meeting, the head of the department said to the faculty, "Don't forget to turn in your grade reports by the 15th."
   (remind)

8. Mr. Lee said to the children, "Be quiet."
   (tell)

9. The hijacker said to the pilot, "You must land the plane."
   (force)

10. When I was growing up, my parents said to me, "You may stay up late on Saturday night."
    (allow)

11. The teacher said to the students, "Speak slowly and clearly."
    (encourage)

12. The teacher always says to the students, "You are supposed to come to class on time."
    (expect)
EXERCISE 13. Using infinitives to report speech. (Chart 14-7)

Directions: Report what someone said by using one of the verbs in the list to introduce an infinitive phrase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>advise</th>
<th>expect</th>
<th>remind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allow</td>
<td>force</td>
<td>require</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>order</td>
<td>tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encourage</td>
<td>permit</td>
<td>warn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The professor said to Alan, "You may leave early."  
   → The professor allowed Alan to leave early. OR  
   → Alan was allowed to leave early.
2. The general said to the soldiers, "Surround the enemy!"
3. Nancy said to me, "Would you please open the window?"
4. Bob said to me, "Don't forget to take your book back to the library."
5. Paul thinks I have a good voice, so he said to me, "You should take singing lessons."
6. Mrs. Anderson was very stern and a little angry. She shook her finger at the children and said to them, "Don't play with matches!"
7. I am very relieved because the Dean of Admissions said to me, "You may register for school late."
8. The law says, "Every driver must have a valid driver's license."
9. My friend said to me, "You should get some automobile insurance."
10. The robber had a gun. He said to me, "Give me all of your money."
11. Before the examination began, the teacher said to the students, "Work quickly."
12. My boss said to me, "Come to the meeting ten minutes early."

EXERCISE 14. Common verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-7)

Directions: Work in groups of three. The cuer's book is open. The responders' books are closed.

Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the cue.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Make an active sentence from the verb combination.
Speaker C: Your book is closed. Change the sentence to the passive; omit the fry-phrase as appropriate.

Example: allow me + leave

SPEAKER A (book open): "allow me" (pause) "leave"
SPEAKER B (book closed): The teacher allowed me to leave class early last Friday because I had an appointment with my doctor.
SPEAKER C (book closed): ( . . . ) was allowed to leave class early last Friday because he/she had an appointment with his/her doctor.

Switch roles.

1. remind me + finish 4. expect me + be 7. tell me + open
2. ask me + go 5. warn me + not go 8. encourage me + visit
3. permit me + have 6. advise me + take 9. require us + take
Some verbs can be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund, sometimes with no difference in meaning, as in Group A below, and sometimes with a difference in meaning, as in Group B below.

### GROUP A: VERB + INFINITIVE OR GERUND, WITH NO DIFFERENCE IN MEANING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>hate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>can’t stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continue</td>
<td>prefer*</td>
<td>can’t bear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verbs in Group A may be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund with little or no difference in meaning.

(a) It began to rain. It began raining.
(b) I started to work. I started working.
(c) It was beginning to rain.

In (c): There is no difference between *began to rain* and *began raining*.

If the main verb is progressive, an infinitive (not a gerund) is usually used, as in (c).

### GROUP B: VERB + INFINITIVE OR GERUND, WITH A DIFFERENCE IN MEANING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
<td>regret</td>
<td>forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verbs in Group B may be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund, but the meaning is different.

(d) Judy always remembers to lock the door.
(e) Sam often forgets to lock the door.
(f) I remember seeing the Alps for the first time. The sight was impressive.
(g) I’ll never forget seeing the Alps for the first time.

Remember + infinitive = remember to perform responsibility, duty, or task, as in (d).

Forget + infinitive = forget to perform a responsibility, duty, or task, as in (e).

Remember + gerund = remember (recall) something that happened in the past, as in (f).

Forget + gerund = forget something that happened in the past, as in (g).**

(h) I regret to tell you that you failed the test.
(i) I regret lending him some money. He never paid me back.

Regret + infinitive = regret to say, to tell someone, to inform someone of some bad news, as in (h).

Regret + gerund = regret something that happened in the past, as in (i).

(j) I’m trying to learn English.
(k) The room was hot. I tried opening the window, but that didn’t help. So I tried turning on the fan, but I was still hot. Finally, I turned on the air conditioner.

Try + infinitive = make an effort, as in (j).

Try + gerund = experiment with a new or different approach to see if it works, as in (k).

*Notice the patterns with prefer:

prefer + gerund: I prefer staying home to going to the concert.
prefer + infinitive: I’d prefer to stay home (rather) than (to) go to the concert.

**Forget followed by a gerund usually occurs in a negative sentence or in a question: e.g., I’ll never forget, I can’t forget, Have you ever forgotten, and Can you ever forget are often followed by a gerund phrase.
EXERCISE 15. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Chart 14-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form(s) of the verbs in parentheses.

1. I like (go) ______ to go / going ______ to the zoo.

2. The play wasn’t very good. The audience started (leave) __________ before it was over.

3. After a brief interruption, the professor continued (lecture) __________

4. The children love (swim) __________ in the ocean.

5. I hate (see) __________ any living being suffer. I can’t bear it.

6. I’m afraid of flying. When a plane begins (move) __________ down the runway, my heart starts (race) __________. Oh-oh! The plane is beginning (move) __________, and my heart is starting (race) __________.

7. When I travel, I prefer (drive) __________ to (take) __________ a plane.

8. I prefer (drive) __________ rather than (take) __________ __________ a plane.

9. I always remember (turn) __________ off all the lights before I leave my house.

10. I can remember (be) __________ very proud and happy when I graduated.

11. Did you remember (give) __________ Jake my message?

12. I remember (play) __________ with dolls when I was a child.

13. What do you remember (do) __________ when you were a child?

14. What do you remember (do) __________ before you leave for class every day?

15. What did you forget (do) __________ before you left for class this morning?

16. I’ll never forget (carry) __________ my wife over the threshold when we moved into our first home.

17. I can’t ever forget (watch) __________ our team score the winning goal in the last seconds of the championship game.
18. Don't forget (do) __________________ your homework tonight!

19. I regret (inform) __________________ you that your loan application has not been approved.

20. I regret (listen, not) ___________________ to my father's advice. He was right.

21. When a student asks a question, the teacher always tries (explain) __________________ the problem as clearly as possible.

22. I tried everything, but the baby still wouldn't stop crying. I tried (hold) __________________ him, but that didn't help. I tried (feed) __________________ him, but he refused the food and continued to cry. I tried (burp) __________________ him. I tried (change) __________________ his diapers. Nothing worked. The baby wouldn't stop crying.
Exercise 16. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-4 → 14-8)

Directions: Supply an appropriate form, gerund or infinitive, of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Mary reminded me *(be, not)* ___________ late for the meeting.
2. We went for a walk after we finished *(clean)* ___________ up the kitchen.
3. I forgot *(take)* ___________ a book back to the library, so I had to pay a fine.
4. When do you expect *(leave)* ___________ on your trip?
5. The baby started *(talk)* ___________ when she was about eighteen months old.
6. I don’t mind *(wait)* ___________ for you. Go ahead and finish *(do)* ___________ your work.
7. I’ve decided *(stay)* ___________ here over vacation and *(paint)* ___________ my room.
8. We discussed *(quit)* ___________ our jobs and *(open)* ___________ our own business.
9. I’m getting tired. I need *(take)* ___________ a break.
10. Sometimes students avoid *(look)* ___________ at the teacher if they don’t want *(answer)* ___________ a question.
11. The club members discussed *(postpone)* ___________ the next meeting until March.
12. Most children prefer *(watch)* ___________ television to *(listen)* ___________ to the radio.
13. My grandfather prefers *(read)* ___________ .
14. Did Carol agree *(go)* ___________ *(camp)* ___________ with you?
15. As the storm approached, the birds quit *(sing)* ___________.
16. The taxi driver refused *(take)* ___________ a check. He wanted the passenger *(pay)* ___________ cash.
17. The soldiers were ordered *(stand)* ___________ at attention.
18. The travel agent advised us *(wait, not)* ___________ until August.
EXERCISE 17. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-4 → 14-8)

Directions: Use the correct form of the verbs in parentheses and complete the sentences. Include a (pro)noun object between the two verbs if necessary. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

Examples:
The fire marshal (tell + unlock)
→ The fire marshall told us to unlock the back doors of the school to provide a fast exit in the event of an emergency.
( . . .) (be asked + lead)
→ Maria was asked to lead a group discussion in class yesterday.

1. ( . . .) (remind + finish)
2. We (have fun + swim)
3. Students (be required + have)
4. The counselor (advise + take)
5. I (try + learn)
6. ( . . .) (warn + not open)
7. I (like + go + camp)
8. ( . . .) (invite + go)
9. ( . . .) (promise + not tell)
10. We (not be permitted + take)
11. My friend (ask + tell)
12. When the wind (begin + blow)
13. 1 (remember + call)
14. ( . . .) (tell + not worry about + be)
15. ( . . .) (be told + be)
16. I (spend + write)

EXERCISE 18. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-4 → 14-8)

Directions: Work in pairs or small groups.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the cues.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Make sentences from the verb combinations. Use "I" or the name of another person in the room. Use any verb tense or modal.

Examples:

SPEAKER A (book open): like + go
SPEAKER B (book closed): I like to go (OR: going) to the park.

SPEAKER A (book closed): ask + open
SPEAKER B (book closed): Kostas asked me to open the window.

Switch roles.

1. enjoy + listen
2. offer + lend
3. start + laugh
4. remind + take
5. postpone + go
6. look forward to + see
7. forget + bring
8. remember + go
9. prefer + live
10. finish + do
11. encourage + go
12. can't stand + have to wait
13. continue + walk
14. stop + walk
15. be interested in + learn
16. be used to + speak

Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1 315
Switch roles.

17. suggest + go
18. advise + go
19. be allowed + have
20. like + go + swim

Switch roles.

21. regret + take
22. consider + not go
23. keep + put off + do
24. decide + ask + come

☐ EXERCISE 19. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-4 → 14-8)

Directions: Supply an appropriate form, gerund or infinitive, of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Keep (talk) _____________________. I'm listening to you.

2. The children promised (play) __________________________ more quietly. They promised (make, not) __________________________ so much noise.

3. Linda offered (look after) __________________________ my cat while I was out of town.

4. You shouldn't put off (pay) __________________________ your bills.

5. Alex's dog loves (chase) __________________________ sticks.

6. Mark mentioned (go) __________________________ to the market later today. I wonder if he's still planning (go) __________________________.

7. Igor suggested (go) __________________________ (ski) __________________________ in the mountains this weekend. How does that sound to you?

8. The doctor ordered Mr. Gray (smoke, not) __________________________.

9. Don't tell me his secret. I prefer (know, not) __________________________.

10. Could you please stop (whistle) __________________________? I'm trying (concentrate) __________________________ on my work.

11. Recently, Jo has been spending most of her time (do) __________________________ research for a book on pioneer women.

12. Nadia finally decided (quit) __________________________ her present job and (look for) __________________________ another one.

13. Did you remember (turn off) __________________________ the stove?

14. Toshi was allowed (renew) __________________________ his student visa.

15. Pat told us (wail, not) __________________________ for her.

16. Mr. Buck warned his daughter (play, not) __________________________ with matches.

17. Would you please remind me (call) __________________________ Gina tomorrow?
18. The little boy had a lot of trouble convincing anyone he had seen a mermaid.

19. Liz encouraged me to throw away my old running shoes with holes in the toes and to buy a new pair.

20. I'm considering dropping out of school, hitchhiking to New York, and trying to find a job.

21. Don't forget to call Jane about going swimming tomorrow.

22. Sally reminded me to ask you to tell Bob to bring his soccer ball to the picnic.
Verbs with a bullet (•) can also be followed by infinitives. See Chart 14-10.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>admit</td>
<td>He admitted stealing the money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise*</td>
<td>She advised waiting until tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anticipate</td>
<td>I anticipate having a good time on vacation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appreciate</td>
<td>I appreciated hearing from them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>He avoided answering my question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't bear*</td>
<td>I can't bear waiting in long lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin*</td>
<td>It began raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete</td>
<td>I finally completed writing my term paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider*</td>
<td>I will consider going with you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continue*</td>
<td>He continued speaking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delay</td>
<td>He delayed leaving for school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>She denied committing the crime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>They discussed opening a new business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dislike</td>
<td>I dislike driving long distances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>We enjoyed visiting them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>She finished studying about ten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget*</td>
<td>I'll never forget visiting Napoleon's tomb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hate*</td>
<td>I too making silly mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't help</td>
<td>I can't help worrying about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>I keep hoping he will come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like*</td>
<td>I like going to movies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love*</td>
<td>I love going to operas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mention</td>
<td>She mentioned going to a movie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
<td>Would you rather helping me with this?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss</td>
<td>I miss being with my family.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postpone</td>
<td>Let's postpone leaving until tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>practice</td>
<td>The athlete practiced throwing the ball.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefer*</td>
<td>Ann prefers walking to driving to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>He quiet trying to solve the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recall</td>
<td>I don't recall meeting him before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recollect</td>
<td>I don't recollect meeting him before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recommend</td>
<td>She recommended seeing the show.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regret*</td>
<td>I regret telling him my secret.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember*</td>
<td>I can remember meeting him when I was a child.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resent</td>
<td>I resent her interfering in my business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resist</td>
<td>I couldn't resist eating the dessert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>risk</td>
<td>She risks losing all of her money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't stand*</td>
<td>I can't stand waiting in long lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start*</td>
<td>It started raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>She stopped going to classes when she got sick.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggest</td>
<td>She suggested going to a movie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tolerate</td>
<td>She won't tolerate cheating during an examination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try</td>
<td>I tried changing the light bulb, but the lamp still didn't work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>I don't understand his leaving school.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14-10 REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES

Verbs with a bullet (•) can also be followed by gerunds. See Chart 14-9.

### A. VERBS FOLLOWED IMMEDIATELY BY AN INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>afford</td>
<td>I can’t afford to buy it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>agree</td>
<td>They agreed to help us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>appear</td>
<td>She appears to be tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>arrange</td>
<td>I’ll arrange to meet you at the airport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ask</td>
<td>He asked to come with us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>can’t bear</td>
<td>I can’t bear to wait in long lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>beg</td>
<td>He begged to come with us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>begin</td>
<td>It began to rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>care</td>
<td>I don’t care to see that show.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>claim</td>
<td>She claims to know a famous movie star.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>consent</td>
<td>She finally consented to marry him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>continue</td>
<td>He continued to speak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>decide</td>
<td>I have decided to leave on Monday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>demand</td>
<td>I demand to know who is responsible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>deserve</td>
<td>She deserves to win the prize.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>expect</td>
<td>I expect to enter graduate school in the fall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>She failed to return the book to the library on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>I forgot to mail the letter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>I hate to make silly mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>hesitate</td>
<td>Don’t hesitate to ask for my help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>Jack hopes to arrive next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>He learned to play the piano.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>I like to go to the movies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>I love to go to operas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>manage</td>
<td>She managed to finish her work early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>I didn’t mean to hurt your feelings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>need</td>
<td>I need to have your opinion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>They offered to help us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>plan</td>
<td>I am planning to have a party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>Ann prefers to walk to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>prepare</td>
<td>We prepared to welcome them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>pretend</td>
<td>He pretends not to understand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td>I promise not to be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>I refuse to believe his story.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>regret</td>
<td>I regret to tell you that you failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>remember</td>
<td>I remembered to lock the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>seem</td>
<td>That cat seems to be friendly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>can’t stand</td>
<td>I can’t stand to wait in long lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>start</td>
<td>It started to rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>struggle</td>
<td>I struggled to stay awake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>She swore to tell the truth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>threaten</td>
<td>She threatened to tell my parents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>try</td>
<td>I’m trying to learn English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>volunteer</td>
<td>He volunteered to help us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>I will wait to hear from you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>I want to tell you something.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>wish</td>
<td>She wishes to come with us.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B. VERBS FOLLOWED BY A (PRO)NOUN + AN INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>advise</td>
<td>She advised me to wait until tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>allow</td>
<td>She allowed me to use her car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>ask</td>
<td>I asked John to help us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>beg</td>
<td>They begged us to come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>cause</td>
<td>Her laziness caused her to fail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>challenge</td>
<td>She challenged me to race her to the corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>convince</td>
<td>I couldn’t convince him to accept our help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>He dared me to do better than he had done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>encourage</td>
<td>He encouraged me to try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>expect</td>
<td>I expect you to be on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>I forbid you to tell him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>force</td>
<td>They forced him to tell the truth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>fere</td>
<td>She hired a boy to mow the lawn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>instruct</td>
<td>He instructed them to be careful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>invite</td>
<td>Harry invited the Johnsons to come to his party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>need</td>
<td>We needed Chris to help us figure out the solution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>order</td>
<td>The judge ordered me to pay a fine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>permit</td>
<td>He permitted the children to stay up late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>persuade</td>
<td>I persuaded him to come for a visit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>remind</td>
<td>She reminded me to lock the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>require</td>
<td>Our teacher requires us to be on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>My brother taught me to swim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>The doctor told me to take these pills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>I urged her to apply for the job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>TOZWt</td>
<td>I want you to be happy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>tawn</td>
<td>I warned you not to drive too fast.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 20. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the cue. Don't lower your intonation at the end of the cue.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Complete the sentence with doing it or to do it.
Speaker A: If you are unsure about the correctness of B's completion, refer to Charts 14-9 and 14-10.

Example:

1. I enjoyed . . . .
2. I can't afford . . . .
3. She didn't allow me . . . .
4. We plan . . . .
5. Please remind me . . . .
6. I am considering . . . .
7. Our director postponed . . . .
8. He persuaded me . . . .
9. I don't mind . . . .
10. Everyone avoided . . . .

Switch roles.
11. I refused . . . .
12. I hope . . . .
13. She convinced me . . . .
14. He mentioned . . . .
15. I expect . . . .
16. I encouraged him . . . .
17. I warned him not . . . .
18. We prepared . . . .
19. I don't recall . . . .
20. We decided . . . .

Switch roles.
21. Did someone offer . . . .
22. When will you finish . . . .
23. Did you practice . . . .
24. She agreed . . . .
25. Keep . . . .

26. Stop . . . .
27. I didn't force him . . . .
28. I couldn't resist . . . .
29. Somehow, the cat managed . . . .
30. Did the little boy admit . . . .

Switch roles.
31. He denied . . . .
32. I didn't mean . . . .
33. She swore . . . .
34. I volunteered . . . .
35. He suggested . . . .
36. He advised me . . . .
37. He struggled . . . .
38. I don't want to risk . . . .
39. Do you recommend . . . .
40. I miss . . . .

Switch roles.
41. I can't imagine . . . .
42. She threatened . . . .
43. He seems to dislike . . . .
44. The children begged . . . .
45. She challenged me . . . .
46. Did he deny . . . .
47. Don't hesitate . . . .
48. Do you anticipate . . . .
49. Why did she fail . . . .
50. I'll arrange . . . .
EXERCISE 21. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form, gerund or infinitive, of the words in parentheses.

1. Hassan volunteered (bring) ________________ some food to the reception.

2. The students practiced (pronounce) ________________ the “th” sound in the phrase "these thirty-three dirty trees."

3. In the fairy tale, the wolf threatened (eat) ________________ a girl named Little Red Riding Hood.

4. Susie! How many times do I have to remind you (hang up) ________________ your coat when you get home from school?

5. The horses struggled (pull) ________________ the wagon out of the mud.

6. Anita demanded (know) ________________ why she had been fired.

7. My skin can't tolerate (be) ________________ in the sun all day. I get sunburned easily.

8. I avoided (tell) ________________ Mary the truth because I knew she would be angry.


10. Mr. Kwan broke the antique vase. I'm sure he didn't mean (do) ________________ it.

11. I urged Omar (return) ________________ to school and (finish) ________________ his education.

12. Mrs. Freeman can't help (worry) ________________ about her children.

13. Children, I forbid you (play) ________________ in the street. There's too much traffic.

14. My little cousin is a blabbermouth! He can't resist (tell) ________________ everyone my secrets!

15. I appreciate your (take) ________________ the time to help me.

16. I can't afford (buy) ________________ a new car.

17. Kim managed (change) ________________ my mind.

18. I think Sam deserves (have) ________________ another chance.
19. Olga finally admitted (be) ________________ responsible for the problem.

20. I don't recall ever (hear) ________________ you mention his name before.

21. Nadia keeps (promise) ________________ (visit)________________________us,
   but she never does.

22. Margaret challenged me (race) ________________her across the pool.

23. Oscar keeps (hope)____________________ and (pray) ________________
    that things will get better.

24. I finally managed (persuade) ________________, Yoko (stay) ________________
    in school and (finish) ________________her degree.

□ EXERCISE 22. Activity: gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Return to Exercise 20, but this time use your own words instead of to do it or
doing it. Work with a partner.

Example:


SPEAKER B (book closed): . . . to be on time for our meeting tomorrow.

□ EXERCISE 23. Activity: gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Divide into two teams. Your teacher will begin a sentence by using any of the
verbs in Charts 14-9 and 14-10 or by using the verbs in Exercise 20. Complete the
sentence with a gerund or infinitive phrase. Each correct completion scores one point.
14-11 IT + INFINITIVE: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES AS SUBJECTS

(a) It is difficult to learn a second language.

(b) Learning a second language is difficult.

(c) To learn a second language is difficult.

(d) It is easy for young children to learn a second language.

Often an infinitive phrase is used with it as the subject of a sentence. The word it refers to and has the same meaning as the infinitive phrase at the end of the sentence. In (a): It = to learn a second language.

A gerund phrase is frequently used as the subject of a sentence, as in (b).

An infinitive can also be used as the subject of a sentence, as in (c), but far more commonly an infinitive phrase is used with it, as in (a).

The phrase for (someone) may be used to specify exactly who the speaker is talking about, as in (d).

EXERCISE 24. IT + infinitive. (Chart 14-11)

Directions: Create sentences beginning with it. Use a form of the given expression in your sentence, followed by an infinitive phrase.

1. be dangerous -> It's dangerous to ride a motorcycle without wearing a helmet.
2. be important
3. not be easy
4. be foolish
5. must be interesting
6. be always a pleasure
7. be clever of you
8. not cost much money
9. be necessary
10. take time

EXERCISE 25. IT + infinitive. (Chart 14-11)

Directions: Add for (someone) and any other words to give a more specific and accurate meaning to the sentences.

1. It isn't possible to be on time.
   -> It isn't possible for me to be on time for class if the bus drivers are on strike and I have to walk to class in a rainstorm.
2. It's easy to speak Spanish.
3. It's important to learn English.
4. It is essential to get a visa.
5. It's important to take advanced math courses.
6. It's difficult to communicate.
7. It was impossible to come to class.
8. It is a good idea to study gerunds and infinitives.
EXERCISE 26. Gerunds as subjects. (Chart 14-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Use gerund phrases as subjects.

1. . . . isn't easy. \(\rightarrow\) Climbing to the top of a mountain isn't easy.
2. . . . is hard.
3. . . . can be interesting.
4. . . . was a good experience.
5. Does . . . sound like fun to you?
6. . . . demands patience and a sense of humor.
7. . . . is a complicated process.
8. . . . is considered impolite in my country.

EXERCISE 27. IT + infinitive; gerunds as subjects. (Chart 14-11)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the cue.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Complete the sentence with an infinitive phrase.
Speaker A: Create a sentence with the same meaning by using a gerund phrase as the subject.

Example:

SPEAKER A: Riding a horse is fun.

Switch roles.

1. It's dangerous . . . .
2. It's easy . . . .
3. It's impolite . . . .
4. It is important . . . .
5. It is wrong . . . .
6. It takes a lot of time . . . .
7. It's a good idea . . . .
8. Is it difficult . . . .?

EXERCISE 28. Activity: gerunds and infinitives. (Chapter 14)

Directions: Form a group of three to five members. Choose one of the story beginnings or make up your own. Each group member continues the story by adding a sentence or two. At least one of the sentences should contain words from the given list, plus a gerund or infinitive phrase (but it is okay simply to continue the story without using a gerund or infinitive if it works out that way). As a group, use as many of the words in the list which follows as you can.

Example: (Yoko) had a bad night last night. First, when she got home, she discovered that . . . .

SPEAKER A: . . . her door was unlocked. She didn't recall leaving her door unlocked. She always remembers to lock her door and in fact specifically remembered locking it that morning. So she became afraid that someone had broken into her apartment.

SPEAKER B: She thought about going inside, but then decided it would be better not to go into her apartment alone. What if there was a burglar inside?

SPEAKER C: Instead of going into her apartment alone, Yoko walked to her next-door neighbor's door and knocked.

SPEAKER D: Her neighbor answered the door. He could see that something was the matter. "Are you all right?" he asked her.

SPEAKER A: Etc.
Story beginnings:

1. ( . . . ) is having trouble with (her/his) roommate, whose name is ( . . . ). (Her/His) roommate keeps many pets even though the lease they signed forbids residents to keep animals in their apartments. Yesterday, one of these pets, a/an . . . .

2. Not long ago, ( . . . ) and ( . . . ) were walking home together after dark. They heard a strange whooshing sound. When they looked up in the night sky, they saw a huge hovering aircraft. It glowed! It was round and green! ( . . . ) was frightened and curious at the same time. (She/He) wanted to . . . , but . . . .

3. Once upon a time, ( . . . ) lived in a faraway village in a remote mountainous region. All of the villagers were terrified because of the dragon that lived nearby. At least once a week, the dragon would descend on the village and . . . .

4. It was a dark and stormy night. ( . . . ) was all alone at home. Suddenly . . . .

5. ( . . . ) had a bad day yesterday. First of all, when (she/he) got up in the morning, (she/he) discovered that . . . .

List of words and phrases to work into the story:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prepositional Expressions Followed by Gerunds</th>
<th>Verbs Followed by Gerunds or Infinitives</th>
<th>IT + Infinitive or a Gerund Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be accused of</td>
<td>admit</td>
<td>be a bad experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be accustomed to</td>
<td>advise</td>
<td>be a bad idea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in addition to</td>
<td>afford</td>
<td>be better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be afraid</td>
<td>agree</td>
<td>be clever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apologize (to someone) for</td>
<td>ask</td>
<td>be dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe in</td>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>be difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blame (someone) for</td>
<td>beg</td>
<td>be easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be capable of</td>
<td>begin</td>
<td>be essential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be committed to</td>
<td>consider</td>
<td>be foolish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complain about</td>
<td>continue</td>
<td>be a good experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream of</td>
<td>convince</td>
<td>be a good idea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive (someone) for</td>
<td>decide</td>
<td>be fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be excited about</td>
<td>demand</td>
<td>be hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be guilty of</td>
<td>deny</td>
<td>be important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instead of</td>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>be impossible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be interested in</td>
<td>dislike</td>
<td>be interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward to</td>
<td>encourage</td>
<td>be necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be opposed to</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>be a pleasure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevent (someone) from</td>
<td>expect</td>
<td>be possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be scared of</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>be relaxing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop (someone) from</td>
<td>force</td>
<td>take effort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>succeed in</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>take energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take advantage of</td>
<td>hesitate</td>
<td>take money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be terrified of</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>take patience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank (someone) for</td>
<td>invite</td>
<td>take time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think of</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be tired of</td>
<td>like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be worried about</td>
<td>manage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1 325
### CHAPTER 15
Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2

**CONTENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>15-1</th>
<th>Infinitive of purpose: <em>in order to</em></th>
<th>15-6</th>
<th>Using a possessive to modify a gerund</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15-2</td>
<td>Adjectives followed by infinitives</td>
<td>15-7</td>
<td>Using verbs of perception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-3</td>
<td>Using infinitives with <em>too</em> and <em>enough</em></td>
<td>15-8</td>
<td>Using the simple form after <em>let</em> and <em>help</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-4</td>
<td>Passive and past forms of infinitives and gerunds</td>
<td>15-9</td>
<td>Using causative verbs: <em>make</em>, <em>have</em>, <em>get</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-5</td>
<td>Using gerunds or passive infinitives following <em>need</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 15-1 INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE: *IN ORDER TO*

| (a) | He came here *in order to study* English. |
| (b) | He came here *to study* English. |
| (c) | INCORRECT: He came here *for studying* English. |
| (d) | INCORRECT: He came here *for to study* English. |
| (e) | INCORRECT: He came here *for study* English. |
| (f) | I went to the store *for some bread*. |
| (g) | I went to the store *to buy some bread*. |

*In order to* is used to express *purpose*. It answers the question *"Why?"* *In order* is often omitted, as in (b).

To express *purpose*, use (*in order*) *to*, *not* *for*, with a verb.*

For can be used to express purpose, but it is a preposition and is followed by a noun object, as in (f).

*Exception: The phrase *be used* + *for* expresses the typical or general purpose of a thing. In this case, the preposition *for* is followed by a gerund: *A saw is used for cutting* wood. Also possible: *A saw is used to cut* wood.

However, to talk about a particular thing and a particular situation, *be used* + an infinitive is used: *A chain saw was used to cut* (NOT *for cutting*) *down the old oak tree.*

### EXERCISE 1. Error analysis: *IN ORDER TO*. (Chart 15-1)

*Directions: Correct the errors.*

1. I went to the library *for study* last night.

2. Helen borrowed my dictionary *for to look up* the spelling of "occurred."

3. The teacher opened the window *for letting* some fresh air in the room.

4. I came to this school *for learn* English.

5. I traveled to Osaka *for to visit* my sister.
EXERCISE 2. IN ORDER TO vs. FOR. (Chart 15-1)
Directions: Make up completions. Express the purpose of the action.

1. I went to Chicago to visit my relatives.
2. Tom went to Chicago for a business conference.
3. I went to the market for ____________________________
4. Mary went to the market to ____________________________
5. I went to the doctor to ____________________________
6. My son went to the doctor for ____________________________
7. I swim every day to ____________________________
8. My friend swims every day for ____________________________
9. I drove into the service station to ____________________________
10. They stopped at the service station for ____________________________

EXERCISE 3. IN ORDER TO. (Chart 15-1)
Directions: Add in order wherever possible. If nothing should be added, write 0.

1. I went to the garden center ___________ to get some fertilizer for my flowers.
2. When the teacher asked him a question, Jack pretended ______ to understand what she was saying.
3. My roommate asked me ___________ to clean up the dishes after dinner.
4. I bought a new screwdriver ___________ to repair my bicycle.
5. My mother always said I should eat lots of green vegetables ___________ to make my body strong.
6. Mustafa climbed onto a chair ___________ to change a light bulb in the ceiling.
7. I really want ___________ to learn Italian before I visit Venice next year.
8. I jog three times a week ___________ to stay healthy.
9. It is a good idea ___________ to know where your children are at all times.
10. I need to find her ___________ to talk to her.
11. Rita has to work at two jobs ___________ to support herself and her three children.
12. Jim finally went to the dentist to get some relief from his toothache.

13. It's easier for me to understand written English than it is to understand spoken English.

14. I practice speaking English into a tape recorder to improve my pronunciation.

15. It isn’t important to speak English without an accent as long as people understand what you're saying.

15-2 ADJECTIVES FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES

| (a) We were sorry to hear the bad news.                                      | Certain adjectives can be immediately followed by infinitives, as in (a) and (b). In general, these adjectives describe a person (or persons), not a thing. Many of these adjectives describe a person's feelings or attitudes. |
| (b) I was surprised to see Tim at the meeting.                               |使用者可以立即跟在不定式之后。如 (a) 和 (b) 所示。一般来说，这些形容词描绘人（或人），而不是事物。许多这些形容词描绘一个人的感受或态度。 |

SOME COMMON ADJECTIVES FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES

- glad to (do it)
- happy to
- pleased to
- delighted to
- content to
- relieved to
- lucky to
- fortunate to
- sorry to*
- sad to*
- upset to*
- disappointed to*
- proud to
- ashamed to
- ready to
- prepared to
- anxious to
- eager to
- willing to
- motivated to
- careful to
- hesitant to
- reluctant to
- afraid to
- likely to
- determined to
- unexpected to
- surprised to*
- hampered to*
- astonished to*
- shocked to*
- stunned to*

*The expressions with asterisks are usually followed by infinitive phrases with verbs such as see, learn, discover, find out, hear.

Exercise 4. Adjectives followed by infinitives. (Chart 15-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences, using the expressions listed in Chart 15-2 and your own words. Use infinitive phrases in your completions.

1. Maria always speeds on the expressway. She's . . .
   -> She's certain to get stopped by the police.
   -> She's likely to get a ticket.

2. There have been a lot of burglaries in my neighborhood recently, so I have started taking precautions. Now I am always very . . .

3. I've worked hard all day long. Enough's enough! I'm . . .

4. Next month, I'm going to a family reunion—the first one in 25 years. I'm very much looking forward to it. I'm . . .

5. Some children grow up in unhappy homes. My family, however, has always been loving and supportive. I'm . . .

6. Ivan's run out of money again, but he doesn't want anyone to know his situation. He needs money desperately, but he's . . .
7. Rosalyn wants to become an astronaut. That has been her dream since she was a little
girl. She has been working hard toward her goal and is ....

8. Mr. Wan was offered an excellent job in another country, but his wife and children don't
want to move. He's not sure what to do. Although he would like the job, he's ....

9. Our neighbors had extra tickets to the ballet, so they invited us to go with them. Since
both of us love the ballet, we were ....

10. Sally recently told me what my wayward brother is up to these days. I couldn't believe
my ears! I was ....

Exercise 5. Adjectives followed by infinitives. (Chart 15-2)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the cues.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Answer "yes" to the question. Use an infinitive phrase in
your response.

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): You saw your friend at the airport. Were you happy?
SPEAKER B (book closed): Yes. I was happy to see my friend at the airport.

1. ( . . . ) has a lot of good friends. Is he/she fortunate?
2. You're leaving on vacation soon. Are you eager?
3. You met ( . . . )'s wife/husband. Were you delighted?
4. You went to (name of a faraway place in the world) last summer. You saw ( . . . ) there.
   Were you surprised?

Switch roles.

5. You're going to take a test tomorrow. Are you prepared?
6. You're thinking about asking ( . . . ) a personal question. Are you hesitant?
7. Your friend was ill. Finally you found out that she was okay. Were you relieved?
8. You heard about ( . . . )'s accident. Were you sorry?

Exercise 6. Adjectives followed by infinitives. (Chart 15-2)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask the questions.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Answer in complete sentences.

1. What are you careful to do before you cross a busy street?
2. What are children sometimes afraid to do?
3. When you're tired in the evening, what are you content to do?
4. If one of your friends has a problem, what are you willing to do?
5. Sometimes when people don't know English very well, what are they reluctant to do?
6. If the teacher announces there is a test tomorrow, what will you be motivated to do?
7. What are you determined to do before you are 70 years old?
8. What are some things people should be ashamed to do?
9. Is there anything you are eager to do today or tomorrow?
10. In what ways are you a fortunate person?
11. Can you tell me something you were shocked to find out?/astonished to learn?
12. Can you tell me something you were disappointed to discover?/sad to hear?
Using infinitives with **too** and **enough**

**COMPARING**

(a) That box is *too heavy* for Bob to lift.
(b) That box is *very heavy*, but Bob can lift it.

(c) I am *strong enough to lift* that box. I can lift it.
(d) I have *enough strength to lift* that box.
(e) I have *strength enough to lift* that box.

In the speaker's mind, the use of *too* implies a negative result.

In (a): *too heavy* = *It is impossible* for Bob to lift that box.
In (b): *very heavy* = *It is possible but difficult* for Bob to lift that box.

*Enough* follows an adjective, as in (c).

Usually *enough* precedes a noun, as in (d). In formal English, it may follow a noun, as in (e).

---

**EXERCISE 7. Using infinitives with TOO and ENOUGH.** (Chart 15-3)

*Directions: Think of a negative result, and then complete the sentence with an infinitive phrase.*

1. That ring is too expensive. → Negative result: *I can't buy it.* That ring is too expensive for me to buy.
2. I'm too tired. → Negative result: *I can't/don't want to go to the meeting.* I'm too tired to go to the meeting.
3. It's too late. → Negative result: ...
4. It's too cold.
5. Nuclear physics is too difficult.
6. I'm too busy.
7. My son is too young.
8. The mountain cliff is too steep.

*Now think of a positive result, and complete the sentence with an infinitive phrase.*

9. That ring is very expensive, but it isn't too expensive → Positive result: *I can buy it.*

That ring isn't too expensive for me to buy.
10. I'm very tired, but I'm not too tired → Positive result: ...
11. My suitcase is very heavy, but it's not too heavy.
12. I'm very busy, but I'm not too busy.

---

**EXERCISE 8. Activity: using infinitives with TOO and ENOUGH.** (Chart 15-3)

*Directions: Discuss the questions.*

1. ( . . . )'s daughter is 18 months old. Is she too young or very young?
2. What is a child too young to do but an adult old enough to do?
3. Who had a good dinner last night? Was it too good or very good?
4. Is it very difficult or too difficult to learn English?
5. After you wash your clothes, are they too clean or very clean?
6. Who stayed up late last night? Did you stay up too late or very late?
7. What is your pocket big enough to hold? What is it too small to hold?
8. Compare a mouse with an elephant. Is a mouse too small or very small?
9. What is the highest mountain in (this country / the world)? Is it too high or very high?
10. What did you have enough time to do before class today?
11. What's the difference between the following situations?
   a. We don't have enough big envelopes.
   b. We don't have big enough envelopes.
12. If you apologize for something, do you say you're very sorry or too sorry?
13. What is the sun too bright for you to do?
14. What can't you do if a room is too dark?
15. In what circumstances would you say your cup of tea or coffee is too full?

### 15-4 PASSIVE AND PAST FORMS OF INFINITIVES AND GERUNDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORMS</th>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>PAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
<td>to see</td>
<td>to have seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>seeing</td>
<td>having seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSIVE</td>
<td>to be seen</td>
<td>to have been seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>being seen</td>
<td>having been seen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST INFINITIVE:** to have + past participle
(a) The rain seems to have stopped.

The event expressed by a past infinitive or past gerund happened before the time of the main verb. In (a): The rain seems now to have stopped a few minutes ago.*

**PAST GERUND:** having + past participle
(b) I appreciate having had the opportunity to meet the king.

In (b): I met the king yesterday. I appreciate now having had the opportunity to meet the king yesterday.*

**PASSIVE INFINITIVE:** to be + past participle
(c) I didn't expect to be invited to his party.

In (c): to be invited is passive. The understood fay-phrase is "by him": I didn't expect to be invited by him.

**PASSIVE GERUND:** being + past participle
(d) I appreciated being invited to your home.

In (d): being invited is passive. The understood fay-phrase is "by you": I appreciated being invited by you.

**PAST-PASSIVE INFINITIVE:** to have been + past participle
(e) Nadia is fortunate to have been given a scholarship.

In (e): Nadia was given a scholarship last month by her government. She is fortunate. Nadia is fortunate now to have been given a scholarship last month by her government.

**PAST-PASSIVE GERUND:** having been + past participle
(f) I appreciate having been told the news.

In (f): I was told the news yesterday by someone. I appreciate that. I appreciate now having been told the news yesterday by someone.

*If the main verb is past, the action of the past infinitive or gerund happened before a time in the past:
The rain seemed to have stopped. = The rain seemed at six P.M. to have stopped before six P.M.
I appreciated having had the opportunity to meet the king. = I met the king in 1995. In 1997 I appreciated having had the opportunity to meet the king in 1995.
EXERCISE 9. Passive and past forms of infinitives and gerunds. (Chart 15-4)
Directions: Supply an appropriate form for each verb in parentheses.

1. I don’t enjoy (laugh) **being laughed** at by other people.

2. I’m angry at him for **not telling / not having told** me the truth.

3. It is easy (fool) **to be fooled** by his lies.

4. I expected (invite) _ to the party, but I wasn’t.

5. Sometimes adolescents complain about not **understand** _ by their parents.

6. Your compositions are supposed (write) _ in ink.

7. Jin Won had a narrow escape. He was almost hit by a car. He barely avoided (hit) _ by a speeding automobile.

8. Ms. Thompson is always willing to help if there is a problem in the office, but she doesn’t want (call) _ at home unless there is an emergency.

9. Jack Welles has a good chance of **elect** _ . I know I’m going to vote for him.

10. Carlos appears (lose) _ , some weight. Has he been ill?

11. You must tell me the truth. I insist on (tell) _ the truth.

12. Don’t all of us want (love) _ and (need) _ by other people?

13. Dear Hiroki,

   I feel guilty about (write, not) _ to you sooner, but I’ve been swamped with work lately.

14. A: You know Jim Frankenstein, don’t you?
   B: Jim Frankenstein? I don’t think so. I don’t recall ever (meet) _ him.

15. Mr. Gow mentioned (injure) _ in an accident as a child, but he never told us the details.

16. Tim was in the army during the war. He was caught by the enemy, but he managed to escape. He is lucky (escape) _ with his life.

*The past gerund is used to emphasize that the action of the gerund took place before that of the main verb. However, often there is little difference in meaning between a simple gerund and a past gerund.*
17. A: Is Abdul a transfer student?
   B: Yes.
   A: Where did he go to school before he came here?
   B: I'm not sure, but I think he mentioned something about (go) ____________
       ____________ to UCLA or USC.

18. We would like (invite) ____________ to the president's reception at
    the Pearl Hotel last week, but we weren't.*

15-5 USING GERUNDS OR PASSIVE INFINITIVES

FOLLOWING NEED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(a) I need to borrow some money.</th>
<th>Usually an infinitive follows need, as in (a) and (b).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b) John needs to be told the truth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) The house needs painting.</td>
<td>In certain circumstances, a gerund may follow need. In this case, the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) The house needs to be painted.</td>
<td>gerund carries a passive meaning. Usually the situations involve fixing or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>improving something, (c) and (d) have the same meaning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 10. Using gerunds or passive infinitives following NEED. (Chart 15-5)

Directions: Supply an appropriate form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. The chair is broken. I need (fix) ______to fix______ it. The chair needs (fix)
   fixing/to be fixed.

2. The baby’s diaper is wet. It needs (change) ____________.

3. What a mess! This room needs (clean) __________________ up. We
   need (clean) ____________________ it up before the company arrives.

4. My shirt is wrinkled. It needs (iron) ____________________.

5. There is a hole in our roof. The roof needs (repair) _____________.

6. I have books and papers all over my desk. I need (take) ____________ some
   time to straighten up my desk. It needs (straighten) __________________ up.

7. The apples on the tree are ripe. They need (pick) _________________.

8. The dog’s been digging in the mud. He needs (wash) _________________.

*Sometimes native speakers use both a past modal and a past infinitive even though only one past form is
necessary: *We would have liked to have been invited*. Also possible, with the same meaning: *We would have liked to be invited*. 

Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2 333
EXERCISE 11. Gerunds vs. infinitives following NEED. (Chart 15-5)

Directions:
Look at the picture.
What needs doing/to be done?

EXERCISE 12. Using a possessive to modify a gerund. (Chart 15-6)

Directions: Combine the pairs of sentences. Change that fact to a gerund phrase. Use formal English. Discuss informal usage.

1. Mary won a scholarship. We are excited about that fact.
   → We are excited about Mary's (Mary) winning a scholarship.

2. He didn't want to go. I couldn't understand that fact.
   → I couldn't understand his (him) not wanting to go.

3. You took the time to help us. We greatly appreciate that fact.

4. We talked about him behind his back. The boy resented that fact.

5. They ran away to get married. That fact shocked everyone.

6. You are late to work every morning. I will no longer tolerate that fact.

7. Ann borrowed Sally's clothes without asking her first. Sally complained about that fact.

8. Helen is here to answer our questions about the company's new insurance plan. We should take advantage of that fact.
EXERCISE 13. Review: verb forms. (Charts 14-1 → 15-6)

Directions: Supply an appropriate form for each verb in parentheses.

1. Alice didn't expect (ask) ____________ to Bill's party.
2. I'm not accustomed to (drink) ____________ coffee with my meals.
3. I'll help you with your homework as soon as I finish (wash) ____________ the dishes.
4. She took a deep breath (relax) ____________ herself before she got up to give her speech.
5. I'm prepared (answer) ____________ any question that might be asked during my job interview tomorrow.
6. Matthew left without (tell) ____________ anyone.
7. It's useless. Give up. Enough's enough. Don't keep (beat) ____________ your head against a brick wall.
8. His (be, not) ____________ able to come is disappointing.
9. I hope (award) ____________ a scholarship for the coming semester.
10. We are very pleased (accept) ____________ your invitation.
11. I have considered (get) ____________ a part-time job (help) ____________ pay for my school expenses.
12. It is exciting (travel) ____________ to faraway places and (leave) ____________ one's daily routine behind.
13. (Help) ____________ the disadvantaged children learn how to read was a rewarding experience.
14. He wants (like) ____________ and (trust) ____________ by everyone.
15. I can't help (wonder) ____________ why Larry did such a foolish thing.
16. Mr. Carson is very lucky (choose) ____________ by the committee as their representative to the meeting in Paris.
17. (Live) ____________ in a city has certain advantages.
18. Keep on (do) ____________ whatever you were doing. I didn't mean (interrupt) ____________ you.
19. It is very kind of you (take) ____________ care of that problem for me.
20. She opened the window (let) ____________ in some fresh air.
21. They agreed (cooperate) ____________ with us to the fullest extent.
22. Jack wastes a lot of time (hang) ____________ out with his friends on street corners.
23. Did you remember (turn) ____________ in your assignment?
24. I don't remember ever (hear) ____________ that story before.
25. Does your son regret (leave) ___________ home and (go) ___________ to a foreign country (study) ___________?

26. I appreciate your (ask) ___________ my opinion on the matter.

27. You should stop (drive) ___________ if you get sleepy. It's dangerous (drive) ___________ when you're not alert.

28. I have trouble (fall) ___________ asleep at night.

29. After driving for three hours, we stopped (get) ___________ something to eat.

30. Please forgive me for (be, not) ___________ here to help you yesterday.

EXERCISE 14. Review: gerunds and infinitives. (Charts 14-1 → 15-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words. Each sentence should contain a GERUND or an INFINITIVE.

Example: You are required . . .

→ You are required to stop at the border when entering Canada by car.

1. Your not wanting . . .
2. It's important for . . .
3. I'll never forget . . .
5. I'm not willing . . .
6. My apartment needs . . .
7. . . . enough energy . . .
8. . . . in order to save . . .
9. . . . to be told about . . .
10. . . . had just begun . . . when . . .
11. Do you think it is easy . . .?
12. . . . my having been . . .
13. Have you ever considered . . .?
14. . . . is likely . . .
15. Most people object . . .
16. . . . try to avoid . . .

15-7 USING VERBS OF PERCEPTION

Certain verbs of perception are followed by either the simple form* or the -ing form** of a verb. There is often little difference in meaning between the two forms, except that the -ing form usually gives the idea of "while." In (b): I saw my friend while she was running down the street.

Sometimes (not always) there is a clear difference between using the simple form or the -ing form. The use of the -ing form gives the idea that an activity is already in progress when it is perceived, as in (e): The singing was in progress when I first heard it. In (f): I heard the singing from beginning to end. It was not in progress when I first heard it.

VERBS OF PERCEPTION FOLLOWED BY THE SIMPLE FORM OR THE -ING FORM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>see</th>
<th>look at</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>feel</th>
<th>smell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>notice</td>
<td>observe</td>
<td>listen to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The simple form of a verb = the infinitive form without "to." INCORRECT: I saw my friend to run down the street.

**The -ing form refers to the present participle.
EXERCISE 15. Using verbs of perception. (Chart 15-7)

PART I. Complete the sentences with any appropriate verbs. Both the simple form and the -ing form are possible with little, if any, difference in meaning.

1. Polly was working in her garden, so she didn't hear the phone _______.

2. I like to listen to the birds_________ when I get up early in the morning.

3. The guard observed a suspicious-looking person ________ into the bank.

4. There was an earthquake in my hometown last year. It was just a small one, but I could feel the ground__________.

5. I was almost asleep last night when I suddenly heard someone___________ on the door.

6. While I was waiting for my plane, I watched other planes_________ and___________.

PART II. Both the simple form and the -ing form are grammatically correct, so you can't make a grammar mistake. But a speaker might choose one over the other. Read the situation, then decide which form seems better to you in the sentence that contains a verb of perception. Remember that the -ing form gives the idea that an activity is in progress when it is perceived.

1. SITUATION: I was downtown yesterday. I saw the police. They were chasing a thief.

   When I was downtown yesterday, I saw the police________ a thief.

2. SITUATION: The front door slammed. I got up to see if someone had come in.

   When I heard the front door__________, I got up to see if someone had come in.

3. SITUATION: Uncle Jake is in the bedroom. He is snoring.

   I know Uncle Jake is in the bedroom because I can hear him__________

4. SITUATION: When I walked past the park, some children were playing Softball.

   When I walked past the park, I saw some children__________ Softball.

5. SITUATION: It was graduation day in the auditorium. When the school principal called my name, I walked to the front of the room.

   When I heard the school principal__________ my name, I walked to the front of the auditorium to receive my diploma.
6. SITUATION: I glanced out the window. Jack was walking toward the house. I was surprised.

I was surprised when I glanced out the window and saw Jack__________ toward the house.

7. SITUATION: Someone is calling for help in the distance. I suddenly hear that.

Listen! Do you hear someone__________ for help? I do.

8. SITUATION: My daughter's team plays soccer every weekend. I always watch the team when they play a game.

I enjoy watching my daughter __________ soccer every weekend.

9. SITUATION: I went to bed around eleven. At that time, the people in the next apartment were singing and laughing.

When I went to bed last night around eleven, I could hear the people in the next apartment__________ and___________. I had trouble getting to sleep because they were making so much noise.

10. SITUATION: A fly landed on the table. I swatted it with a rolled up newspaper.

As soon as I saw the fly__________ on the table, I swatted it with a rolled up newspaper.

11. SITUATION: I smell smoke. Something must be burning.

Do you smell something__________? I do.

12. SITUATION: I was sitting in class. Suddenly someone touched my shoulder.

I was startled in class yesterday when I felt someone__________ my shoulder. I didn't mind. It just surprised me. It was Olga. She wanted to borrow my dictionary.

[space]

EXERCISE 16. Activity: using verbs of perception. (Chart 15-7)

Directions: Describe what you see and hear.

1. What do you see happening around you right now?
2. Ask (...) to stand up and sit back down. What did you just see (...) do?
3. Close your eyes. What do you hear happening right now?
4. Ask (...) to say something. What did you just hear (...) say?
5. Ask (...) to do something. As he/she continues to do this, describe what you see and hear him/her doing.

15-8 USING THE SIMPLE FORM AFTER LET AND HELP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Let</th>
<th>Help</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) My father lets me drive his car.</td>
<td>(a) My father lets me drive his car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) I let my friend borrow my bicycle.</td>
<td>(b) I let my friend borrow my bicycle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Let's go to a movie.</td>
<td>(c) Let's go to a movie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) My brother helped me wash my car.</td>
<td>(d) My brother helped me wash my car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) My brother helped me to wash my car.</td>
<td>(e) My brother helped me to wash my car.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let is followed by the simple form of a verb, not an infinitive. Incorrect: My father lets me to drive his car.

Help is often followed by the simple form of a verb, as in (d). An infinitive is also possible, as in (e). Both (d) and (e) are correct.
Directions: Complete the sentences with verb phrases.

1. Don't let me \underline{forget to take my keys to the house with me.}
2. The teacher usually lets us ________________________________
3. Why did you let your roommate ________________________________
4. You shouldn't let other people ________________________________
5. A stranger helped the lost child ________________________________
6. It was very kind of my friend to help me ________________________________
7. Keep working. Don't let me ________________________________
8. Could you help me ________________________________

15-9 USING CAUSATIVE VERBS: \textit{MAKE, HAVE, GET}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{(a)} \textit{I made} my brother \textit{carry} my suitcase.
  \item \textbf{(b)} \textit{I had} my brother \textit{carry} my suitcase.
  \item \textbf{(c)} \textit{I got} my brother \textit{to carry} my suitcase.
\end{itemize}

\textit{Forms}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{X makes Y do something.} (simple form)
  \item \textit{X has Y do something.} (simple form)
  \item \textit{X gets Y to do something.} (infinitive)
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{(d)} Mrs. Lee \textit{made} her son \textit{clean} his room.
  \item \textbf{(e)} Sad movies \textit{make} me \textit{cry}.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Causative \textit{Make}}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{(d)} Mrs. Lee \textit{made} her son \textit{clean} his room.
  \item \textbf{(e)} Sad movies \textit{make} me \textit{cry}.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Causative \textit{Have}}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{(f)} I \textit{had} the plumber \textit{repair} the leak.
  \item \textbf{(g)} Jane \textit{had} the waiter \textit{bring} her some tea.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Causative \textit{Get}}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{(h)} The students \textit{got} the teacher \textit{to dismiss} class early.
  \item \textbf{(i)} Jack \textit{got} his friends \textit{to play} soccer with him after school.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Passive Causatives}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{(j)} I \textit{had my watch repaired (by someone).}
  \item \textbf{(k)} I \textit{got my watch repaired (by someone).}
\end{itemize}
EXERCISE 18. Causative verbs. (Chart 15-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. The doctor made the patient (stay) ______stay______ in bed.

2. Mrs. Crane had her house (paint) ______painted______.

3. The teacher had the class (write) ______write______ a 2000-word research paper.

4. I made my son (wash) ______wash______ the windows before he could go outside to play.

5. Kostas got some kids in the neighborhood (clean) ______clean______ out his garage.

6. I went to the bank to have a check (cash) ______cash______.

7. Tom had a bad headache yesterday, so he got his twin brother, Tim, (go) ______go______ to class for him. The teacher didn't know the difference.

8. When Scott went shopping, he found a jacket that he really liked. After he had the sleeves (shorten) ______shorten______, it fit him perfectly.

9. My boss made me (redo) ______redo______ my report because he wasn't satisfied with it.

10. Alice stopped at the service station to have the tank (fill) ______fill______.

11. I got Rosa (lend) ______lend______ me some money so I could go to a movie last night.

12. Mr. Fields went to a doctor to have a wart on his nose (remove) ______remove______.

13. I spilled some tomato sauce on my suit coat. Now I need to get my suit (clean) ______clean______.

14. Peeling onions always makes me (cry) ______cry______.

15. Tom Sawyer was supposed to paint the fence, but he didn't want to do it. He was a very clever boy. Somehow he got his friends (do) ______do______ it for him.

16. We had a professional photographer (take) ______take______ pictures of everyone who participated in our wedding.
EXERCISE 19. Causative verbs. (Chart 15-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with verb phrases.

1. I got my friend **to translate a letter for me.**
2. Sometimes parents make their children ____________________________
3. When I was at the restaurant, I had the waiter ____________________________
4. Many people take their cars to service stations to get the oil ____________________________
5. Teachers sometimes have their students ____________________________
6. I'm more than willing to help you ____________________________
7. Before I left on my trip, I had the travel agent ____________________________
8. My cousin's jokes always make me ____________________________
9. When I was a child, my parents wouldn't let me ____________________________
10. We finally got our landlady ____________________________

EXERCISE 20. Activity: causative verbs. (Chart 15-9)

Directions: Answer the questions in complete sentences.

1. Who has had something fixed recently? What was it? Who fixed it? Where did you go to get it repaired?
2. What did your parents make you do when you were a child? What did they let you do? What did they help you do?
3. In one of the jobs you've held in the past, what did your boss have you do?
4. Have you persuaded someone to do something recently? What did you get him/her to do?
5. Where do you usually go to get . . .
   a. a check cashed?
   b. your clothes drycleaned?
   c. your laundry done?
   d. your blood pressure checked?
   e. your hair cut?

EXERCISE 21. Error analysis: gerunds, infinitives, causatives. (Chapters 14 and 15)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Stop tell me what to do! Let me to make up my own mind.
2. My English is pretty good, but sometimes I have trouble to understand lectures at school.
3. When I entered the room, I found my wife to cry over the broken vase that had belonged to her great-grandmother.
4. Sara is going to spend next year for studying Chinese at a university in Taiwan.
5. I went to the pharmacy for having my prescription to be filled.

6. You shouldn't let children playing with matches.

7. When I got home, Irene was lying in bed think about what a wonderful time she'd had.

8. When Shelley needed a passport photo, she had her picture taking by a professional photographer.


10. Omar is at the park right now. He is sit on a park bench watch the ducks swimming in the pond. The sad expression on his face makes me to feel sorry for him.

EXERCISE 22. Review: verb forms. (Chapters 14 and 15)
Directions: Supply an appropriate form for each verb in parentheses.

1. As he contemplated the meaning of life, Edward stood on the beach (look) looking out over the ocean.

2. It was a hot day, and the work was hard. I could feel sweat (trickle) trickled down my back.

3. It is foolish (ignore) to ignore physical ailments.

4. You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make him (drink) drink.

5. My cousins helped me (move) moved into my new apartment.

6. I was tired, so I just watched them (play) played volleyball instead of (join) joining them.

7. Many people think Mr. Peel will win the election. He has a good chance of (elect) being elected.

8. If you hear any news, I want (tell) tell immediately.

9. Let's (have) have Ron and Maureen (join) join us for dinner tonight, okay?

10. I was getting sleepy, so I had my friend (drive) drove the car.
11. We sat in his kitchen (sip) ___________ very hot, strong tea and (eat) ___________ chunks of hard cheese.

12. Emily stopped her car (let) ___________ a black cat (run) ___________ across the street.

13. He's a terrific soccer player! Did you see him (make) ___________ that goal?

14. We spent the entire class period (talk) ___________ about the revolution.

15. I don't like (force) ___________ (leave) ___________ the room (study) ___________ whenever my roommate feels like (have) ___________ a party.

16. Yuko got along very well in France despite not (be) ___________ able to speak French. She used English a lot.

17. He's at an awkward age. He's old enough (have) ___________ adult problems but too young (know) ___________ how (handle) ___________ them.

18. (Look) ___________ at the car after the accident made him (realize) ___________ that he was indeed lucky (be) ___________ alive.

19. I'm tired. I wouldn't mind just (stay) ___________ home tonight and (get) ___________ to bed early.

20. I don't anticipate (have) ___________ any difficulties (adjust) ___________ to a different culture when I go abroad.

EXERCISE 23. Review: verb forms. (Chapters 14 and 15)

Directions: Complete the sentence with an appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.

1. My children enjoy (allow) ___________ to stay up late when there's something special on TV.

2. (Observe) ___________ the sun (climb) ___________ above the horizon at dawn makes one (realize) ___________ the earth is indeed turning.

3. John admitted (surprise) ___________ by the unexpected birthday party last night. We had a lot of fun (plan) ___________ it.
4. I don't understand how you got the wrong results. When I look over your notes, your chemistry experiment seems (perform)________________________correctly. But something is wrong somewhere.

5. The witness to the murder asked not (identify)________________________in the newspaper. She wanted her name kept secret.

6. It is generally considered impolite (pick)________________________your teeth at the dinner table.

7. I don't recall (meet)________________________Mr. Tanaka before. I'm sure I haven't. I'd like (introduce)________________________to him. Would you do the honors?

8. Ed's boss recommended him for the job. Ed was pleased (consider)________________________for the job even though he didn't get it.

9. I wasn't tired enough (sleep)________________________last night. For a long time, I just lay in bed (think)________________________about my career and my future.

10. It is the ancient task of the best artists among us (force)________________________us (use)________________________our ability (feel)________________________and (share)________________________emotions.

11. Jeff applied to medical school many months ago. Now he's so concerned about (accept)________________________into medical school that he's having a difficult time (concentrate)________________________on the courses he's taking this term.

12. It may be impossible (persuade)________________________my mother (give)________________________up her job even though she's having health problems. We can't even get her (cut)________________________down on her working hours. She enjoys (work)________________________so much that she refuses (retire)________________________and (take)________________________it easy. I admire her for (dedicate)________________________to her work, but I also want her to take care of her health.

13. Traffic has become too heavy for the Steinbergs (commute)________________________easily to their jobs in the city. They're considering (move)________________________to an apartment close to their places of work. They don't want (give)________________________up their present home, but they need (live)________________________in the city (be)________________________closer to their work so they can spend more time (do)________________________the things they really enjoy (do)________________________in their free time.
14. Last week I was sick with the flu. It made me feel awful. I didn't have enough energy to get out of bed. I just lay there feel sorry for myself. When my father heard me sneeze and cough, he opened my bedroom door and asked me if I needed anything. I was really happy to see his kind and caring face, but there wasn't anything he could do to make the flu go away.

15. Fish don't use their teeth for chew. They use them for grab, hold, or tear. Most fish swallow their prey whole.

16. I can't seem to get rid of the cockroaches in my apartment. Every night I see them run all over my kitchen counters. It drives me crazy. I'm considering having the whole apartment sprayed by a professional pest control expert.

17. The employees were unhappy when the new management took over. They weren't accustomed to being treated disrespectfully by the managers of the production departments. By threatening to stop working, they got the company to listen to their grievances. In the end, a strike was averted.

18. According to some estimates, well over half of the world's population is functionally illiterate. Imagine being a parent with a sick child and being unable to read the directions on a medicine bottle. We all know that it is important for medical directions to be understood clearly. Many medical professionals are working today to bridge the literacy gap by teaching health care through pictures.

☐ EXERCISE 24. Error analysis: gerunds, infinitives, causatives. (Chapters 14 and 15)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. My parents made me to promise to write them once a week.

2. I don't mind to have a roommate.

3. Most students want return home as soon as possible.

4. When I went to shopping last Saturday, I saw a man to drive his car onto the sidewalk.

5. I asked my roommate to let me to use his shoe polish.
6. To learn about another country it is very interesting.

7. I don't enjoy to play card games.

8. I heard a car door to open and closing.

9. I had my friend to lend me his car.

10. I tried very hard to don't make any mistakes.

11. You should visit my country. It is too beautiful.

12. The music director tapped his baton for beginning the rehearsal.

13. Some people prefer to save their money to spend it.

14. The task of find a person who could help us wasn't difficult.

15. All of us needed to went to the cashier's window.

16. I am looking forward to go to swim in the ocean.

17. When your planting a garden, it's important to be known about soils.

18. My mother always make me to be slow down if she think I am driving to fast.

19. One of our fights ended up with me having to sent to the hospital for getting stitches.

20. Please promise not telling anybody my secret.

21. I would appreciate having heard from you soon.

22. Maria has never complained about have a handicap.

23. Lillian deserves to be tell the truth about what happened last night.

24. Barbara always makes me laughing. She has a great sense of humor.

25. AH no speak Spanish, and Juan not know Arabic. But they communicate well by speak English when they be together.

26. I enjoyed to talk to her on the phone. I look forward to see her next week.

27. During a fire drill, everyone is required leaving the building.

28. Ski in the Alps was a big thrill for me.

29. Don't keep to be asking me the same questions over and over.

30. When I entered the room, I found my young son stand on the kitchen table.
EXERCISE 25. Writing. (Chapters 14 and 15)

Directions: Choose one to write about.

1. Write about your first day or week here (in this city/at this school/etc.). Did you have any unusual, funny, or difficult experiences? What were your first impressions and reactions? Whom did you meet?

2. Write about your childhood. What are some of the pleasant memories you have of your childhood? Do you have any unpleasant memories?

3. Whom do you like to spend some of your free time with? What do you enjoy doing together? Include an interesting experience the two of you have had.

EXERCISE 26. Writing. (Chapters 14 and 15)

Directions: Write a composition for me, your reader, in which you explain exactly how to do something. Choose any topic that you know well. Assume that I know almost nothing about your topic. I have not had the experiences you have had. I don't know what you know. You must teach me. In your composition, use the words "I" and "you." Explain why/how you know about this topic. Address your information directly to your reader.

Possible topics:

- How to: buy a used car
- travel to a particular place
- open a bank account
- get a job
- design a bridge
- plant a garden
- rent an apartment
- register at a hotel
- breed dairy cows
- interpret an X-ray
- change a flat tire
- play a guitar
- catch a fish
- prepare a meal
- write a story
- paint a room
- repair a car
- study a language
- organize a meeting
- decorate a home
- teach a class
- maintain a farm
- start a business
- live abroad
- play a game
- take care of someone who has the flu

Example of an introductory paragraph:

Have you ever thought about buying a used car? When I was in my late teens, I decided I had to have a car. I worked hard and saved my money. When the time came, I convinced my best friend to accompany me to a used car lot. I didn't really know what I was doing, so I knew I needed him to help me. When we got to the lot, the salesman had us look at lots of cars. Suddenly we came upon the car of my dreams: a small, black sports convertible. It was classy, comfortable, shiny, and it had leather seats, not to mention a powerful engine and lots of speed. My friend urged me to think it over, but I was so excited I handed the salesman my check for the first of many payments. Of course, I had no idea that the car was simply a beautiful pile of junk. I learned that later when everything started to go wrong with it. I'm older and wiser now, and even though I'm not an expert on automobiles, I'd like to share my experiences with you and discuss what you should consider before you buy a used car.
CONTENTS

16-1 Parallel structure
16-2 Paired conjunctions: both . . . and; not only . . . but also; either . . . or; neither . . . nor
16-3 Combining independent clauses with coordinating conjunctions

16-1 PARALLEL STRUCTURE

One use of a conjunction is to connect words or phrases that have the same grammatical function in a sentence. This use of conjunctions is called "parallel structure." The conjunctions used in this pattern are and, but, or, nor. These words are called "coordinating conjunctions."

(a) Steve and his friend are coming to dinner.
(b) Susan raised her hand and snapped her fingers.
(c) He is waving his arms and (is) shouting at us.
(d) These shoes are old but comfortable.
(e) He wants to watch TV or (to) listen to some music.

(f) Steve, Joe, and Alice are coming to dinner.
(g) Susan raised her hand, snapped her fingers, and asked a question.
(h) The colors in that fabric are red, gold, black, and green.
(i) INCORRECT: Steve, and Joe are coming to dinner.

A parallel structure may contain more than two parts. In a series, commas are used to separate each unit. The final comma that precedes the conjunction is optional; also correct: Steve, Joe and Alice are coming to dinner.

In (a): noun + and + noun
In (b): verb + and + verb
In (c): verb + and + verb (The second auxiliary may be omitted if it is the same as the first auxiliary.)
In (d): adjective + but + adjective
In (e): infinitive + or + infinitive (The second to is usually omitted.)

A parallel structure may contain more than two parts. In a series, commas are used to separate each unit. The final comma that precedes the conjunction is optional; also correct: Steve, Joe and Alice are coming to dinner.

Note: No commas are used if there are only two parts to a parallel structure.

EXERCISE 1. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)

Directions: Underline the parallel structure in each sentence and give the pattern that is used, as shown in the examples.

1. The old man is extremely kind and generous.  adjective + and + adjective
2. He received a pocket calculator and a wool sweater for his birthday.  noun + and + noun
3. She spoke angrily and bitterly about the war. and
4. I looked for my book but couldn't find it. but
5. I hope to go to that university and study under Dr. Liu. and
6. In my spare time, I enjoy reading novels or watching television. or
7. He will leave at eight and arrive at nine. and
8. He should have broken his engagement to Beth and married Sue instead. and

EXERCISE 2. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)
Directions: Parallel structure makes repeating the same words unnecessary.* Combine the given sentences into one concise sentence that contains parallel structure. Punctuate carefully.

1. Mary opened the door. Mary greeted her guests. → Mary opened the door and greeted her guests.
2. Mary is opening the door. Mary is greeting her guests.
3. Mary will open the door. Mary will greet her guests.
4. Alice is kind. Alice is generous. Alice is trustworthy.
5. Please try to speak more loudly. Please try to speak more clearly.
6. He gave her flowers on Sunday. He gave her candy on Monday. He gave her a ring on Tuesday.
7. While we were in New York, we attended an opera. While we were in New York, we ate at marvelous restaurants. While we were in New York, we visited some old friends.
8. He decided to quit school. He decided to go to California. He decided to find a job.
9. I am looking forward to going to Italy. I am looking forward to eating wonderful pasta every day.
10. I should have finished my homework. I should have cleaned up my room.
11. The boy was old enough to work. The boy was old enough to earn some money.
12. He preferred to play baseball. Or he preferred to spend his time in the streets with other boys.
13. I like coffee. I do not like tea. → I like coffee but not tea.**
14. I have met his mother. I have not met his father.
15. Jake would like to live in Puerto Rico. He would not like to live in Iceland.

*This form of parallel structure, in which unnecessary words are omitted but are understood, is called "ellipsis."

**Sometimes a comma precedes but not: I like coffee, but not tea.
EXERCISE 3. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)

Directions: In each group, complete the unfinished sentence. Then combine the sentences into one concise sentence that contains parallel structure. Punctuate carefully.

1. The country lane was narrow.
   The country lane was steep.
   The country lane was steep, and ____________
   The country lane was narrow, steep, and muddy.

2. I like to become acquainted with the people of other countries.
   I like to become acquainted with the customs of other countries.
   I like to become acquainted with ____________ of other countries.

3. I dislike living in a city because of the air pollution.
   I dislike living in a city because of the crime.
   I dislike living in a city because of ____________

4. We discussed some of the social problems of the United States.
   We discussed some of the political problems of the United States.
   We discussed some of the ____________ problems of the United States.

5. Hawaii has ____________
   Hawaii has many interesting tropical trees.
   Hawaii has many interesting tropical flowers.
   Hawaii has beautiful beaches.

6. Mary Hart would make a good president because she ____________
   Mary Hart would make a good president because she works effectively with others.
   Mary Hart would make a good president because she has a reputation for integrity.
   Mary Hart would make a good president because she has a reputation for independent thinking.
EXERCISE 4. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)
Directions: With your own words, complete each sentence, using parallel structure.

1. Judge Holmes served the people of this country with impartiality, ability, and ___integrity___.

2. Ms. Polanski has proven herself to be a sincere, hardworking, and ___supervisor___.

3. The professor walked through the door and ____________________.

4. I was listening to music and ____________________ when I heard a knock at the door.

5. I get up at seven every morning, eat a light breakfast, and ____________________.

6. ____________________ and attending concerts in the park are two of the things my wife and I like to do on summer weekends.

7. Our whole family enjoys camping. We especially enjoy fishing in mountain streams and ____________________.

8. Resolve to be tender with the young, compassionate with the aged, understanding of those who are wrong, and ____________________.

Sometime in your life, you will have been all of these.

EXERCISE 5. Error analysis: parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)
Directions: Correct the errors.

1. By obeying the speed limit, we can save energy, lives, and it costs us less.

2. My home offers me a feeling of security, warm, and love.

3. The pioneers labored to clear away the forest and planting crops.

4. When I refused to help her, she became very angry and shout at me.

5. In my spare time, I enjoy taking care of my aquarium and to work on my stamp collection.

6. With their keen sight, fine hearing, and they have a refined sense of smell, wolves hunt elk, deer, moose, and caribou.

7. All plants need light, to have a suitable climate, and an ample supply of water and minerals from the soil.
8. Slowly and being cautious, the firefighter ascended the burned staircase.

9. The Indian cobra snake and the king cobra use poison from their fangs in two ways: by injecting it directly into their prey or they spit it into the eyes of the victim.

10. On my vacation I lost a suitcase, broke my glasses, and I missed my flight home.

11. When Anna moved, she had to rent an apartment, make new friends, and to find a job.

EXERCISE 6. Error analysis: parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)

Directions: Correct the errors.

What do people in your country think of bats? Are they mean and scary creatures, or are they symbols of happiness and lucky?

In Western countries, many people have an unreasoned fear of bats. According to scientist Dr. Sharon Horowitz, bats are beneficial mammals and harmless. "When I was a child, I believed that a bat would attack me and tangled itself in my hair. Now I know better," said Dr. Horowitz.

Contrary to popular Western myths, bats do not attack humans and not blind. Although a few bats may be infected, they are not major carriers of rabies or carry other dread diseases. Bats help natural plant life by pollinating plants, spreading seeds, and they eat insects. If you get rid of bats that eat overripe fruit, then fruit flies can flourish and destroying the fruit industry.

According to Dr. Horowitz, bats make loving pets, and they are trainable, and are gentle pets. Not many people, however, are known to have bats as pets, and bats themselves prefer to avoid people.
16-2 PAIRED CONJUNCTIONS: BOTH . . . AND; NOT ONLY . . . BUT ALSO; EITHER . . . OR; NEITHER . . . NOR

(a) Both my mother and my sister are here.
(b) Not only my mother but also my sister is here.
(c) Not only my sister but also my parents are here.
(d) Neither my mother nor my sister is here.
(e) Neither my sister nor my parents are here.

(f) The research project will take both time and money.
(g) Yesterday it not only rained but (also) snowed.
(h) I'll take either chemistry or physics next quarter.
(i) That book is neither interesting nor accurate.

Two subjects connected by both . . . and take a plural verb, as in (a).
When two subjects are connected by not only . . . but also, either . . . or, or neither . . . nor, the subject that is closer to the verb determines whether the verb is singular or plural.

Notice the parallel structure in the examples. The same grammatical form should follow each part of the paired conjunctions.*

In (f): both + noun + and + noun
In (g): not only + verb + but also + verb
In (h): either + noun + or + noun
In (i): neither + adjective + nor + adjective

*Paired conjunctions are also called "correlative conjunctions."

D EXERCISE 7. Paired conjunctions. (Chart 16-2)
Directions: Add is or are to each sentence.

1. Both the teacher and the student ________ here.
2. Neither the teacher nor the student ________ here.
3. Not only the teacher but also the student ________ here.
4. Not only the teacher but also the students ________ here.
5. Either the students or the teacher ________ planning to come.
6. Either the teacher or the students ________ planning to come.
7. Both the students and the teachers ________ planning to come.
8. Both the students and the teacher ________ planning to come.

□ EXERCISE 8. Error analysis: paired conjunctions. (Chart 16-2)
Directions: What is wrong with these sentences?

1. Either John will call Mary or Bob.
2. Not only Sue saw the mouse but also the cat.
3. Both my mother talked to the teacher and my father.
4. Either Mr. Anderson or Ms. Wiggins are going to teach our class today.
5. I enjoy not only reading novels but also magazines.
6. Oxygen is plentiful. Both air contains oxygen and water.
EXERCISE 9. Paired conjunctions. (Chart 16-2)

Directions: Answer the questions, using paired conjunctions. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

PART I. Use both ... and.

1. You have met his father. Have you met his mother?
   → Yes, I have met both his father and his mother.

2. The driver was injured in the accident. Was the passenger injured in the accident?

3. Wheat is grown in Kansas. Is corn grown in Kansas?

4. He buys used cars. Does he sell used cars?

5. You had lunch with your friends. Did you have dinner with them?

6. The city suffers from air pollution. Does it suffer from water pollution?

PART II. Use not only ... but also.

7. I know you are studying math. Are you studying chemistry too?
   → Yes, I'm studying not only math but also chemistry.

8. I know his cousin is living with him. Is his mother-in-law living with him too?

9. I know your country has good universities. Does the United States have good universities too?

10. I know you lost your wallet. Did you lose your keys too?

11. I know she goes to school. Does she have a full-time job too?

12. I know he bought a coat. Did he buy a new pair of shoes too?

PART III. Use either ... or.

13. Omar has your book, or Rosa has your book. Is that right?
   → Yes, either Omar or Rosa has my book.

14. You're going to give your friend a book for her birthday, or you're going to give her a pen. Is that right?

15. Your sister will meet you at the airport, or your brother will meet you there. Right?

16. They can go swimming, or they can play tennis. Is that right?

17. You're going to vote for Mr. Smith, or you're going to vote for Mr. Jones. Right?

18. You'll go to New Orleans for your vacation, or you'll go to Miami. Right?

PART IV. Use neither ... nor.

19. He doesn't like coffee. Does he like tea?
   → No, he likes neither coffee nor tea.

20. Her husband doesn't speak English. Do her children speak English?

21. The students aren't wide awake today. Is the teacher wide awake today?

22. They don't have a refrigerator for their new apartment. Do they have a stove?

23. She doesn't enjoy hunting. Does she enjoy fishing?

24. The result wasn't good. Was the result bad?
EXERCISE 10. Paired conjunctions. (Chart 16-2)

Directions: Combine the following into sentences that contain parallel structure. Use both... and; not only... but also; either... or; neither... nor.

1. He does not have a pen. He does not have paper.
   → He has neither a pen nor paper.


3. You can have tea, or you can have coffee.

4. Arthur is not in class today. Ricardo is not in class today.

5. Arthur is absent. Ricardo is absent.

6. We can fix dinner for them here, or we can take them to a restaurant.

7. She wants to buy a Chevrolet, or she wants to buy a Toyota.

8. The leopard faces extinction. The tiger faces extinction.

9. The library doesn’t have the book I need. The bookstore doesn’t have the book I need.

10. We could fly, or we could take the train.

11. The president’s assistant will not confirm the story. The president’s assistant will not deny the story.

12. Coal is an irreplaceable natural resource. Oil is an irreplaceable natural resource.

13. Smallpox is a dangerous disease. Malaria is a dangerous disease.

14. Her roommates don’t know where she is. Her brother doesn’t know where she is.

15. According to the news report, it will snow tonight, or it will rain tonight.

16-3 COMBINING INDEPENDENT CLAUSES WITH COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

(a) It was raining hard. There was a strong wind.
(b) INCORRECT PUNCTUATION:
   It was raining hard, there was a strong wind.

(c) It was raining hard, and there was a strong wind.
(d) It was raining hard and there was a strong wind.
(e) It was raining hard. And there was a strong wind.

(f) He was tired, so he went to bed.
(g) The child hid behind his mother’s skirt, for he was afraid of the dog.
(h) She did not study, yet she passed the exam.

Example (a) contains two independent clauses (i.e., two complete sentences). Notice the punctuation. A period, NOT A COMMA, is used to separate two independent clauses. The punctuation in (b) is not correct; the error in (b) is called “a run-on sentence.”

A conjunction may be used to connect two independent clauses. PUNCTUATION:
Usually a comma immediately precedes the conjunction, as in (c).
In short sentences, the comma is sometimes omitted, as in (d).
In informal writing, a conjunction sometimes begins a sentence, as in (e).

In addition to and, but, or, and nor, other conjunctions are used to connect two independent clauses: so (meaning "therefore, as a result")
   for (meaning "because")
   yet (meaning "but, nevertheless")
A comma almost always precedes so, for, and yet when they are used as coordinating conjunctions.**

* In British English, a period is called "a full stop."

** So, for, and yet have other meanings in other structures: e.g., He is not so tall as his brother. (so = as) We waited for the bus. (for = a preposition) She hasn’t arrived yet. (yet = an adverb meaning "up to this time")
EXERCISE 11. Combining independent clauses with coordinating conjunctions.
(Chart 16-3)

Directions: Punctuate the sentences by adding commas or periods. Do not add any words. Capitalize where necessary.

1. The boys walked the girls ran. → The boys walked. The girls ran.
2. The teacher lectured the students took notes.
3. The teacher lectured and the students took notes.
4. Elena came to the meeting but Pedro stayed home.
5. Elena came to the meeting her brother stayed home.
6. Her academic record was outstanding yet she was not accepted by the university.
7. I have not finished writing my term paper yet I will not be finished until sometime next week.
8. We had to go to the grocery store for some milk and bread.
9. We had to go to the grocery store for there was nothing in the house to fix for dinner.
10. Kostas didn't have enough money to buy an airplane ticket so he couldn't fly home for the holiday.

EXERCISE 12. Combining independent clauses with coordinating conjunctions.
(Chart 16-3)

Directions: Punctuate the sentences by adding commas or periods. Do not add any words. Capitalize where necessary.

1. A thermometer is used to measure temperature a barometer measures air pressure.
2. Daniel made many promises but he had no intention of keeping them.
3. I always enjoyed mathematics in high school so I decided to major in it in college.
4. Anna is in serious legal trouble for she had no car insurance at the time of the accident.
5. Last night Martha had to study for a test so she went to the library.
6. The ancient Egyptians had good dentists archaeologists have found mummies that had gold fillings in their teeth.
7. Both John and I had many errands to do yesterday John had to go to the post office and the bookstore I had to go to the post office the travel agency and the bank.
8. I did not like the leading actor yet the movie was quite good on the whole.

9. The team of researchers has not finished compiling the statistics yet their work will not be made public until later.

10. We have nothing to fear for our country is strong and united.

11. He slapped his desk in disgust he had failed another examination and had ruined his chances for a passing grade in the course.

12. I struggled to keep my head above water I tried to yell for help but no sound came from my mouth.

13. The earthquake was devastating tall buildings crumbled and fell to the earth.

14. It was a wonderful picnic the children waded in the stream collected rocks and insects and flew kites the teenagers played an enthusiastic game of baseball the adults busied themselves preparing the food supervising the children and playing a game or two of volleyball.

15. Some people collect butterflies for a hobby these collectors capture them with a net and put them in a jar that has poison in it the dead butterflies are then mounted on a board.

16. Caterpillars eat plants and cause damage to some crops but adult butterflies feed principally on nectar from flowers and do not cause any harm.

17. The butterfly is a marvel it begins as an ugly caterpillar and turns into a work of art.

18. The sight of a butterfly floating from flower to flower on a warm sunny day brightens anyone's heart a butterfly is a charming and gentle creature.

19. When cold weather comes some butterflies travel great distances to reach tropical climates.*

20. Butterflies are admired throughout the world because they are beautiful they can be found on every continent except Antarctica.*

*See Chart 5-1, p. 70, for ways to punctuate sentences that contain adverb clauses.
EXERCISE 13. Writing. (Chapter 16)

Directions: Write two descriptive paragraphs on one of the topics below. The first paragraph should be a draft, and the second should be a "tightened" revision of the first. Look for places where two or three sentences can be combined into one by using parallel structure. Pay special attention to punctuation, and be sure all of your commas and periods are used correctly.

Topics:
1. Give a physical description of your place of residence (apartment, dorm room, etc.)
2. Describe the characteristics and activities of a successful student.
3. Give your reader directions for making a particular food dish.

Example:

FIRST DRAFT

To make spaghetti sauce, you will need several ingredients. First, you will need some ground beef. Probably about one pound of ground beef will be sufficient. You should also have an onion. If the onions are small, you should use two. Also, find a green pepper and put it in the sauce. Of course, you will also need some tomato sauce or tomatoes.

REVISION

To make spaghetti sauce you will need one pound of ground beef, one large or two small onions, a green pepper, and some tomato sauce or tomatoes.
CHAPTER 1
Adverb Clauses

CONTENTS

17-1 Introduction
17-2 Using adverb clauses to show cause and effect
17-3 Expressing contrast (unexpected result): using even though
17-4 Showing direct contrast: while and whereas
17-5 Expressing conditions in adverb clauses: if-clauses
17-6 Adverb clauses of condition: using whether or not and even if
17-7 Adverb clauses of condition: using in case and in the event that
17-8 Adverb clauses of condition: using unless
17-9 Adverb clauses of condition: using only if

17-1 INTRODUCTION

(a) When we were in New York, we saw several plays.
(b) We saw several plays when we were in New York.

When we were in New York is an adverb clause.
PUNCTUATION: When an adverb clause precedes an independent clause, as in (a), a comma is used to separate the clauses. When the adverb clause follows, as in (b), usually no comma is used.

(c) Because he was sleepy, he went to bed.
(d) He went to bed because he was sleepy.

Like when, because introduces an adverb clause. Because he was sleepy is an adverb clause.

(e) INCORRECT: When we were in New York. We saw several plays.
(f) INCORRECT: He went to bed. Because he was sleepy.

Adverb clauses are dependent clauses. They cannot stand alone as a sentence in written English. They must be connected to an independent clause.*

SUMMARY LIST OF WORDS USED TO INTRODUCE ADVERB CLAUSES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TIME</th>
<th>CAUSE AND EFFECT</th>
<th>CONTRAST</th>
<th>CONDITION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td>by the time (that)</td>
<td>even though</td>
<td>if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>once</td>
<td>although</td>
<td>unless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when</td>
<td>as/so long as</td>
<td>though</td>
<td>only if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while</td>
<td>whenever</td>
<td></td>
<td>whether or not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>every time (that)</td>
<td></td>
<td>even if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as soon as</td>
<td>the first time (that)</td>
<td>while</td>
<td>in case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since</td>
<td>the last time (that)</td>
<td>whereas</td>
<td>in the event that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>until</td>
<td>the next time (that)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See Chart 13-1, p. 267, for the definition of dependent and independent clauses.

**Words that introduce adverb clauses are called "subordinating conjunctions."
EXERCISE 1. Adverb clauses. (Chart 17-1)
Directions: Add periods, commas, and capitalization. Do not change, add, or omit any words. Underline each adverb clause. (NOTE: Item 12 contains an adjective clause. Item 13 contains an adjective clause and a noun clause. Can you find these other dependent clauses?)

1. Sue was in the other room when the phone rang as soon as she heard it she ran to the front room to answer it.
   - > Sue was in the other room when the phone rang. As soon as she heard it, she ran to the front room to answer it.

2. When it began to rain he closed the windows.

3. He closed the windows when it began to rain.

4. As soon as the rain began the children wanted to go outdoors they love to play outside in the warm summer rain I used to do the same thing when I was a child.

5. Jack got to the airport early after he checked in at the airline counter he went to the waiting area near his gate he sat and read until his flight was announced.

6. Jack walked onto the plane found his seat and stowed his bag in an overhead compartment.

7. Before the plane took off he fastened his seat belt and put his seat in an upright position.

8. Jack's wife doesn't like to fly because she gets nervous on airplanes.
9. When Jack and his wife go on vacation they have to drive or take the train because his wife is afraid of flying.

10. I had a cup of tea before I left for work this morning but I didn't have anything to eat. I rarely eat breakfast.

11. After Ellen gets home from work she likes to read the newspaper she follows the same routine every day after work as soon as she gets home she changes her clothes gets a snack and a drink and sits down in her favorite chair to read the newspaper in peace and quiet she usually has about half an hour to read the paper before her husband arrives home from his job.

12. When you speak to someone who is hard of hearing you do not have to shout it is important to face the person directly and speak clearly my elderly father is hard of hearing but he can understand me if I face him speak slowly and say each word clearly.

13. Greg Adams has been blind since he was two years old today he is a key scientist in a computer company he is able to design complex electronic equipment because he has a special computer that reads writes and speaks out loud his blindness neither helps nor hinders him it is irrelevant to how well he does his job.

---

**EXERCISE 2. Review of adverb clauses of time.**  
(Chapter 5 and Chart 17-1)  
*Directions:* Complete the sentences. Punctuate carefully. Pay special attention to verb tense usage.

1. Since I came to ....
2. Just as I was falling asleep last night ....
3. I'll help you with your homework as soon as I ....
4. I was late. By the time I got to the airport ....
5. One of my friends gets nervous every time ....
6. I will be here until I ....
7. .... as long as I live.
8. I heard .... while I ....
9. Once summer/winter comes ....
10. Shortly before I____
11. I have been in .... for .... By the time I leave, I ....
12. The last time I ....
13. The next time you ....
14. I .... just as soon as ....
15. Not long after I ....
16. I had already .... when ....
17. Whenever____
18. Ever since ....
## USING ADVERB CLAUSES TO SHOW CAUSE AND EFFECT

| because         | (a) *Because he was sleepy,* he went to bed.  
|                 | (b) He went to bed *because he was sleepy.*  
|                 | An adverb clause may precede or follow the independent clause. Notice the punctuation in (a) and (b). |
| now that        | (c) *Now that the semester is over,* I'm going to rest a few days and then take a trip.  
|                 | (d) Jack lost his job. *Now that he's unemployed,* he can't pay his bills.  
|                 | *Now that* means "because now." In (c): *Now that the semester is over* means "because the semester is now over." *Now that* is used for present causes of present or future situations. |
| since           | (e) *Since Monday is a holiday,* we don't have to go to work.  
|                 | (f) *Since you're a good cook and I'm not,* you should cook the dinner.  
|                 | When *since* is used to mean "because," it expresses a known cause; it means "because it is a fact that" or "given that it is true that." Cause and effect sentences with *since* say: "Given the fact that X is true, Y is the result." In (e): "Given the fact that Monday is a holiday, we don't have to go to work."  
|                 | Note: *Since* has two meanings. One is "because." It is also used in time clauses: e.g., *Since I came here,* I have met many people. See Chart 5-2, p. 72. |

### EXERCISE 3. Using adverb clauses to show cause and effect. (Chart 17-2)

**Directions:** Combine the sentences, using the word or phrase in parentheses. Add commas where necessary.

1. We can go swimming every day. The weather is warm.  
   (now that) → We can go swimming every day now that the weather is warm.

2. All of the students had done poorly on the test. The teacher decided to give it again.  
   (since) → Since all of the students had done poorly on the test, the teacher decided to give it again.

3. Cold air hovers near the earth. It is heavier than hot air.  
   (because)

4. You paid for the theater tickets. Please let me pay for our dinner.  
   (since)

5. Larry is finally caught up on his work. He can start his vacation tomorrow.  
   (now that)

6. Our TV set was broken. We listened to the news on the radio.  
   (because)

7. My brother got married last month. He's a married man now, so he has more responsibilities.  
   (now that)

8. Oil is an irreplaceable natural resource. We must do whatever we can in order to conserve it.  
   (since)

9. Do you want to go for a walk? The rain has stopped.  
   (now that)

10. Many young people move to the cities in search of employment. There are few jobs available in the rural areas.  
    (since)

11. The civil war has ended. A new government is being formed.  
    (now that)
12. Ninety-two thousand people already have reservations with an airline company for a trip to the moon. I doubt that I'll get the chance to go on one of the first tourist flights.  (since)

□ EXERCISE 4. Using adverb clauses to show cause and effect. (Chart 17-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Punctuate carefully.

1. Now that I've finally finished . . .
2. The teacher didn't . . . because . . .
3. Since it's too expensive to . . .
4. Jack can't stay out all night with his friends now that . . .
5. Since we don't have class tomorrow . . .

17-3 EXPRESSING CONTRAST (UNEXPECTED RESULT): USING EVEN THOUGH

(a)  *Because* the weather was cold, I *didn't go* swimming.
(b)  *Even though* the weather was cold, I *went* swimming.
(c)  *Because* I wasn't tired, I *didn't go* to bed.
(d)  *Even though* I wasn't tired, I *went* to bed.

*Because* is used to express expected results.
*Even though* is used to express unexpected results.
Note: Like *because, even though* introduces an adverb clause.
EXERCISE 5. Using EVEN THOUGH. (Chart 17-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using either *even though* or *because*.

1. Tim's in good shape physically *even though* he doesn't get much exercise.
2. Larry's in good shape physically *because* he gets a lot of exercise.
3. I put on my sunglasses *even though* it was a dark, cloudy day.
4. I put on my sunglasses *because* the sun was bright.
5. *Even though* Maria has a job, she doesn't make enough money to support her four children.
6. *Even though* Anna has a job, she is able to pay her rent and provide food for her family.
7. Susan didn't learn Spanish *because* she lived in Mexico for a year.
8. Joe speaks Spanish well *because* he lived in Mexico for a year.
9. Jing-Won jumped into the river to rescue the little girl who was drowning *even though* he wasn't a good swimmer.
10. A newborn kangaroo can find its mother's pouch *even though* its eyes are not yet open.
11. Some people protest certain commercial fishing operations *because* dolphins, considered to be highly intelligent mammals, are killed unnecessarily.
12. *Even though* the earthquake damaged the bridge across Skunk River, the Smiths were able to cross the river *because* they had a boat.

EXERCISE 6. Using EVEN THOUGH. (Chart 17-3)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

**Speaker A:** Your book is open. Give Student B the cues in the text.

**Speaker B:** Your book is closed. Answer each question by using a sentence with *even though*. Begin your response with either *yes* or *no*.

Examples:

**SPEAKER A (book open):** It was raining. Did you go to the zoo anyway?

**SPEAKER B (book closed):** Yes, even though it was raining, I went to the zoo.

**SPEAKER A (book open):** You studied hard. Did you pass the test?

**SPEAKER B (book closed):** No, even though I studied hard, I didn't pass the test.

1. You weren't tired. Did you go to bed anyway?
2. The telephone rang many times, but did . . . wake up?
3. The food was terrible. Did you eat it anyway?
4. You didn't study. Did you pass the test anyway?
5. The weather is terrible today. Did you stay home?
6. You fell down the stairs. Did you get hurt?
7. You took a nap. Do you still feel tired?

(Switch roles if working in pairs.)
8. You told the truth, but did anyone believe you?
9. You turned on the air conditioner. Is it still hot in here?
10. You mailed the letter three days ago. Has it arrived yet?
11. You have a lot of money. Can you afford to buy an airplane?
12. Your grandmother is ninety years old. Is she still young at heart?
13. (...) told a joke. You didn't understand it. Did you laugh anyway?
14. Your house burned down. You lost your job. Your wife/husband left you. Are you still cheerful?

□ Exercise 7. Using EVEN THOUGH and BECAUSE. (Charts 17-2 and 17-3)
Directions: Write sentences that include the verbs in parentheses. Use any verb tense or modal.

1. Because the bus drivers went on strike, I (walk) _______ had to walk _______ all the way home.
2. Even though I was dead tired, I (walk) _______ walked _______ all the way home.
3. Because _______ _______ , I (go) _______ go _______ fishing.
4. Even though _______ _______ , I (go) _______ go _______ fishing.
5. Even though there (be) _______ _______ very few customers in the store,

6. Because there (be) _______ _______ very few customers in the store,

7. I (wear) _______ _______ heavy gloves because _______ _______
8. Even though my feet (be) _______ _______ killing me and my head (be) _______ _______ pounding, I _______ _______ _______ _______
9. Even though _______ _______ _______ _______ , I (get, not) _______ _______ _______ a traffic ticket.
10. Even though I (be) _______ _______ tired, I _______ _______ _______ _______ because _______ _______ _______ _______
11. Even though _______ _______ _______ when _______ _______ _______ ,

I _______ _______ _______ _______ because _______ _______ _______ _______
12. Because _______ _______ _______ _______ while _______ _______ _______ , I _______ _______ _______ _______ _______ even though _______ _______ _______ _______.
17-4  SHOWING DIRECT CONTRAST: WHILE AND WHEREAS

(a) Mary is rich, while John is poor.
(b) John is poor, while Mary is rich.
(c) Mary is rich, whereas John is poor.
(d) Whereas Mary is rich, John is poor.

While and whereas are used to show direct contrast: "this" is exactly the opposite of "that." While and whereas may be used with the idea of either clause with no difference in meaning. Whereas mostly occurs in formal written English. Note: A comma is usually used even if the adverb clause comes second.

COMPARE
(e) While I was studying, the phone rang.

While is also used in time clauses and means "during the time that," as in (e). See Chart 5-2, p. 72.

EXERCISE 8. Using WHILE and WHEREAS. (Chart 17-4)

Directions: Choose the best completion.

1. Some people are tall, whereas others are ___.
   A. intelligent  C. short
   B. thin  D. large

2. A box is square, whereas ___.
   A. a rectangle has four sides  C. we use envelopes for letters
   B. my village has a town square in the center  D. a circle is round

3. While some parts of the world get an abundance of rain, others ___.
   A. are warm and humid  C. get little or none
   B. are cold and wet  D. get a lot

4. In some nations the favorite beverage is coffee, while ___.
   A. I like tea  C. in others it is tea
   B. it has caffeine  D. tea has caffeine too

5. Some people like cream and sugar in their coffee, while ___.
   A. others drink hot coffee  C. milk is good in coffee, too
   B. others like it black  D. sugar can cause cavities

6. Jack is an interesting storyteller and conversationalist, whereas his brother ___.
   A. is a newspaper reporter  C. has four children
   B. bores other people by talking about himself all the time  D. knows a lot of stories, too

EXERCISE 9. Using WHILE and WHEREAS. (Chart 17-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Discuss other ways of expressing the same idea by moving the position of while or whereas.

1. Some people are fat, whereas . . .
   → Some people are fat, whereas others are thin.
   → Whereas some people are fat, others are thin.
   → Some people are thin, whereas others are fat.

2. Some people are tall, whereas . . .
3. Some people prefer to live in the country, while . . .
4. While some people know only their native language . . .
5. A mouse is small, whereas . . .
6. The climate at sea level at the equator is always hot, whereas the climate at the North
and South poles ....
7. Some people . . . , while ....
8. Some countries . . . , whereas ....

17-5 EXPRESSING CONDITIONS IN ADVERB CLAUSES: IF-CLAUSES

(a) If it rains, the streets get wet.

If-clauses (also called "adverb clauses of condition") present possible conditions. The main clause expresses results.
In (a): POSSIBLE CONDITION = it rains
RESULT = the streets get wet

(b) If it rains tomorrow, I will take my umbrella.

A present tense, not a future tense, is used in an if-clause even though the verb in the if-clause may refer to a future event or situation, as in (b).*

WORDS THAT INTRODUCE ADVERB CLAUSES OF CONDITION (IF-CLAUSES)

If whether or not even if
in case in the event that unless only if

*See Chapter 20 for uses of other verb forms in sentences with if-clauses.

EXERCISE 10. IF-clauses. (Chart 17-5)

Directions: Make sentences from the given possibilities. Use if.

1. It may be cold tomorrow.
   → If it's cold tomorrow, I'm going to stay home.
   → If it's cold tomorrow, let's go skating.
   → If it's cold tomorrow, you should wear your wool sweater.
   → We can't go on a picnic if it's cold tomorrow.

2. Maybe it will be hot tomorrow.

3. Maybe you will have some free time tomorrow.

4. Maybe you will lock yourself out of your apartment.

5. Maybe the sun will be shining when you get up tomorrow morning.

6. You will probably be too tired to finish your work today.

7. You might not have enough money to take your trip next month.

8. We might continue to destroy our environment.
17-6 ADVERB CLAUSES OF CONDITION: USING WHETHER OR NOT AND EVEN IF

WHETHER OR NOT
(a) I'm going to go swimming tomorrow whether or not it is cold.
(OR: whether it is cold or not.)

Whether or not expresses the idea that neither this conditionnor that condition matters; the result will be the same. In (a): "If it iscold, I'm going swimming. If it is not cold, I'm going swimming. I don't care about the temperature. It doesn't matter."

EVEN IF
(b) I have decided to go swimming tomorrow. Even if the weather is cold, I'm going to go swimming.

Sentences with even if are close in meaning to those with whether or not. Even if gives the idea that a particular condition does not matter. The result will not change.

EXERCISE 11. Using WHETHER OR NOT and EVEN IF. (Chart 17-6)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the sentences.

1. Usually people need to graduate from school to get a good job. But it's different for Ed. Maybe Ed will graduate from school, and maybe he won't. It doesn't matter because he has a good job waiting for him in his father's business.
   a. Ed will get a good job whether or not ... he graduates.
   b. Ed will get a good job even if ... he doesn't graduate.

2. Sam's uncle tells a lot of jokes. Sometimes they're funny, and sometimes they're not. It doesn't matter.
   a. Sam laughs at the jokes whether ... or not.
   b. Sam laughs at the jokes even if ... .

3. Maybe you are finished with the exam, and maybe you're not. It doesn't matter. The time is up.
   a. You have to hand in your examination paper whether ... or not.
   b. You have to hand in your examination paper even if ....

4. It might snow, or it might not. We don't want to go camping in the snow, but it doesn't matter.
   a. We're going to go camping in the mountains whether ... or not.
   b. We're going to go camping in the mountains even if ....

5. Max's family doesn't have enough money to send him to college. He would like to get a scholarship, but it doesn't matter because he's saved some money to go to school and has a part-time job.
   a. Max can go to school whether or not ... .
   b. Max can go to school even if ... .

6. Sometimes the weather is hot, and sometimes the weather is cold. It doesn't matter. My grandfather always wears his gray sweater.
   a. My grandfather wears his gray sweater whether or not ... .
   b. My grandfather always wears his gray sweater even if ....

7. Your approval doesn't matter to me.
   a. I'm going to marry Harry whether ... or not.
   b. I'm going to marry Harry even if ....
EXERCISE 12. Using WHETHER OR NOT and EVEN IF. (Chart 17-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

Examples:

Even if . . . , I'm not going to go.

Even if I get an invitation to the reception, I'm not going to go.

. . . whether I feel better or not.

I have to go to work tomorrow whether I feel better or not.

1. . . . even if the weather improves.
2. Even if . . . , Maria may lose her job.
3. Getting that job depends on whether or not . . . .
4. . . . whether you want me to or not.
5. I won't tell you even if . . . .
6. I'm really angry! Maybe he'll apologize, and maybe he won't. It doesn't matter. Even if . . . , I won't forgive him!
7. I'm exhausted. Please don't wake me up even if . . . .
8. I'm not going to . . . even if . . . .
9. Even if . . . , I'm going to . . . .
10. I'm going to . . . whether . . . or not.

17-7 ADVERB CLAUSES OF CONDITION: USING IN CASE AND IN THE EVENT THAT

(a) I'll be at my uncle's house in case you (should) need to reach me.
(b) In the event that you (should) need to reach me, I'll be at my uncle's house.

In case and in the event that express the idea that something probably won't happen, but it might. In case/in the event that means "if by chance this should happen."

Notes: In the event that is more formal than in case. The use of should in the adverb clause emphasizes the speaker's uncertainty that something will happen.

EXERCISE 13. Using IN CASE and IN THE EVENT THAT. (Chart 17-7)

Directions: Show the relationship between the ideas in the two sentences by using in case and/or in the event that.

1. You probably won't need to get in touch with me, but maybe you will. If so, I'll give you my phone number.
   → I'll give you my phone number in case you (should) need to get in touch with me/in the event that you (should) need to get in touch with me.
2. You probably won't need to see me, but maybe you will. If so, I'll be in my office tomorrow morning around ten.
3. I don't think you need any more information, but maybe you do. If so, you can call me.
4. You probably don't have any more questions, but maybe you do. If so, ask Dr. Smith.
5. Jack probably won't call, but maybe he will. If so, please tell him that I'm at the library.
6. You will probably be satisfied with your purchase, but maybe not. If not, you can return it to the store.

Complete the following.

7. I've told you all I know. In the event that you need more information, . . . .

8. It's a good idea for you to keep a written record of your credit card numbers in case . . . .

9. I think I'd better clean up the apartment in case . . . .

10. I have my umbrella with me just in case . . . .

11. In the event that the two countries agree to a peace treaty, . . . .

12. I'll try to be there on time, but in case I'm not, . . . .

13. According to the manufacturer's guarantee, I should return my new camera to the factory in the event that . . . .

17-8 ADVERB CLAUSES OF CONDITION: USING UNLESS

(a) I'll go swimming tomorrow unless it's cold.  
(b) I'll go swimming tomorrow if it isn't cold.  

unless = if . . . not

In (a): unless it's cold means "if it isn't cold."

(a) and (b) have the same meaning.

EXERCISE 14. Using UNLESS. (Chart 17-8)

Directions: Make sentences with the same meaning by using unless.

1. I will go to the zoo if it isn't cold.  
   → I will go to the zoo unless it's cold.

2. You can't travel abroad if you don't have a passport.

3. You can't get a driver's license if you're not at least sixteen years old.

4. If I don't get some film, I won't be able to take pictures when Ann and Rob get here.

5. You'll get hungry during class if you don't eat breakfast.
EXERCISE 15. Using UNLESS. (Chart 17-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences.

1. Your letter won't be delivered unless . . .
   → Your letter won't be delivered unless it has the correct postage.
2. I'm sorry, but you can't see the doctor unless . . .
3. I can't graduate from school unless . . .
4. . . . unless you put it in the refrigerator.
5. Unless it rains, . . .
6. Certain species of animals will soon become extinct unless . . .
7. . . . unless I get a raise in salary.
8. Tomorrow I'm going to . . . unless . . .
9. The political situation in . . . will continue to deteriorate unless . . .
10. Ivan never volunteers in class. He doesn't say anything unless . . .
11. Unless you . . .

EXERCISE 16. Using ONLY IF. (Chart 17-9)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the sentences.

1. John must get a scholarship in order to go to school. That is the only condition under which he can go to school. If he doesn't get one, he can't go to school.
   He can go to school only if . . . he gets a scholarship.

2. You have to have an invitation in order to go to the party. That is the only condition under which you will be admitted. If you don't have an invitation, you can't go.
   You can go to the party only if . . .

3. You have to have a student visa in order to study here. Unless you have a student visa, you can't go to school here.
   You can attend this school only if . . .

4. Jimmy's mother doesn't want him to chew gum, but sometimes he chews it anyway.
   Jimmy . . . only if he's sure his mother won't find out.
5. If you want to go to the movie, we'll go. If you don't want to go, we won't go.
   *We . . . only if you want to.*

6. The temperature has to reach 32°F / 0°C before water will freeze.
   *Water will freeze only if . . .*

7. You must study hard. Then you will pass the exam.
   *Only if you study hard . . .*

8. You have to have a ticket. Then you can get into the soccer stadium.
   *Only if you have a ticket . . .*

9. My parents make Jake finish his homework before he can watch TV in the evening.
   *Only if Jake's homework is finished . . .*

10. I have to get a job. Then I will have enough money to go to school.
    *Only if I get a job . . .*

   **Complete the following.**

11. Yes, John, I will marry you—but only if . . .

12. I____only if___

13. Only if___

□ **EXERCISE 17. Using UNLESS and ONLY IF. (Charts 17-8 and 17-9)**

**Directions:** Create sentences with the same meaning as the given ones. Use *only if* and *unless.*

1. If you don't study hard, you won't pass the test.
   → *You will pass the test only if you study hard.*
   → *You won't pass the test unless you study hard.*

2. If I don't get a job, I can't pay my bills.

3. Your clothes won't get clean if you don't use soap.

4. I can't take any pictures if I don't buy some film.

5. I don't wake up if the alarm clock doesn't ring.

6. If eggs aren't kept at the proper temperature, they won't hatch.

7. Don't borrow money from friends if you don't absolutely have to.

8. Anita doesn't talk in class if the teacher doesn't ask her specific questions.

□ **EXERCISE 18. Adverb clauses of condition. (Charts 17-6 → 17-9)**

**Directions:** Using the given words, combine the following two ideas.

*It may or may not rain. The party will be held inside/outside.*

1. if → *If it rains, the party will be held inside.*
   → *If it doesn't rain, the party will be held outside.*

2. whether or not

3. even if

4. in case

5. in the event that

6. unless

7. only if
EXERCISE 19. Activity: adverb clauses. (Chapter 17)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Say the given words, then add your own words to complete the adverb clause (but do not complete the whole sentence).
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Complete Speaker A’s sentence.

Example: Although I ....
SPEAKER A (book open): Although I wanted to go to the park and fly a kite ....
SPEAKER B (book closed): Although I wanted to go to the park and fly a kite, I went to my English class because I really need to improve my English.

1. Even if I ....
2. Because I ....
3. By the time I ....
4. Even though I ....
5. The next time I ....
6. Until I____
7. Every time I ....

Switch roles
8. In the event that you ....
9. Unless I____
10. Since I____
11. Only if I____
12. Now that I ....
13. While some people are ....
14. While I was walking ....
CHAPTER 10

Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases

CONTENTS

18-1 Introduction
18-2 Changing time clauses to modifying adverbial phrases
18-3 Expressing the idea of "during the same time" in modifying adverbial phrases

18-4 Expressing cause and effect in modifying adverbial phrases
18-5 Using upon + -ing in modifying adverbial phrases

18-1 INTRODUCTION

(a) ADVERB CLAUSE:  While I was walking to class, I ran into an old friend.
(b) MODIFYING PHRASE:  While walking to class, I ran into an old friend.
(c) ADVERB CLAUSE:  Before I left for work, I ate breakfast.
(d) MODIFYING PHRASE:  Before leaving for work, I ate breakfast.

In Chapter 13, we discussed changing adjective clauses to modifying phrases (see Chart 13-13, p. 286). Some adverb clauses may also be changed to modifying phrases, and the ways in which the changes are made are the same:

1. Omit the subject of the dependent clause and the be form of the verb, as in (b). OR
2. If there is no be form of a verb, omit the subject and change the verb to -ing, as in (d).

(e) CHANGE POSSIBLE:  While I was sitting in class, I fell asleep.
(f) CHANGE POSSIBLE:  While sitting in class, I fell asleep.

An adverb clause can be changed to a modifying phrase only when the subject of the adverb clause and the subject of the main clause are the same. A modifying adverbial phrase that is the reduction of an adverb clause modifies the subject of the main clause.

(g) NO CHANGE POSSIBLE:  While the teacher was lecturing to the class, I fell asleep.*
(h) NO CHANGE POSSIBLE:  While we were walking home, a frog hopped across the road in front of us.

In (i): While walking home is called a "dangling modifier" or a "dangling participle," i.e., a modifier that is incorrectly "hanging alone" without an appropriate noun or pronoun subject to modify.

(i) INCORRECT:  While walking home, a frog hopped across the road in front of us.
(j) INCORRECT:  While watching TV last night, the phone rang.

In (g): While lecturing to the class, I fell asleep means "While I was lecturing to the class, I fell asleep."
18-2 CHANGING TIME CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

(a) CLAUSE: *Since Maria came to this country,* she has made many friends.
(b) PHRASE: *Since coming to this country,* Maria has made many friends.

Adverb clauses beginning with *after, before, while,* and *since* can be changed to modifying adverbial phrases.

(c) CLAUSE: *After he (had) finished his homework,* Peter went to bed.
(d) PHRASE: *After finishing his homework,* Peter went to bed.
(e) PHRASE: *After having finished his homework,* Peter went to bed.

In (c): There is no difference in meaning between *After he finished* and *After he had finished.* (See Chart 3-3, p. 45.)

In (d) and (e): There is no difference in meaning between *After finishing* and *After having finished.*

(f) PHRASE: Peter went to bed after finishing his homework.

A modifying adverbial phrase may follow the main clause, as in (f).

□ EXERCISE 1. Changing time clauses to modifying adverbial phrases.

(Charts 18-1 and 18-2)

Directions: Underline the subject of the adverb clause and the subject of the main clause. Change the adverb clauses to modifying adverbial phrases if possible.

1. While Joe was driving to school yesterday, he had an accident.
   → *While driving to school yesterday,* Joe had an accident.
2. While Joe was watching TV last night, the telephone rang. (no change)
3. Before I came to class, I had a cup of coffee.
4. Before the student came to class, the teacher had already given a quiz.
5. Since I came here, I have learned a lot of English.
6. Since Bob opened his new business, he has been working 16 hours a day.
7. After Omar (had) finished breakfast, he left the house and went to his office.
8. Alex hurt his back while he was chopping wood.
9. You should always read a contract before you sign your name.
10. Before the waiter came to our table, I had already made up my mind to order shrimp.
11. Before you ask the librarian for help, you should make every effort to find the materials yourself.
12. While Jack was trying to sleep last night, a mosquito kept buzzing in his ear.
13. While Susan was climbing the mountain, she lost her footing and fell onto a ledge several feet below.
14. The Wilsons have experienced many changes in their lifestyle since they adopted twins.
15. After I heard Mary describe how cold it gets in Minnesota in the winter, I decided not to go there for my vacation in January.
18-3 EXPRESSING THE IDEA OF "DURING THE SAME TIME" IN MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

(a) While I was walking down the street, I ran into an old friend.
(b) While walking down the street, I ran into an old friend.
(c) Walking down the street, I ran into an old friend.
(d) Hiking through the woods yesterday, we saw a bear.
(e) Pointing to the sentence on the board, the teacher explained the meaning of modifying phrases.

Sometimes while is omitted but the -ing phrase at the beginning of the sentence gives the same meaning (i.e., "during the same time"). (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning.

18-4 EXPRESSING CAUSE AND EFFECT IN MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

(f) Because she needed some money to buy a book, Sue cashed a check.
(g) Needing some money to buy a book, Sue cashed a check.
(h) Because he lacked the necessary qualifications, he was not considered for the job.
(i) Lacking the necessary qualifications, he was not considered for the job.

Often an -ing phrase at the beginning of a sentence gives the meaning of "because." (f) and (g) have the same meaning.

Because is not included in a modifying phrase. It is omitted, but the resulting phrase expresses a cause and effect relationship, as in (g) and (i).

(j) Having seen that movie before, I don't want to go again.
(k) Having seen that movie before, I didn't want to go again.

Having + past participle gives the meaning not only of "because" but also of "before."

(l) Because she was unable to afford a car, she bought a bicycle.
(m) Being unable to afford a car, she bought a bicycle.
(n) Unable to afford a car, she bought a bicycle.

A form of be in the adverb clause may be changed to being. The use of being makes the cause and effect relationship clear. (l), (m), and (n) have the same meaning.

EXERCISE 2. Modifying adverbial phrases. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Directions: Discuss the meaning of these sentences. Which ones give the meaning of because? Which ones give the meaning of while? Do some of the sentences give the idea of both because and while?

1. Sitting on the airplane and watching the clouds pass beneath me, I let my thoughts wander to the new experiences that were in store for me during the next two years of living abroad.
2. Being a self-supporting widow with three children, she has no choice but to work.
3. Lying on her bed in peace and quiet, she soon forgot her troubles.
4. Having already spent all of his last paycheck, he does not have any money to live on for the rest of the month.
5. Watching the children's energetic play, I felt like an old man even though I am only forty.
6. Having brought up ten children of their own, the Smiths may be considered experts on child behavior.
7. Being totally surprised by his proposal of marriage, Carol could not find the words to reply.
8. Driving to my grandparents' house last night, we saw a young woman who was selling flowers. We stopped so that we could buy some for my grandmother.
9. Struggling against fatigue, I forced myself to put one foot in front of the other.
10. Having guessed at the correct answers for a good part of the test, I did not expect to get a high score.
11. Realizing that I had made a dreadful mistake when I introduced him as George Johnson, I walked over to him and apologized. I know his name is John George.
12. Tapping his fingers loudly on the desk top, he made his impatience and dissatisfaction known.

**EXERCISE 3. Modifying adverbial phrases. (Chart 18-4)**

*Directions:* Change the adverb clauses to modifying adverbial phrases.

1. Because Sam didn't want to hurt her feelings, he didn't tell her the bad news.
   > *Not wanting to hurt her feelings, Sam didn't tell her the bad news.*
2. Because the little boy believed that no one loved him, he ran away from home.
3. Because she was not paying attention to where she was going, Rosa stepped into a hole and sprained her ankle.
4. Because I had forgotten to bring a pencil to the examination, I had to borrow one.
5. Because Chelsea is a vegetarian, she does not eat meat.
6. Because he has already flunked out of school once, Mike is determined to succeed this time.

**EXERCISE 4. Modifying adverbial phrases. (Charts 18-2 → 18-4)**

*Directions:* Change the adverb clauses to modifying adverbial phrases.

1. Before I talked to you, I had never understood that formula.
2. Because he did not want to spend any more money this month, Larry decided against going to a restaurant for dinner. He made himself a sandwich instead.
3. After I read the chapter four times, I finally understood the author's theory.
4. Because I remembered that everyone makes mistakes, I softened my view of his seemingly inexcusable error.
5. Since he completed his Bachelor's degree, he has had three jobs, each one better than the last.
6. While I was traveling across the United States, I could not help being impressed by the great differences in terrain.
7. Before he gained national fame, the union leader had been an electrician in a small town.
8. Because we were enjoying the cool evening breeze and listening to the sounds of nature, we lost track of time.
9. Because she had never flown in an airplane before, the little girl was surprised and a little frightened when her ears popped.
10. Before he became vice-president of marketing and sales, Peter McKay worked as a sales representative.
EXERCISE 5. Modifying adverbial phrases. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)
Directions: Combine the two sentences, making a modifying phrase out of the first sentence if possible.

1. The children had nothing to do. They were bored.
   → Having nothing to do, the children were bored.

2. I heard that Nadia was in the hospital. I called her family to find out what was wrong.
3. We slowly approached the door to the hospital. The nurse stepped out to greet us.
4. I live a long distance from my work. I have to commute daily by train.
5. Heidi lives a long distance from her work. She has to commute daily by train.
6. Abdul lives a long distance from his work. His car is essential.
7. I did not want to inconvenience my friend by asking her to drive me to the airport. I decided to take a taxi.
8. I was sitting on a large rock at the edge of a mountain stream. I felt at peace with the world.
9. I am a married man. I have many responsibilities.
10. The little boy was trying his best not to cry. He swallowed hard and began to speak.
11. Anna kept one hand on the steering wheel. She opened a can of soda pop with her free hand.
12. Anna kept one hand on the steering wheel. Bob handed her a can of pop to hold in the other hand.
13. I recognized his face, but I had forgotten his name. I just smiled and said, "Hi."
14. Martha was picking strawberries in the garden. A bumblebee stung her.
15. Ann was convinced that she could never learn to play the piano. She stopped taking lessons.

EXERCISE 6. Modifying adverbial phrases. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)
Directions: Make sentences by combining the ideas in Column A and Column B. Use the idea in Column A as a modifying adverbial phrase. Show logical relationships.

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. She was looking in the want ads in the Sunday newspaper.</td>
<td>A. Mary has a lot of responsibilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. She had grown up overseas.</td>
<td>B. Ann found a good used car at a price she could afford to pay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. She is the vice-president of a large company.</td>
<td>C. Alice enjoys trying foods from other countries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

→ 1. Looking in the want ads in the Sunday newspaper, Ann found a good used car at a price she could afford to pay.
→ 2. Having grown up overseas, Alice enjoys trying foods from other countries.
→ 3. Being the vice-president of a large company, Mary has a lot of responsibilities.
Column A
1. They have sticky pads on their feet.
2. He has worked with computers for many years.
3. She was born two months prematurely.
4. He had done everything he could for the patient.
5. She had never eaten Thai food before.
6. He had no one to turn to for help.
7. They are endangered species.
8. They are able to crawl into very small places.
9. She has done very well in her studies.
10. They are extremely hard and nearly indestructible.

Column B
A. Sally didn't know what to expect when she went to the Thai restaurant for dinner.
B. Mice can hide in almost any part of a house.
C. Rhinos are protected by law from poachers who kill them solely for their horns.
D. The doctor left to attend other people.
E. Nancy expects to be hired by a top company after graduation.
F. Diamonds are used extensively in industry to cut other hard minerals.
G. Flies can easily walk on the ceiling.
H. Sam was forced to work out the problem by himself.
I. Mary needed special care for the first few days of her life.
J. Ed has an excellent understanding of their limitations as well as their potential.

EXERCISE 7. Modifying adverbial phrases. (Charts 18-1 > 18-4)
Directions: Some (but not all) of the sentences contain DANGLING MODIFIERS (i.e., incorrectly used modifying adverbial phrases). Correct these errors.

1. After leaving the theater, we stopped at a coffee shop for a late night snack. (no change)
2. After leaving the theater, Tom's car wouldn't start, so we had to take a taxi home.
   → After we left the theater, Tom's car wouldn't start, so we had to take a taxi home.
   → After leaving the theater, we discovered that Tom's car wouldn't start, so we took a taxi home.
3. Not wanting to interrupt the conversation, I stood quietly and listened until I could have a chance to talk.
4. Being too young to understand death, my mother gave me a simple explanation of where my grandfather had gone.
5. When asked to explain his mistake, the new employee cleared his throat nervously.
6. While working in my office late last night, someone suddenly knocked loudly at my door and nearly scared me to death!
7. After hurrying to get everything ready for the picnic, it began to rain just as we were leaving.
8. While walking across the street at a busy intersection, a truck nearly ran over my foot.

Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases 379
18-5 USING UPON + -ING IN MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

(a) Upon reaching the age of 21, I received my inheritance.
(b) When I reached the age of 21, I received my inheritance.

(c) On reaching the age of 21, I received my inheritance.

Modifying adverbial phrases beginning with upon + -ing usually have the same meaning as adverb clauses introduced by when. (a) and (b) have the same meaning.

Upon can be shortened to on. (a), (b), and (c) all have the same meaning.

D EXERCISE 8. Using UPON + -ING. (Chart 18-5)

Directions: Using the given information, make sentences with upon + -ing.

1. When Tom saw his wife and child get off the airplane, he broke into a big smile.
   → Upon seeing his wife and child get off the airplane, Tom broke into a big smile.
2. When Tina crossed the marathon finish line, she fell in exhaustion.
3. When I looked in my wallet, I discovered I didn't have enough money to pay my restaurant bill.

4. I bowed my head when I met the king.
5. When Sam re-read the figures, he found that he had made a mistake.
6. The small child reached toward the lighted candle. When he discovered it was hot, he jerked his hand back, held it in front of himself, and stared at it curiously. Then he began to scream.
7. Mrs. Alexander nearly fainted when she learned that she had won the lottery.
8. When you finish the examination, bring your paper to the front of the room.
9. There must have been 300 students in the room on the first day of class. The professor slowly read through the list of names. When I heard my name, I raised my hand to identify myself.
10. Captain Cook had been sailing for many weeks with no land in sight. Finally, one of the sailors shouted, "Land ho!" When he heard this, Cook grabbed his telescope and searched the horizon.
EXERCISE 9. Review: modifying adverbial phrases. (Chapter 18)

Directions: Change the adverb clause in each sentence to a modifying adverbial phrase if possible. Make any necessary changes in punctuation, capitalization, or word order.

1. After it spends some time in a cocoon, a caterpillar will emerge as a butterfly.
   → After spending some time in a cocoon, a caterpillar will emerge as a butterfly.

2. When the movie started, it suddenly got very quiet inside the theater. (no change)

3. When we entered the theater, we handed the usher our tickets.
   → Upon entering the theater, we handed the usher our tickets.

4. Because I was unprepared for the test, I didn’t do well.
   → Being unprepared for the test, I didn’t do well. OR: Unprepared for the test, I didn’t do well.

5. Before I left on my trip, I checked to see what shots I would need.

6. Since Indians in the high Andes Mountains live in thin air, their hearts grow to be a larger than average size.

7. Because I hadn’t understood the directions, I got lost.

8. My father reluctantly agreed to let me attend the game after he had talked it over with my mother.

9. When I discovered I had lost my key to the apartment, I called the building superintendent.

10. Jane’s family hasn’t received any news from her since she arrived in Australia two weeks ago.

11. Garcia Lopez de Cardenas accidentally discovered the Grand Canyon while he was looking for the legendary Lost City of Gold.

12. Because the forest area is so dry this summer, it is prohibited to light campfires.

13. After we had to wait for more than half an hour, we were finally seated at the restaurant.

14. Before Maria got accepted on her country’s Olympic running team, she had spent most of the two previous years in training.

15. Because George wasn’t paying attention to his driving, he didn’t see the large truck until it was almost too late.
EXERCISE 10. Review: modifying adverbial phrases. (Chapter 18)

Directions: Underline the adverb clauses in the following. Change the adverb clauses to adverb phrases if possible. Make any necessary changes in punctuation, capitalization, or word order.

1. Alexander Graham Bell, a teacher of the deaf in Boston, invented the first telephone. One day in 1875, while he was running a test on his latest attempt to create a machine that could carry voices, he accidentally spilled acid on his coat. Naturally, he called for his assistant, Thomas A. Watson, who was in another room. Bell said, "Mr. Watson, come here. I want you." When Watson heard words coming from the machine, he immediately realized that their experiments had at last been successful. He rushed excitedly into the other room to tell Bell that he had heard his words over the machine.

After Bell had successfully tested the new apparatus again and again, he confidently announced his invention to the world. For the most part, scientists appreciated his accomplishment, but the general public did not understand the revolutionary nature of Bell's invention. Because they believed the telephone was a toy with little practical application, most people paid little attention to Bell's announcement.

2. Wolves are much misunderstood animals. Because many people believe that wolves eagerly kill human beings, they fear them. However, the truth is that wolves avoid any contact with human beings. Wildlife biologists in the United States say there is no documented case of wolves attacking humans in the lower 48 states. More people are hurt and killed by buffaloes in Yellowstone Park than have ever been hurt by wolves in North America.

Because they are strictly carnivorous, wolves hunt large animals such as elk and deer, as well as their mainstay, small animals such as mice and rabbits. And they are particularly fond of sheep. Killing ranchers' livestock has helped lead to wolves' bad reputation among people.

Because it was relentlessly poisoned, trapped, and shot by ranchers and hunters, the timber wolf, a subspecies of the gray wolf, was eradicated in the lower 48 states by
the 1940s. Not one wolf remained. In the 1970s, after they realized a mistake had been made, U.S. lawmakers passed laws to protect wolves.

Long ago, wolves could be found in almost all areas of the Northern Hemisphere throughout Asia, Europe, and North America. Today, after they have been unremittingly destroyed for centuries, they are found in few places, principally in sparsely populated areas of Alaska, Minnesota, Canada, and the northernmost regions of Russia and China.

EXERCISE 11. Review: modifying adverbial phrases. (Chapter 18)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Punctuate carefully.

1. After having finished my . . . .
2. Before going to . . . .
3. Since coming to . . . .
4. Sitting in the park the other day . . . .
5. Having heard a strange noise in the other room . . . .
7. Being the largest city in the United States . . . .
8. Upon reaching our destination . . . .
9. Receiving no answer when he knocked on the door . . . .
10. Exhausted by the long hours of work . . . .

Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases 383
EXERCISE 12. Error analysis: general review. (Chapters 16, 17, and 18)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. I was very tired, go to bed.
   → I was very tired, so I went to bed. OR: I was very tired and went to bed.

2. Because our leader could not attend the meeting, so it was canceled.

3. I and my wife likes to travel.

4. I always fasten my seat belt before to start the engine.

5. I don't like our classroom. Because it is hot and crowded. I hope we can change to a different room.

6. The day was very warm and humid, for that I turned on the air conditioner.

7. Upon I learned that my car couldn't be repaired for three days, I am very distressed.

8. Having missed the final examination because, the teacher gave me a failing grade.

9. Both my sister and my brother is going to be at the family reunion.

10. I hope my son will remain in school until he will finish his degree.

11. My brother has succeeded in business because of he works hard.

12. Luis stood up, turned toward me, and speaking so softly that I couldn't hear what he said.

13. I was lost. I could not find my parents neither my brother.

14. Having studied Greek for several years, Sarah's pronunciation was easy to understand.
CHAPTER 19
Connectives That Express Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition

CONTENTS

19-1 Using because of and due to
19-2 Using transitions to show cause and effect: therefore and consequently
19-3 Summary of patterns and punctuation
19-4 Other ways of expressing cause and effect: such . . . that and so . . . that
19-5 Expressing purpose: using so that
19-6 Showing contrast (unexpected result)
19-7 Showing direct contrast
19-8 Expressing conditions: using otherwise and or (else)
19-9 Summary of connectives: cause and effect, contrast, condition

EXERCISE 1. Preview. (Charts 19-1 → 19-3)
Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Because of Rosa's computer skills were poor she was not considered for the job.
2. Rosa's computer skills were poor therefore she was not considered for the job.
3. Because Rosa's computer skills were poor, therefore she was not considered for the job.
4. Because Rosa's computer skills were poor, so she was not considered for the job.
5. Due to her poor computer skills, Rosa was not considered for the job therefore.
6. Consequently Rosa's computer skills were poor, she was not considered for the job.

19-1 USING BECAUSE OF AND DUE TO

(a) Because the weather was cold, we stayed home. Because introduces an adverb clause; it is followed by a subject and verb, as in (a).

(b) Because of the cold weather, we stayed home. Because of and due to are phrasal prepositions; they are followed by a noun object, as in (b) and (c).

(c) Due to the cold weather, we stayed home.

(d) Due to the fact that the weather was cold, we stayed home. Sometimes, usually in more formal writing, due to is followed by a noun clause introduced by the fact that.

(e) We stayed home because of the cold weather. We stayed home due to the cold weather. We stayed home due to the fact that the weather was cold. Like adverb clauses, these phrases can also follow the main clause, as in (e).
EXERCISE 2. Using BECAUSE and BECAUSE OF. (Charts 17-2 and 19-1)
Directions: Complete the sentences with either because or because of.

1. We postponed our trip because of the bad driving conditions.
2. Sue's eyes were red because she had been swimming in a chlorinated pool.
3. We can't visit the museum tomorrow because it isn't open.
4. Jim had to give up jogging because of his sprained ankle.
5. heavy fog at the airport, we had to stay in London an extra day.
6. the elevator was broken, we had to walk up six flights of stairs.
7. Thousands of Irish people emigrated to the United States due to the potato famine in Ireland in the mid-19th century.
8. The young couple decided not to buy the house because of its dilapidated condition.

EXERCISE 3. Using BECAUSE OF and DUE TO. (Chart 19-1)
Directions: Using the ideas given in parentheses, complete the sentences.

1. (Our parents are generous.) Because of our parents' generosity, all of the children in our family have received the best of everything.
2. (The traffic was heavy.) We were late to the meeting due to heavy traffic.
3. (Bill's wife is ill.) Bill has to do all of the cooking and cleaning because of

4. (Dr. Robinson has done excellent research on wolves.) Due to ____________________________, we know much more today about that endangered species than we did even five years ago.

5. (It was noisy in the next apartment.) I couldn't get to sleep last night because of

6. (Circumstances are beyond my control.) Due to ____________________________, I regret to say that I cannot be present at your daughter's wedding.

---

**19-2 USING TRANSITIONS TO SHOW CAUSE AND EFFECT: THEREFORE AND CONSEQUENTLY**

| (a) Al failed the test because he didn't study. | (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning. **Therefore** and **consequently** mean "as a result." In grammar, they are called transitions (or conjunctive adverbs). Transitions connect the ideas between two sentences. |
| (b) Al didn't study. **Therefore,** he failed the test. | A transition occurs in the second of two related sentences. Notice the patterns and punctuation in the examples. A period (NOT a comma) is used at the end of the first sentence.* The transition has several positions in the second sentence. The transition is separated from the rest of the sentence by commas. |
| (c) Al didn't study. **Consequently,** he failed the test. |

**POSITIONS OF A TRANSITION**

- **transition** + s + v (+ rest of sentence)
- s + **transition** + v (+ rest of sentence)
- s + v (+ rest of sentence) + **transition**

| (d) Al didn't study. **Therefore,** he failed the test. | (g) Al didn't study, **so** he failed the test. |
| (e) Al didn't study. He, **therefore,** failed the test. | |
| (f) Al didn't study. He failed the test, **therefore.** |

**COMPARE:** A transition (e.g., **therefore**) has several possible positions within the second sentence of the pair, as in (d), (e), and (f). A conjunction (e.g., **so**) has only one possible position: between the two sentences. (See Chart 16-3, p. 355.) **So** cannot move around in the second sentence as **therefore** can.

*A semicolon is also possible in this situation. See the footnote to Chart 19-3, p. 389.

**EXERCISE 4. Using THEREFORE and CONSEQUENTLY. (Chart 19-2)**

**Directions:** Restate the sentences, using the given transitions. Use three alternative positions for the transitions, as shown in Chart 19-2. Punctuate carefully.

1. The children stayed home because a storm was **approaching.** (therefore)
2. I didn't have my umbrella, so I got wet. (consequently)

Exercise 5. Showing cause and effect. (Charts 16-3, 17-2, 19-1, and 19-2)

Directions: Punctuate the sentences. Add capital letters if necessary.

1. adverb clause: Because it was cold she wore a coat.

2. adverb clause: She wore a coat because it was cold.

3. prepositional phrase: Because of the cold weather she wore a coat.

4. prepositional phrase: She wore a coat because of the cold weather.

5. transition: The weather was cold therefore she wore a coat.

6. transition: The weather was cold she therefore wore a coat.

7. transition: The weather was cold she wore a coat therefore.

8. conjunction: The weather was cold so she wore a coat.

Exercise 6. Showing cause and effect. (Charts 17-2, 19-1, and 19-2)

Directions: Punctuate the sentences. Add capital letters if necessary.

1. Pat always enjoyed studying sciences in high school therefore she decided to major in biology in college.

2. Due to recent improvements in the economy fewer people are unemployed.

3. Last night’s storm damaged the power lines consequently the town was without electricity for several hours.

4. Because of the snowstorm only five students came to class the teacher therefore canceled the class.

5. Anna always makes numerous spelling mistakes in her compositions because she does not use a dictionary when she writes.
### 19-3 SUMMARY OF PATTERNS AND PUNCTUATION

| ADVERB CLAUSE | (a) **Because** it was hot, we went swimming.  
(b) We went swimming **because** it was hot. | An adverb clause may precede or follow an independent clause.  
PUNCTUATION: A comma is used if the adverb clause comes first. |
| PREPOSITION | (c) **Because of** the hot weather, we went swimming.  
(d) We went swimming **because of** the hot weather. | A preposition is followed by a noun object, not by a subject and verb.  
PUNCTUATION: A comma is usually used if the prepositional phrase precedes the subject and verb of the independent clause. |
| TRANSITION | (e) It was hot. **Therefore**, we went swimming.  
(f) It was hot. **We, therefore**, went swimming.  
(g) It was hot. **We went swimming, therefore.** | A transition is used with the second sentence of a pair. It shows the relationship of the second idea to the first idea. A transition is movable within the second sentence.  
PUNCTUATION: A period is used between the two independent clauses. A comma may NOT be used to separate the clauses. Commas are usually used to set the transition off from the rest of the sentence. |
| CONJUNCTION | (h) It was hot, **so** we went swimming. | A conjunction comes between two independent clauses.  
PUNCTUATION: Usually a comma is used immediately in front of a conjunction. |

*A semicolon (;) may be used instead of a period between the two independent clauses.

- It was hot; **therefore**, we went swimming.
- It was hot; **we, therefore**, went swimming.
- It was hot; **we went swimming, therefore.**

In general, a semicolon can be used instead of a period between any two sentences that are closely related in meaning. Example: **Peanuts are not nuts; they are beans.** Notice that a small letter, not a capital letter, immediately follows a semicolon.

#### EXERCISE 7. Showing cause and effect. (Chart 19-3)

*Directions:* Using the given words, combine the two ideas.

**PART I. We postponed our trip. The weather was bad.**

1. because → **We postponed our trip because the weather was bad.**  
   → **Because the weather was bad, we postponed our trip.**

2. therefore 5. because of

3. since 6. consequently

4. so 7. due to (the fact that)

**PART II. She missed class. She was ill.**

1. because of 4. so

2. because 5. due to (the fact that)

3. consequently 6. therefore
EXERCISE 8. Showing cause and effect. (Charts 19-2 and 19-3)

Directions: Combine ideas, using the words in parentheses.

1. We stayed home. The weather was bad. (because)
   → We stayed home because the weather was bad. OR
   → Because the weather was bad, we stayed home.

2. Emily has never wanted to return to the Yukon to live. The winters are too severe.
   (because of)

3. It is important to wear a hat on cold days. We lose sixty percent of our body heat
   through our head. (since)

4. When I was in my teens and twenties, it was easy for me to get into an argument with
   my father. Both of us can be stubborn and opinionated. (for)

5. A camel can go completely without water for eight to ten days. It is an ideal animal
   for desert areas. (due to the fact that)

6. Bill couldn't pick us up after the concert. His car wouldn't start. (therefore)

7. Robert had to ask many of the same questions again the next time he talked to the
   travel agent. He did not pay close attention to what she said when he went to see her
   at her office last week. (so)

8. A tomato is classified as a fruit, but most people consider it a vegetable. It is often
   eaten in salads along with lettuce, onions, cucumbers, and other vegetables. (since)

9. There is consumer demand for ivory. Many African elephants are being slaughtered
   ruthlessly. Many people who care about saving these animals from extinction refuse to
   buy any item made from ivory. (due to, consequently)

10. Most 15th-century Europeans believed the world was flat and that a ship could
    conceivably sail off the end of the earth. Many sailors of the time refused to
    venture forth with explorers into unknown waters. (because)
### OTHER WAYS OF EXPRESSING CAUSE AND EFFECT:

**SUCH . . . THAT AND SO . . . THAT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>Because the weather was nice, we went to the zoo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>It was <em>such nice weather</em> <em>that</em> we went to the zoo.</td>
<td>Examples (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>The weather was <em>so nice</em> <em>that</em> we went to the zoo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td>It was <em>such good coffee</em> <em>that</em> I had another cup.</td>
<td><em>Such . . . that</em> encloses a modified noun: <em>such + adjective + noun + that</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e)</td>
<td>It was <em>such a foggy day</em> <em>that</em> we couldn't see the road.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f)</td>
<td>The <em>coffee is so hot</em> <em>that</em> I can't drink it.</td>
<td><em>So . . . that</em> encloses an adjective or adverb: <em>so + adjective or adverb + that</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g)</td>
<td>I'm <em>so hungry</em> <em>that</em> I could eat a horse.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h)</td>
<td>She speaks <em>so fast</em> <em>that</em> I can't understand her.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>He walked so <em>quickly</em> <em>that</em> I couldn't keep up with him.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j)</td>
<td>She made <em>so many mistakes</em> <em>that</em> she failed the exam.</td>
<td><em>So . . . that</em> is used with <em>many, few, much, and little.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k)</td>
<td>He has <em>so few friends</em> <em>that</em> he is always lonely.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l)</td>
<td>She has <em>so much money</em> <em>that</em> she can buy whatever she wants.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m)</td>
<td>He had <em>so little trouble</em> with the test <em>that</em> he left twenty minutes early.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n)</td>
<td>It was <em>such a good book</em> <em>(that)</em> I couldn't put it down.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(o)</td>
<td>I was <em>so hungry</em> <em>(that)</em> I didn't wait for dinner to eat something.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 9. Using SUCH . . . THAT and SO . . . THAT.** (Chart 19-4)

*Directions:* Combine the sentences by using *so . . . that* or *such . . . that.*

1. This tea is good. I think I'll have another cup.
   → *This tea is so good* *that* *I think I'll have another cup.*

2. This is good tea. I think I'll have another cup.
   → *This is such good tea* *that* *I think I'll have another cup.*

3. It was an expensive car. We couldn't afford to buy it.

4. The car was expensive. We couldn't afford to buy it.

5. The weather was hot. You could fry an egg on the sidewalk.

6. During the summer, we had hot and humid weather. It was uncomfortable just sitting in a chair doing nothing.

7. I don't feel like going to work. We're having beautiful weather.

8. Ivan takes everything in life too seriously. He is unable to experience the small joys and pleasures of daily living.

9. I've met too many people in the last few days. I can't possibly remember all of their names.

10. Tommy ate too much candy. He got a stomachache.

11. It took us only ten minutes to get there. There was little traffic.

12. In some countries, few students are accepted by the universities. As a result, admission is virtually a guarantee of a good job upon graduation.
EXERCISE 10. Using SUCH, ... THAT and SO ... THAT. (Chart 19-4)

Directions: Make sentences using such or so by combining the ideas in Column A and Column B.

Example: The wind was strong. → The wind was so strong that it blew my hat off my head.

Column A
1. The wind was strong.
2. Karen is a good pianist.
3. The radio was too loud.
4. Small animals in the forest move about quickly.
5. Olga did poor work.
6. The food was too hot.
7. There are many leaves on a single tree.
8. The tornado struck with great force.
9. Grandpa held me tightly when he hugged me.
10. Few students showed up for class.
11. Sally used too much paper when she was writing her report.

Column B
A. It burned my tongue.
B. She was fired from her job.
C. It blew my hat off my head.
D. The teacher postponed the test.
E. It is impossible to count them.
F. It lifted automobiles off the ground.
G. I couldn't hear what Michael was saying.
H. I'm surprised she didn't go into music professionally.
I. The wastepaper basket overflowed.
J. One can barely catch a glimpse of them.
K. I couldn't breathe for a moment.

EXERCISE 11. Using SO ... THAT. (Chart 19-4)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the cue and engage Speaker B in conversation.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Answer the how-question using so ... that.

Example: Think of a time you were tired. How tired were you?
SPEAKER A: Think of a time you were very tired. Can you remember one particular time?
SPEAKER B: There was one time when I'd stayed up all night writing a paper.
SPEAKER A: And you were very tired the next morning, right? How tired were you?
SPEAKER B: I was so tired that I almost fell asleep in my morning classes.

Think of a time you were
1. ... nervous. How nervous were you?
2. ... angry. How angry were you?
3. ... happy. How happy were you?
4. ... surprised. How surprised were you?
5. ... exhausted. How exhausted were you?
6. ... unhappy/embarrassed/glad/sick/sad/frightened/excited/disappointed/etc.
19-5 EXPRESSING PURPOSE: USING SO THAT

(a) I turned off the TV *in order to* enable my roommate to study in peace and quiet.

(b) I turned off the TV *so (that) my roommate could* study in peace and quiet.

In order to expresses purpose. (See Chart 15-1, p. 326.) In (a): I turned off the TV for a purpose. The purpose was to make it possible for my roommate to study in peace and quiet. *So that* also expresses purpose* It expresses the same meaning as *in order to.* The word "that" is often omitted, especially in speaking.

**SO THAT + CAN or COULD**

(c) I'm going to cash a check *so that I can* buy my textbooks.

(d) I cashed a check *so that I could* buy my textbooks.

*So that* is often used instead of *in order to* when the idea of ability is being expressed. *Can* is used in the adverb clause for a present/future meaning. In (c): *so that I can buy = in order to be able to buy.* *Could* is used after *so that* in past sentences.**

**SO THAT + WILL/SIMPLE PRESENT OR WOULD**

(e) I'll take my umbrella *so that I won't* get wet.

(f) I'll take my umbrella *so that I don't* get wet.

(g) Yesterday I took my umbrella *so that I wouldn't* get wet.

In (e): *so that I won't get wet = in order to make sure that I won't get wet.* In (f): It is sometimes possible to use the simple present after *so that* in place of *will*; the simple present expresses a future meaning. *Would* is used in past sentences; as in (g).

*NOTE: In order that has the same meaning as *so that* but is less commonly used.*

Example: *I turned off the TV in order that my roommate could study in peace and quiet.*

Both *so that* and *in order that* introduce adverb clauses. It is unusual, but possible, to put these adverb clauses at the beginning of a sentence: *So that my roommate could study in peace and quiet, I turned off the TV.*

**Also possible but less common: the use of may or might in place of can or could: e.g., I cashed a check *so that I might* buy my textbooks.

□ EXERCISE 13. Using SO THAT. (Chart 19-5)

Directions: Combine the ideas by using *so (that).*

1. Please turn down the radio. I want to be able to get to sleep.
   → *Please turn down the radio so (that) I can get to sleep.*

2. My wife turned down the radio. I wanted to be able to get to sleep.
   → *My wife turned down the radio so (that) I could get to sleep.*

3. Put the milk in the refrigerator. We want to make sure it won't (OR doesn't) spoil.
   → *Put the milk in the refrigerator so (that) it won't (OR doesn't) spoil.*

4. I put the milk in the refrigerator. I wanted to make sure it didn't spoil.
   → *I put the milk in the refrigerator so (that) it wouldn't spoil.*

5. Please be quiet. I want to be able to hear what Sharon is saying.

6. I asked the children to be quiet. I wanted to be able to hear what Sharon was saying.

7. I'm going to cash a check. I want to make sure that I have enough money to go to the market.

8. I cashed a check yesterday. I wanted to make sure that I had enough money to go to the market.

9. Ann and Larry have a six-year-old child. Tonight they're going to hire a babysitter. They want to be able to go out with some friends.

10. Last week Ann and Larry hired a babysitter. They wanted to be able to go to a dinner party at the home of Larry's boss.
11. Be sure to put the meat in the oven at 5:00. You want to be sure that it will be (OR is) ready to eat by 6:30.
12. Yesterday I put the meat in the oven at 5:00. I wanted it to be ready to eat by 6:30.
13. I'm going to leave the party early. I want to be able to get a good night's sleep tonight.
14. When it started to rain, Harry opened his umbrella. He wanted to be sure he didn't get wet.
15. The little boy pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay home from school.
16. A lot of people were standing in front of me. I stood on tiptoes. I wanted to see the parade better.

EXERCISE 14. Using SO THAT. (Chart 19-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences in Column A with the ideas in Column B. Pay special attention to the verb forms following so that.

Example: Ali borrowed an eraser so that . . . .
   → Ali borrowed an eraser so that he could erase a mistake in his composition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ali borrowed an eraser so that</td>
<td>A. wash my clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I turned on the radio so that . . .</td>
<td>B. read the fine print at the bottom of the contract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I need to buy some detergent so that . . .</td>
<td>C. not sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Roberto fixed the leak in the boat so that . . .</td>
<td>D. erase a mistake in his composition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Mr. Kwan is studying the history and government of Canada so that . . .</td>
<td>E. travel in Europe next summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Ms. Gow put on her reading glasses so that . . .</td>
<td>F. listen to the news</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Jane is taking a course in auto mechanics so that . . .</td>
<td>G. see the dancers in the street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Omar is working hard to impress his supervisor so that . . .</td>
<td>H. fix her own car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Po is saving his money so that . . .</td>
<td>I. become a Canadian citizen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. During the parade, Toshi lifted his daughter to his shoulder so that . . .</td>
<td>J. be considered for a promotion at his company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 15. Using SO THAT. (Chart 19-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

Examples: Sam took lots of pictures on his vacation so (that) . . . .
   → Sam took lots of pictures on his vacation so (that) he could show us where he'd been.

. . . so (that) I could see better.
   → I moved to the front of the room so (that) I could see better.

1. I need a pen so (that) . . . .
2. . . . so (that) he can improve his English.
3. I turned on the TV so (that) . . . .
4. Mary hurried to get the child out of the road so (that) . . . .
5. . . . so (that) he wouldn't miss his important appointment.
6. I'm taking a bus instead of flying so (that) . . . .
7. . . . so (that) I could tell him the news in person.
8. ... so (that) his children will have a better life.
9. Martina is trying to improve her English so (that) ....
10. ... so (that) the celebration would be a great success.
11. Tarek borrowed some money from his friend so (that) ....
12. ... so (that) you can be ready to leave on time.

- EXERCISE 16. Summary: cause and effect. (Charts 19-2 – 19-5)

**Directions:** Using the given words, make sentences about yourself, your friends, your family, your classes, today's weather, current events in the world, etc.

1. now that
2. therefore
3. for (meaning because)
4. consequently
5. so (meaning therefore)
6. since (meaning because)
7. in order to
8. so that
9. so ... that
10. such ... that
11. because
12. because of
13. due to
14. due to the fact that

- EXERCISE 17. Showing contrast (unexpected result). (Chart 19-6)

**Directions:** Complete the sentences with the given words. Pay close attention to the given punctuation and capitalization.

**PART I.** Complete the sentences with **but, even though, or nevertheless.**

1. Bob ate a large dinner. **Nevertheless** , he is still hungry.
2. Bob ate a large dinner. **but** he is still hungry.

**PART II.** Complete the sentences with the given words: despite, in spite of, despite the fact that, in spite of the fact that.

1. I went swimming **despite the cold weather.**
2. I went swimming **in spite of the cold weather.**
3. I went swimming **despite the fact that the weather was cold.**
4. I went swimming **in spite of the fact that the weather was cold.**
3. Bob is still hungry **even though** he ate a large dinner.

4. I had a lot of studying to do, **I went to a movie anyway.**

5. I had a lot of studying to do, **I went to a movie.**

6. **I had a lot of studying to do, I went to a movie.**

7. I finished all of my work **I was very sleepy.**

8. I was very sleepy, **I finished all of my work anyway.**

9. I was very sleepy, **I finished all of my work.**

**PART II.** Complete the sentences with **yet, although, or however.**

10. I washed my hands, **they still looked dirty.**

11. I washed my hands, **they still looked dirty.**

12. **I washed my hands, they still looked dirty.**

13. Diana didn't know how to swim, **she jumped into the swimming pool.**

14. **Diana didn’t know how to swim, she jumped into the swimming pool.**

15. Diana didn’t know how to swim, **she jumped into the swimming pool.**

**EXERCISE 18. Showing contrast (unexpected result). (Chart 19-6)**

_Directions:_ Add commas, periods, and capital letters as necessary. Do not add, omit, or change any words.

1. Anna's father gave her some good advice nevertheless she did not follow it.

   → _Anna’s father gave her some good advice. Nevertheless, she did not follow it._

2. Anna's father gave her some good advice but she didn't follow it.

3. Even though Anna's father gave her some good advice she didn't follow it.

4. Anna's father gave her some good advice she did not follow it however.

5. Thomas was thirsty I offered him some water he refused it.

6. Thomas refused the water although he was thirsty.

7. Thomas was thirsty nevertheless he refused the glass of water I brought him.

8. Thomas was thirsty yet he refused to drink the water that I offered him.
EXERCISE 19. Showing contrast (unexpected result). (Chart 19-6)

Directions: Combine the ideas in the two sentences, using the given words. Discuss correct punctuation. Use the negative if necessary to make a logical statement.

1. We went for a walk. It was raining.
   even though
   but . . . anyway
   nevertheless
   in spite of
   because

2. His grades were low. He was admitted to the university.
   although
   yet . . . still
   nonetheless
   despite
   because of

EXERCISE 20. Showing opposition (unexpected result). (Chart 19-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words. Add commas where appropriate.

1. I had a cold but I _______________________________ anyway.

2. Even though I had a cold I _______________________________

3. Although I didn't study _______________________________

4. I didn't study but _______________________________ anyway.

5. I got an "A" on the test even though _______________________________

6. Even though Howard is a careful driver _______________________________

7. Even though the food they served for dinner tasted terrible _______________________________

8. My shirt still has coffee stains on it even though _______________________________

9. I still trust him even though _______________________________

10. Even though he was drowning no one _______________________________

11. Although I tried to be very careful _______________________________

12. Even though Ruth is one of my best friends _______________________________

13. It's still hot in here even though _______________________________

14. Even though I had a big breakfast _______________________________
EXERCISE 21. Showing contrast (unexpected result). (Chart 19-6)

**Directions:** Create sentences with the same meaning by using *in spite of* or *despite.*

1. Even though her grades were low, she was admitted to the university.
   → *In spite of her low grades,*
   → *Despite her low grades,*
   → *In spite of the fact that her grades were low,*
   → *Despite the fact that her grades were low,* she was admitted to the university.
2. I like living in the dorm even though it is noisy.
3. Even though the work was hard, they enjoyed themselves.
4. They wanted to climb the mountain even though it was dangerous.
5. Although the weather was extremely hot, they went jogging in the park.
6. He is unhappy even though he has a vast fortune.

EXERCISE 22. Showing contrast (unexpected result). (Chart 19-6)

**Directions:** Complete the sentences, punctuating carefully. (Correct punctuation is not indicated in the given cues.) Capitalize as necessary.

1. I didn't . . . but . . . anyway.
2. He is very old yet he still . . .
3. . . . nevertheless we arrived on schedule.
4. Even though she wanted . . .
5. I wanted . . . however I . . . because . . .
6. The teacher . . . even though . . .
7. Although . . . only . . . years old . . .
8. She never went to school however she . . . despite her lack of education.
9. Despite the fact that my . . .
10. I have decided to . . . even though . . .

19-7 SHOWING DIRECT CONTRAST

All of the sentences have the same meaning.

| ADVERB CLAUSES       | while            | (a) Mary is rich, *while* John is poor. |
|                      | whereas          | (b) John is poor, *while* Mary is rich. |
|                      |                  | (c) Mary is rich, *whereas* John is poor. |
|                      |                  | (d) *Whereas* Mary is rich, John is poor. |
| CONJUNCTION          | but              | (e) Mary is rich, *but* John is poor. |
|                      |                  | (f) John is poor, *but* Mary is rich. |
| TRANSITIONS          | however          | (g) Mary is rich; *however,* John is poor. |
|                      | *on the other hand* | (h) John is poor; Mary is rich, *however.* |
|                      |                  | (i) Mary is rich. John, *on the other hand,* is *poor.* |
|                      |                  | (j) John is poor. Mary, *on the other hand,* is rich. |
EXERCISE 23. Showing direct contrast. (Chart 19-7)

Directions: Create sentences with the same meaning by using however or on the other hand. Punctuate carefully.

1. Florida has a warm climate, whereas Alaska has a cold climate.
2. While Fred is a good student, his brother is lazy.
3. In the United States, gambling casinos are not legal in most places, while in my country it is possible to gamble in any city or town.
4. Sue and Ron are expecting a child. Sue is hoping for a boy, whereas Ron is hoping for a girl.
5. Old people in my country usually live with their children, whereas the old in the United States often live by themselves.

EXERCISE 24. Showing direct contrast. (Chart 19-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

1. Some people really enjoy swimming, while others . . . are afraid of water.
2. In the United States, people drive on the right-hand side of the road. However, people in . . .
3. While my apartment always seems to be a mess, my . . .
4. Marge keeps to herself and has few friends. Carol, on the other hand, . . .
5. People who grew up on farms are accustomed to dealing with various kinds of animals. However, city people like myself . . .
6. Teak is a hard wood that is difficult to cut. Balsa, on the other hand, . . .
7. My oldest son is shy, while my youngest son . . .
8. I'm right-handed. That means that I can accomplish difficult manipulations with my right hand. However, . . .

EXERCISE 25. Activity: expressing direct contrast. (Chart 19-7)

Directions: What aspects of your country and the United States or Canada are in contrast? Use while, whereas, however, on the other hand.

1. Size?
2. Population?
3. Food?
4. Time of meals?
5. Climate?
6. Political system?
7. Economic system?
8. Educational system?
9. Religion?
10. Student life?
11. Coffee/tea?
12. Role of women?
13. Language?
14. Educational costs?
15. Medical care?
16. Family relationships?
17. Public transportation?
18. Length of history?
19. Dating customs?
20. Predictability of the weather?
D EXERCISE 26. Showing cause and effect and contrast.
(Charts 19-1, 19-2, 19-7, and 19-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences, using the words and phrases below. There may be more than one possible completion. Add any necessary punctuation and capitalization.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>although</th>
<th>despite the fact that</th>
<th>nevertheless</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>even though</td>
<td>now that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because of</td>
<td>however</td>
<td>therefore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It was cold and wet **Nevertheless**, Bob put on his swimming suit and went to the beach.

2. I can’t ride my bicycle ________________ there isn’t any air in one of the tires.

3. I got to class on time ________________ I had missed my bus.

4. Brian used to be an active person, but now he has to limit his activities ________________ problems with his health.

5. It should be easy for Bob to find more time to spend with his children ________________ he no longer has to work in the evenings and on weekends.

6. Jake is a very good student of languages. His brother Michael ________________ has never been able to master another language.

7. The ancient Aztecs of Mexico had no technology for making tools from metal ________________ they had sharp knives and spears. They made them from a stone called obsidian.

8. Garlic was believed in ancient Rome to make people courageous ________________ Roman soldiers ate large quantities of it before a battle.

9. I usually enjoy attending amateur productions in small community theaters. The play we attended last night ________________ was so bad that I wanted to leave after the first act.

10. Some snakes are poisonous ________________ others are harmless.

11. Roberta missed the meeting without a good reason ________________ she had been told that it was critical that she be there. I wouldn't want to be in her shoes at work tomorrow.
19-8 EXPRESSING CONDITIONS: USING OTHERWISE AND OR (ELSE)

| ADVERB CLAUSE | (a) If I don't eat breakfast, I get hungry. | (b) You'll be late if you don't hurry. | (c) You'll get wet unless you take your umbrella. | If and unless state conditions that produce certain results. (See Charts 17-5 and 17-8, pp. 367 and 370.) |
| TRANSITION | (d) I always eat breakfast. Otherwise, I get hungry during class. | (e) You'd better hurry. Otherwise, you'll be late. | (f) Take your umbrella. Otherwise, you'll get wet. |
| CONJUNCTION | (g) I always eat breakfast, or (else) I get hungry during class. | (h) You'd better hurry, or (else) you'll be late. | (i) Take your umbrella, or (else) you'll get wet. | Otherwise expresses the idea "if the opposite is true, then there will be a certain result." In (d): otherwise = if I don't eat breakfast. Otherwise and otherwise have the same meaning. |

Exercise 27. Using OTHERWISE and OR (ELSE). (Chart 19-8)

Directions: Create sentences with the same meaning by using otherwise or or else.

1. If I don't call my mother, she'll start worrying about me.
   → I am going to I should I had better I have to I must call my mother. Otherwise, she'll start worrying about me.

2. If you don't leave now, you'll be late for class.
3. If you don't go to bed, your cold will get worse.
4. Unless you have a ticket, you can't get into the theater.
5. You can't enter that country unless you have a passport.
6. If Tom doesn't get a job soon, his family won't have enough money for food.
7. Only if you speak both Japanese and Chinese fluently will you be considered for that job.*
8. Mary can go to school only if she gets a scholarship.
9. If I don't wash my clothes tonight, I won't have any clean clothes to wear tomorrow.

*Notice that the subject and verb in the main clause are inverted because the sentence begins with only if. See Chart 17-9, pp. 371.

Connectives That Express Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition 401
Exercise 28. Expressing conditions. (Charts 17-5, 17-9, and 19-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences, punctuating correctly. Use capital letters where appropriate.

1. I am going to ... even if ....
2. We have no choice we have to ... whether ....
3. I will go to ... only if ....
4. ... is very inconsiderate he plays his record player even if ....
5. I can't . . . unless ....
6. Tomorrow I'd better . . . otherwise ....
7. You should . . . in case ....
8. I will . . . only if ....
9. I will . . . unless ....
10. ... must . . . otherwise ....

Exercise 29. Summary of connectives. (Chart 19-9)

Directions: Using the two ideas of to study and to pass or fail the exam, complete the sentences. Punctuate and capitalize correctly.

1. Because I did not study ? I failed the exam.
2. I failed the exam because
3. Although I studied
4. I did not study therefore
5. I did not study however
6. I studied nevertheless
7. Even though I did not study
8. I did not study so
9. Since I did not study
10. If I study for the test ____________________________
11. Unless I study for the test ____________________________
12. I must study otherwise ____________________________
13. Even if I study ____________________________
14. I did not study consequently ____________________________
15. I did not study nonetheless ____________________________
16. I will probably fail the test whether ____________________________
17. I failed the exam for ____________________________
18. I have to study so that ____________________________
19. Only if I study ____________________________
20. I studied hard yet ____________________________
21. You'd better study or else ____________________________

EXERCISE 30. Summary of connectives. (Chart 19-9)
Directions: Using the ideas of to be hungry (or not to be hungry) and to eat breakfast (or not to eat breakfast), complete the following. Punctuate and capitalize correctly.

1. Because I was not hungry this morning ____________________________
2. Because I ate breakfast this morning ____________________________ now.
3. Because I was hungry this morning ____________________________
4. I did not eat breakfast this morning even though ____________________________
5. Although I was hungry this morning ____________________________
6. I was hungry this morning therefore ____________________________
7. I was hungry this morning nevertheless ____________________________
8. I was so hungry this morning ____________________________
9. I was not hungry this morning but ____________________________
10. I ate breakfast this morning even though ____________________________
11. Since I did not eat breakfast this morning ____________________________
12. I ate breakfast this morning nonetheless ____________________________
13. I was not hungry so ____________________________
14. Even though I did not eat breakfast this morning ____________________________
15. I never eat breakfast unless ______________________________________
16. I always eat breakfast whether or not ________________________________
17. I eat breakfast even if _____________________________________________
18. Now that I have eaten breakfast _____________________________________
19. I eat breakfast only if ______________________________________________
20. I ate breakfast this morning yet _____________________________________
21. Even if I am hungry _______________________________________________
22. I was not hungry however __________________________________________

☐ EXERCISE 31. Summary of connectives. (Chart 19-9)
Directions: Using the given words, combine the following two ideas. The time is now, so use present and future tenses.

(a) to go (or not to go) to the beach    (b) hot, cold, nice weather
1. because → Because the weather is cold, we aren’t going to go to the beach.
   → We’re going to go to the beach because the weather is hot.

2. so ... that 9. because of 16. therefore
3. so 10. consequently 17. only if
4. nevertheless 11. as soon as 18. nonetheless
5. despite 12. such . . . that 19. in spite of
6. now that 13. since 20. even if
7. once 14. but . . . anyway 21. yet ... still
8. although 15. unless 22. whether . . or not

☐ EXERCISE 32. Summary of connectives. (Chart 19-9)
Directions: Complete the sentences, adding punctuation and capitalization.

1. While some people are optimists . . .
2. Even though he drank a glass of water . . . still . . .
3. Even if she invites me to her party . . .
4. I have never been to Hawaii my parents however . . .
5. I couldn’t . . . for my arms were full of packages.
6. I need to borrow some money so that . . .
7. The airport was closed due to fog therefore . . .
8. . . . therefore the airport was closed.
9. As soon as the violinist played the last note at the concert . . .
10. Since neither my roommate nor I know how to cook.
11. I am not a superstitious person nevertheless.
12. The crops will fail unless.
13. Just as I was getting ready to eat dinner last night.
14. We must work quickly otherwise.
15. Some children are noisy and wild my brother's children on the other hand.
16. According to the newspaper, now that.
17. Ever since I can remember.
18. Although my.
19. The United States whereas.
20. I was tired however I... because.
21. You must... whether.
22. ... nevertheless I could not understand what the person who... because.

EXERCISE 33. Error analysis: general review. (Chapters 16→19)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Unless I study very hard, I will pass all of my exams.
2. My shoes and pants got muddy. Even though I walked carefully through the wet streets.
3. My neighborhood is quiet and safe however I always lock my doors.
4. Although I usually don't like Mexican food, but I liked the food I had at the Mexican restaurant last night.
5. Although my room in the dormitory is very small, but I like it. Because it is a place where I can be by myself and studying in peace and quiet.
6. Despite I prefer to be a history teacher, I am studying in the Business School in order for I can get a job in industry.
7. A little girl approached the cage however when the tiger shows its teeth and growls she run to her mother. Because she was frightened.
8. Many of the people working to save our environment think that they are fighting a losing battle. Because big business, and the government have not joined together to eliminate pollution.

9. The weather was so cold that I don't like to leave my apartment.

10. I have to study four hour every day because of my courses are difficult.

11. On the third day of our voyage, we sailed across a rough sea before to reach the shore.

12. I can't understand the lectures in my psychology class therefore my roommate lets me borrow her notes.

13. According to this legend, a man went in search of a hidden village, he finally found it after walk two hundred mile.

14. Because my country it is located in a subtropical area, so the weather is hot.

15. I will stay at the united state for two more year. Because I want finish my degree before go home.

EXERCISE 34. Activity: connectives. (Chart 19-9)

Directions: Form a group of four people. One of you will begin a "chain sentence" by speaking the given words plus one, two, or three additional words. Each of the others should add one, two, or three words until the sentence is completed. The maximum number of words a person can add is three. When you complete your sentence, one person in the group should write it down (with correct punctuation, spelling, and capitalization).

Example: Although education is ....

SPEAKER A: Although education is **important**, ....

SPEAKER B: Although education is important, **some students** ....

SPEAKER c: Although education is important, some students would rather ....

SPEAKER D: Although education is important, some students would rather fly a kite ....

SPEAKER A: Although education is important, some students would rather fly a kite **than** ....

SPEAKER B: Although education is important, some students would rather fly a kite than **go to class**.

FINAL SENTENCE: Although education is important, some students would rather fly a kite than **go to class**.

1. Because we are ....

2. Unless you ....

3. Students have to study. Otherwise, ....

4. In spite of the fact that students ....

5. Even if we ....

6. Only if ....

7. An educated populace is important to a nation's future. Therefore, ....

8. I was so confused when the teacher ....

9. Now that we ....

10. Even though students who ....
EXERCISE 35. Review: punctuation and capitalization. (Chapters 13 and 16 → 19)

Directions: Add appropriate punctuation and capitalization. Notice how these clarify meaning in written English.

1. I did not expect to get a pay raise nevertheless I accepted when my boss offered it.
   → I did not expect to get a pay raise. Nevertheless, I accepted when my boss offered it.

2. Although a computer has tremendous power and speed it cannot think for itself a human operator is needed to give a computer instructions for it cannot initially tell itself what to do.

3. Being a lawyer in private practice I work hard but I do not go into my office on either Saturday or Sunday if clients insist upon seeing me on those days they have to come to my home.

4. Whenever the weather is nice I walk to school but when it is cold or wet I either take the bus or get a ride with one of my friends even though my brother has a car I never ask him to take me to school because he is very busy he has a new job and has recently gotten married so he doesn't have time to drive me to and from school anymore I know he would give me a ride if I asked him to but I don't want to bother him.

5. The common cold which is the most widespread of all diseases continues to plague humanity despite the efforts of scientists to find its prevention and cure even though colds are minor illnesses they are one of the principal causes of absence from school and work people of all ages get colds but children and adults who live with children get them the most colds can be dangerous for elderly people because they can lead to other infections I have had three colds so far this year I eat the right kinds of food get enough rest and exercise regularly nevertheless I still get at least one cold a year.

6. Whenever my father goes fishing we know we will have fish to eat for dinner for even if he doesn't catch any he stops at the fish market on his way home and buys some.
EXERCISE 36. Review: showing relationships. (Chapters 5 and 16 → 19)

Directions: Using the words in parentheses, combine the sentences to show relationships between the ideas. Punctuate and capitalize correctly.

1. a. Jack hates going to the dentist.
   b. He should see his dentist soon.
   c. He has a very bad toothache.
   (even though, because)
   → Even though Jack hates going to the dentist, he should see his dentist soon because he has a very bad toothache.

2. a. You may really mean what you say.
    b. I'll give you one more chance.
    c. You have to give me your best effort.
    d. You'll lose your job.
    (if, but, otherwise)

3. a. The weather is bad.
    b. I'm going to stay home.
    c. The weather may change.
    d. I don't want to go to the picnic.
    (due to, even if)

4. a. The children had eaten lunch.
    b. They got hungry in the middle of the afternoon.
    c. I took them to the market.
    d. They wanted to get some fruit for a snack.
    e. We went home for dinner.
    (even though, therefore, so that, before)

5. a. Robert is totally exhausted after playing tennis.
    b. Marge isn't even tired.
    c. She ran around a lot more during the game.
    (whereas, in spite of the fact that)

6. a. Many animals are most vulnerable to predators when they are grazing.
    b. Giraffes are most vulnerable when they are drinking.
    c. They must spread their legs awkwardly in order to lower their long necks to the water in front of them.
    d. It is difficult and time-consuming for them to stand up straight again to escape a predator.
    e. Once they are up and running, they are faster than most of their predators.
    (while, consequently, however)
7. a. My boss promised me that I could have two full weeks.
b. It seems that I can't take my vacation after all.
c. I have to train the new personnel this summer.
d. I may not get a vacation in the fall either.
e. I will be angry.
   (even though, because, if)

8. a. Education, business, and government are all dependent on computers.
b. It is advisable for all students to have basic computer skills.
c. They graduate from high school and enter the work force or college.
d. A course called "Computer Literacy" has recently become a requirement for graduation from Westside High School.
e. Maybe you will want more information about this course.
f. You can call the academic counselor at the high school.
   (since, before, therefore, if)

☐ EXERCISE 37. Review: showing relationships. (Chapters 5 and 13 → 19)

Directions: Write out the sentences on another piece of paper, completing them with your own words. Some punctuation is given; add other punctuation as necessary. (NOTE: Some of your sentences will have to get a little complicated.)

Examples: I have trouble__________, so I__________when I__________
   → I have trouble remembering people's names, so I concentrate when I first meet someone.

I wanted to__________Nevertheless, I__________because__________
   → I wanted to go to Chicago. Nevertheless, I stayed home because I had to study for final exams.

1. __________sore throat. Nevertheless,__________.
2. I__________. My__________, on the other hand, ________.
3. When a small, black insect__________, I__________because__________.
4. I__________because__________However,__________.
5. Even though I told__________that__________,__________.
6. According to the newspaper, now that__________Therefore,__________.
7. Since neither the man who__________nor__________, I__________.
8. When people who__________,__________because__________.
9. Since I didn't know whose__________, I__________.
10. Even though the book which__________, I__________.
11. What did the woman who__________when you__________?
12. If what he said__________
13. Because the man who__________
14. Even though she didn't understand what the man who

15. Now that all of the students who

16. Since the restaurant where we

☐ EXERCISE 38. Error analysis: general review. (Chapters 1 → 19)

Directions: These passages are taken from student writing. You are the editor for these students. Rewrite the passages, correcting errors and making whatever revisions in phrasing or vocabulary you feel will help the writers say what they intended to say.

Example: My idea of the most important thing in life. It is to be healthy. Because a person can't enjoy life without health.

→ In my opinion, the most important thing in life is good health, for a person cannot enjoy life fully without it.

1. We went shopping after ate dinner. But the stores were closed. We had to go back home even we hadn't found what were we looking for.

2. I want explain that I know alot of grammers but is my problem I haven't enough vocabularies.

3. When I got lost in the bus station a kind man helped me, he explained how to read the huge bus schedule on the wall. Took me to the window to buy a ticket and showed me where was my bus, I will always appreciate his kindness.

4. I had never understand the important of know English language. Until I worked at a large international company.

5. Since I was young my father found an American woman to teach me and my brothers English, but when we move to other town my father wasn't able to find other teacher for other five years.

6. I was surprised to see the room that I was given at the dormitory. Because there aren't any furniture, and dirty.

7. When I meet Mr. Lee for the first time, we played ping pong at the student center even though we can't communicate very well, but we had a good time.

8. Because the United States is a large and also big country. It means that they're various kinds of people live there and it has a diverse population.
9. My grammar class was start at 10:35. When the teacher was coming to class, she returned the last quiz to my classmates and I. After we have had another quiz.

10. If a wife has a work, her husband should share the houseworks with her. If both of them help, the houseworks can be finish much faster.

11. The first time I went skiing. I was afraid to go down the hill. But somewhere from a little corner of my head kept shouting, "Why not! Give it a try. You'll make it!" After stand around for ten minutes without moving. Finally, I decided go down that hill.

12. This is a story about a man. He had a big garden. One day he was sleeping in his garden. Then he woke up. He ate some fruit. Then he picked some apples and he walked to a small river and he saw a beautiful woman was on the other side. And he gave her some apples and then she gave him a loaf of bread. The two of them walked back to the garden. Then some children came and were playing games with him. Everyone was laughing and smiling. Then one child destroyed a flower and the man became angry and he said to them, "Get out of here." Then the children left and the beautiful woman left. Then the man built a wall around his garden and would not let anyone in. He stayed in his garden all alone for the rest of his life.

☐ EXERCISE 39. Activity: general review. (Chapters 1 → 19)

Directions: Read and discuss.

In prehistoric times, humans probably spoke between 10,000 and 15,000 languages. Today about 6,000 languages are spoken around the world. Experts predict that up to 50 percent of these languages will probably become extinct during the 21st century.

Question for discussion and/or writing:
What do you think accounts for the decrease in the number of languages in the world?
CHAPTER 20

Conditional Sentences and Wishes

CONTENTS

20-1 Overview of basic verb forms used in conditional sentences
20-2 True in the present or future
20-3 Untrue (contrary to fact) in the present or future
20-4 Untrue (contrary to fact) in the past
20-5 Using progressive verb forms in conditional sentences
20-6 Using "mixed time" in conditional sentences
20-7 Omitting if
20-8 Implied conditions
20-9 Using as if/as though
20-10 Verb forms following wish
20-11 Using would to make wishes about the future

A conditional sentence typically consists of an if-clause (which presents a condition) and a result clause.* Example: *If it rains, the streets get wet.

*See Charts 17-1 (p. 359) and 17-5 (p. 367) for the basic structure of adverb clauses of condition.

EXERCISE 1. Preview: conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-4)

Directions: Answer the questions with "yes" or "no."

1. *If the weather had been good yesterday, our picnic would not have been canceled.*
   a. Was the picnic canceled? **yes**
   b. Was the weather good? **no**

2. *If I had an envelope and a stamp, I would mail this letter right now.*
   a. Do I have an envelope and a stamp right now? **______**
   b. Do I want to mail this letter right now? **______**
   c. Am I going to mail this letter right now? **______**

3. *Ann would have made it to class on time this morning if the bus hadn't been late.*
   a. Did Ann try to make it to class on time? **______**
   b. Did Ann make it to class on time? **______**
   c. Was the bus late? **______**

4. *If the hotel had been built to withstand an earthquake, it would not have collapsed.*
   a. Was the hotel built to withstand an earthquake? **______**
   b. Did the hotel collapse? **______**

412
5. *If* I were a carpenter, *I would build* my own house.
   a. Do I want to build my own house? 
   b. Am I going to build my own house? 
   c. Am I a carpenter? 

6. *If* I didn’t have any friends, *I would be* lonely.
   a. Am I lonely? 
   b. Do I have friends? 

7. *If* Bob had asked me to keep the news a secret, *I wouldn’t have told* anybody.
   a. Did I tell anybody the news? 
   b. Did Bob ask me to keep it a secret? 

8. *If* Ann and Jan, who are twins, dressed alike and had the same hairstyle, *I wouldn’t be able to* tell them apart.
   a. Do Ann and Jan dress alike? 
   b. Do they have the same hairstyle? 
   c. Can I tell them apart? 

### 20-1 OVERVIEW OF BASIC VERB FORMS USED IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SITUATION</th>
<th>IF-CLAUSE</th>
<th>RESULT CLAUSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>True in the present/future</td>
<td>simple present</td>
<td>simple present</td>
<td>If I <em>have</em> enough time, I <em>watch</em> TV every evening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>will + simple form</td>
<td>If I <em>have</em> enough time, I <em>will watch</em> TV later on tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Untrue in the present/future</td>
<td>simple past</td>
<td>would + simple form</td>
<td>If I <em>had</em> enough time, I <em>would watch</em> TV now or later on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Untrue in the past</td>
<td>past perfect</td>
<td>would have + past participle</td>
<td>If I <em>had had</em> enough time, I <em>would have watched</em> TV yesterday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### D EXERCISE 2. Basic verb forms in conditional sentences. (Chart 20-1)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

1. **SITUATION:** I usually write my parents a letter every week. That is a true fact. In other words:
   If I *(have)* **have** enough time, I *(write)* **write** my parents a letter every week.
2. SITUATION: I may have enough time to write my parents a letter later tonight. I want to write them a letter tonight. Both of those things are true. In other words:

If I (have) _________ enough time, I (write) ____________________ my parents a letter **later tonight**.

3. SITUATION: I don't have enough time right now, so I won't write my parents a letter. I'll try to do it later. I want to write them, but the truth is that I just don't have enough time right now. In other words:

If I (have) _________ enough time **right now**, I (write) ____________________ my parents a letter.

4. SITUATION: I won't have enough time tonight, so I won't write my parents a letter. I'll try to do it tomorrow. I want to write them, but the truth is that I just won't have enough time. In other words:

If I (have) _________ enough time **later tonight**, I (write) ____________________ my parents a letter.

5. SITUATION: I wanted to write my parents a letter last night, but I didn't have enough time. In other words:

If I (have) _________ enough time, I (write) ____________________ my parents a letter **last night**.

### 20–2 True in the Present or Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) If I don't eat breakfast, I always get hungry during class.</td>
<td>In conditional sentences that express true, factual ideas in the present/future, the simple present (not the simple future) is used in the if-clause. The result clause has various possible verb forms. A result clause verb can be: 1. the simple present, to express a habitual activity or situation, as in (a). 2. either the simple present or the simple future, to express an established, predictable fact or general truth, as in (b). 3. the simple future, to express a particular activity or situation in the future, as in (c). 4. modals and phrasal modals such as should, might, can, be going to, as in (d).* 5. an imperative verb, as in (e).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Water freezes OR will freeze if the temperature reaches 32°F/0°C.</td>
<td>Sometimes should is used in an if-clause. It indicates a little more uncertainty than the use of the simple present, but basically the meaning of examples (c) and (f) is the same.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) If I don't eat breakfast tomorrow morning, I will get hungry during class.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) If it rains, we should stay home. If it rains, I might decide to stay home. If it rains, we can't go. If it rains, we're going to stay home.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) If anyone calls, please take a message.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) If anyone should call, please take a message.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See Chart 9-1, p. 151, for a list of modals and phrasal modals.
EXERCISE 3. True in the present or future. (Chart 20-2)

Directions: Answer the questions. Pay special attention to the verb forms in the result clauses. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

1. If it rains, what always happens?*
2. If it rains tomorrow, what will happen?
3. If it should rain tomorrow, what will you do or not do?
4. If it's cold tomorrow, what are you going to wear to class?
5. Fish can't live out of water. If you take a fish out of water, what will happen? / If you take a fish out of water, what happens?
6. If I want to learn English faster, what should I do?
7. If you run up a hill, what does/will your heart do?**
8. Tell me what to do, where to go, and what to expect if I visit your hometown as a tourist.

---

UNTRUE (CONTRARY TO FACT) IN THE PRESENT OR FUTURE

(a) If I taught this class, I wouldn't give tests.
(b) If he were here right now, he would help us.
(c) If I were you, I would accept their invitation.

In (a): In truth, I don't teach this class.
In (b): In truth, he is not here right now.
In (c): In truth, I am not you.

Note: Were is used for both singular and plural subjects. Was (with I, he, she, it) is sometimes used in informal speech: If I was you, I'd accept their invitation.

COMPARE

(d) If I had enough money, I would buy a car.
(e) If I had enough money, I could buy a car.

In (d): The speaker wants a car, but doesn't have enough money. Would expresses desired or predictable results.
In (e): The speaker is expressing one possible result. Could expresses possible options.

---

EXERCISE 4. Present or future conditional sentences. (Charts 20-2 and 20-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

1. If I have enough apples, I (bake) __________ an apple pie this afternoon.
2. If I had enough apples, I (bake) ________________ an apple pie this afternoon.
3. I will fix your bicycle if I (have) ________________ a screwdriver of the proper size.
4. I would fix your bicycle if I (have) ________________ a screwdriver of the proper size.
5. Sally always answers the phone if she (be) ________________ in her office.
6. Sally would answer the phone if she (be) ________________ in her office right now.

*In true conditional sentences that express a habitual activity or general truth, if is very close in meaning to when or whenever. These sentences have essentially the same meaning:
If it rains, the streets get wet.
When it rains, the streets get wet.
Whenever it rains, the streets get wet.

**In this sentence, you is an impersonal pronoun. Begin the response to this question with "If you run . . . ."
7. I (be, not) a student in this class if English (be) my native language.

8. Most people know that oil floats on water. If you pour oil on water, it (float)

9. If there (be) no oxygen on earth, life as we know it (exist, not)

10. My evening newspaper has been late every day this week. If the paper (arrive, not) on time today, I'm going to cancel my subscription.

11. If (be) a bird, I (want, not) to live my whole life in a cage.

12. How old (human beings, live) to be if all diseases in the world (be) completely eradicated?

13. If you boil water, it (disappear) into the atmosphere as vapor.

14. If people (have) paws instead of hands with fingers and opposable thumbs, the machines we use in everyday life (have to) be constructed very differently. We (be, not) able to turn knobs, push small buttons, or hold tools and utensils securely.

☐ EXERCISE 5. Activity: present or future untrue conditions. (Chart 20-3)

Directions: In small groups or as a class, discuss the questions.

Under what conditions, if any, would you . . .
1. exceed the speed limit while driving?
2. lie to your best friend?
3. disobey an order from your boss?
4. steal food?
5. carry a friend on your back for a long distance?
6. not pay your rent?
7. (Make up other conditions for your classmates to discuss.)
EXERCISE 6. Activity: present conditionals. (Chart 20-3)

Directions: Use the statistics in PART I to answer the question in PART II. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

PART I. POPULATION STATISTICS
1. 51% of the world's population is female.
2. 57% of the people in the world are from Asia, the Middle East, and the South Pacific.
3. 21% are Europeans.
4. 14% are from the Western Hemisphere.
5. 8% are from Africa.
6. 50% of the world's population suffers from malnutrition.
7. 30% of the world's population is illiterate. 60% of the people who are illiterate are women.
8. 1% of the world's population has a college education.
9. 6% of the people in the world own half of the world's wealth.
10. One person in three is below 15 years of age. One person in ten is over 65 years old.

PART II. QUESTION
If there were only one village on earth and it had exactly 100 people, who would it consist of? Assuming that the village would reflect global population statistics, describe the people in this imaginary village. Use the illustration to point out the number of people who fit each description you make.

→ If there were only one village on earth and it had exactly 100 people, 51 of them would be women and 49 of them would be men. More than half of the people in the village (57 of them) would . . . (continue describing the village).
20-4 UNTRUE (CONTRARY TO FACT) IN THE PAST

(a) If you had told me about the problem, I would have helped you.
(b) If they had studied, they would have passed the exam.
(c) If I hadn't slipped on the stairs, I wouldn't have broken my arm.

In (a): In truth, you did not tell me about it.
In (b): In truth, they did not study. Therefore, they failed the exam.
In (c): In truth, I slipped on the stairs. I broke my arm.
Note: The auxiliary verbs are almost always contracted in speech. "If you'd told me, I would've helped you (OR I'd've helped you)."

COMPARE
(d) If I had had enough money, I would have bought a car.
(e) If I had had enough money, I could have bought a car.

In (d): would expresses a desired or predictable result.
In (e): could expresses a possible option; could have bought = would have been able to buy.

*In casual, informal speech, some native speakers sometimes use would have in an if-clause: If you would've told me about the problem, I would've helped you. This verb form usage is generally considered not to be grammatically correct standard English, but it occurs fairly commonly.

EXERCISE 7. Conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

1. If I (have) ___________ enough money, I will go with you.
2. If I (have) ___________ enough money, I would go with you.
3. If I (have) ___________ enough money, I would have gone with you.
4. If the weather is nice tomorrow, we (go) ___________ to the zoo.
5. If the weather were nice today, we (go) ___________ to the zoo.
6. If the weather had been nice yesterday, we (go) ___________ to the zoo.
7. If Sally (be) ___________ at home tomorrow, I am going to visit her.
8. Jim isn't home right now. If he (be) ___________ at home right now, I (visit) ___________ him.
9. Linda wasn't at home yesterday. If she (be) ___________ at home yesterday, I (visit) ___________ her.
10. A: Shh! Your father is taking a nap. Uh-oh. You woke him up.
    B: Gee, I'm sorry, Mom. If I (realize) ___________ he was sleeping, I (make, not) ___________ so much noise when I came in. But how was I supposed to know?
11. Last night Alex ruined his sweater when he washed it. If he (read) 
the label, he (wash, not) 


it in hot water.

12. A: Ever since I broke my foot, I haven't been able to get down to the basement to wash my clothes.
B: Why didn't you say something? I (come) 
over and (wash) them for you if you (tell) me.
A: I know you (come) right away if I (call) you. I guess I didn't want to bother you.
B: Nonsense! What are good neighbors for?

- Exercise 8. Untrue in the past. (Chart 20-4)
  Directions: Work in pairs.
  Speaker A: Your book is open. Give the cue.
  Speaker B: Your book is closed. Begin your response with "But if I had known . . . ."
  Example:
  Speaker A (book open): There was a test yesterday. You didn't know that, so you didn't study.
  Speaker B (book closed): But if I had known (that there was a test yesterday), I would have studied.

1. Your friend was in the hospital. You didn't know that, so you didn't visit her.
2. I've never met your friend. You didn't know that, so you didn't introduce me.
3. There was a meeting last night. You didn't know that, so you didn't go.
4. Your friend's parents are in town. You didn't know that, so you didn't invite them to dinner.

Switch roles.
5. I wanted to go to the soccer game. You didn't know that, so you didn't buy a ticket for me.
6. I was at home last night. You didn't know that, so you didn't visit me.
7. Your sister wanted a gold necklace for her birthday. You didn't know that, so you didn't buy her one.
8. I had a problem. You didn't know that, so you didn't offer to help.
EXERCISE 9. Untrue conditionals. (Charts 20-3 and 20-4)

Directions: Change the statements into conditional sentences.

1. Roberto came, so I wasn't disappointed. But . . . .
   → But if he hadn't come, I would have been disappointed.

2. There are so many bugs in the room because there isn't a screen on the window. But . . . .

3. I didn't buy a bicycle because I didn't have enough money. But . . . .

4. I won't buy a bicycle because I don't have enough money. But . . . .

5. You got into so much trouble because you didn't listen to me. But . . . .

6. The woman didn't die because she received immediate medical attention. But . . . .

7. Nadia didn't pass the entrance examination, so she wasn't admitted to the university. But . . . .

8. We ran out of gas because we didn't stop at the service station. But . . . .

EXERCISE 10. Untrue conditional sentences. (Charts 20-3 and 20-4)

Directions: Make an if-clause from the given information and then supply a result clause using your own words.

Examples: I wasn't late to work yesterday.
   → If I had been late to work yesterday, I would have missed the regular morning meeting.

Tom asked my permission before he took my bicycle.
   → If Tom hadn't asked my permission before he took my bicycle, I would have been angry.

1. I wasn't absent from class yesterday.

2. I don't have enough energy today.

3. Ocean water is salty.

4. Our teacher likes his/her job.

5. People don't have wings.

6. You didn't ask for my opinion.

7. Water is heavier than air.

8. Most nations support world trade agreements.
EXERCISE 11. Review: conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 > 20-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

1. You should tell your father exactly what happened. If I (be) __________ you, I (tell) ____________________ him the truth as soon as possible.

2. If I (have) _______________ my camera with me yesterday, I (take) __________ ___________ a picture of Alex standing on his head.

3. I'm almost ready to plant my garden. I have a lot of seeds. Maybe I have more than I need. If I (have) _______________ more seeds than I need, I (give) ____________ _____________ some to my neighbor.

4. George has only two pairs of socks. If he (have) ____________ more than two pairs of socks, he (have to, not) __________________________ wash his socks so often.

5. The cowboy pulled his gun to shoot at the rattlesnake, but he was too late. If he (be) ______________ quicker to pull the trigger, the snake (bite, not) ________________________ him on the foot. It's a good thing he was wearing heavy leather boots.

6. What (we, use) ________________ to look at ourselves when we comb our hair if we (have, not) ________________ mirrors?

7. It's been a long drought. It hasn't rained for over a month. If it (rain, not) ________________, a lot of crops (die) ________________. If the crops (die) ____________, many people (go) ________________ hungry this coming winter.

8. According to one scientific theory, an asteroid collided with the earth millions of years ago, causing great changes in the earth's climate. Some scientists believe that if this asteroid (collide, not) ________________ with the earth, the dinosaurs (become, not) ________________ extinct. Can you imagine what the world (be) ________________ like today if dinosaurs (exist, still) ________________ possible for dinosaurs and human beings to coexist on the same planet?
EXERCISE 12. Untrue conditionals. (Charts 20-3 and 20-4)

Directions: Make a true statement about the given topic. Then make a contrary-to-fact conditional sentence about that statement. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

Examples:

1. yourself
   → I am twenty years old. If I were seventy years old, I would already have lived most of my life.

2. ice
   → Ice doesn't sink. If the polar ice caps sank, the level of the oceans would rise and flood coastal cities.

Topics:

1. yourself 5. peace 9. a famous person
2. fire 6. your activities right now 10. your activities last night
3. space travel 7. air 11. dinosaurs
4. vegetables 8. a member of this class 12. a member of your family

EXERCISE 13. Conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-4)

Directions: Complete each sentence with an appropriate auxiliary verb.

1. I don't have a pen, but if I __ did __, I would lend it to you.
2. He is busy right now, but if he __ weren't __, he would help us.
3. I didn't vote in the last election, but if I __ had __, I would have voted for Senator Anderson.
4. I don't have enough money, but if I __, I would buy that book.
5. The weather is cold today, but if it __, I would go swimming.
6. She didn't come, but if she __, she would have met my brother.
7. I'm not a good cook, but if I __, I would make all of my own meals.
8. I have to go to class this afternoon, but if I __, I would go downtown with you.
9. He didn't go to a doctor, but if he __, the cut on his hand wouldn't have gotten infected.
10. I always pay my bills. If I __, I would get in a lot of trouble.
11. Helium is lighter than air. If it __, a helium-filled balloon wouldn't float upward.
12. I called my husband to tell him I would be late. If I __, he would have gotten worried about me.
EXERCISE 14. Conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-4)

Directions: Work in pairs.
Speaker A: Your book is open. Ask the questions.
Speaker B: Your book is closed. Begin your answers with "No, but . . . ."

Example:
SPEAKER A (book open): Do you have a dollar?
SPEAKER B (book closed): No, but if I did (No, but if I had a dollar), I would lend it to you.

1. Are you rich?
2. Do you have a car?
3. Are you a bird?
4. Are you in (student’s country/ hometown)?
5. Do you live in a hotel?
6. Are you the teacher of this class?
7. Do you have your own airplane?
8. Did you watch TV last night?
9. Did you grow up in (another country)?

Switch roles.
10. Are you tired?
11. Are you at home right now?
12. Are you married/single?
13. Do you speak (another language)?
14. Is the weather hot/cold today?
15. Are you hungry?
16. Do you live in (a different city)?
17. Did we eat dinner together last night?
18. Did you forget to bring your grammar book to class today?

20-5 USING PROGRESSIVE VERB FORMS IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Notice the use of progressive verb forms in these examples. Even in conditional sentences, progressive verb forms are used in progressive situations. (See Chart 1-2, p. 3, for a discussion of progressive verbs.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRUE</th>
<th>CONDITIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) It is raining right now, so I will not go for a walk.</td>
<td>(b) If it were not raining right now, I would go for a walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) I am not living in Chile. I am not working at a bank.</td>
<td>(d) If I were living in Chile, I would be working at a bank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) It was raining yesterday afternoon, so I did not go for a walk.</td>
<td>(f) If it had not been raining, I would have gone for a walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) I was not living in Chile last year. I was not working at a bank.</td>
<td>(h) If I had been living in Chile last year, I would have been working at a bank.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 15. Using progressive verb forms in conditional sentences. (Chart 20-5)

Directions: Change the statements into conditional sentences.

1. It is snowing, so I won’t go with you. But . . . .
   → But if it weren’t snowing, I would go with you.
2. The child is crying because his mother isn’t here. But . . . .
3. You weren’t listening, so you didn’t understand the directions. But . . . .
4. Joe got a ticket because he was driving too fast. But . . . .
5. I was listening to the radio, so I heard the news bulletin. But ....
6. Grandpa is not wearing his hearing aid because it's broken. But ....
7. You were sleeping, so I didn't tell you the news as soon as I heard it. But ....
8. I'm enjoying myself, so I won't leave. But ....

20-6 USING "MIXED TIME" IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Frequently the time in the if-clause and the time in the result clause are different: one clause may be in the present and the other in the past. Notice that past and present times are mixed in these sentences.

(a) TRUE: I did not eat breakfast several hours ago, so I am hungry now.
(b) CONDITIONAL: If I had eaten breakfast several hours ago, I would not be hungry now.

(c) TRUE: He is not a good student. He did not study for the test yesterday.
(d) CONDITIONAL: If he were a good student, he would have studied for the test yesterday.

EXERCISE 16. Using "mixed time" in conditional sentences. (Chart 20-6)
Directions: Change the statements into conditional sentences.

1. I'm hungry now because I didn't eat dinner. But ....
   \[\text{But if I'd eaten dinner, I wouldn't be hungry now.}\]
2. The room is full of flies because you left the door open. But ....
3. You are tired this morning because you didn't go to bed at a reasonable hour last night. But ....
4. I didn't finish my report yesterday, so I can't begin a new project today. But ....
5. Anita is sick because she didn't follow the doctor's orders. But ....
6. I'm not you, so I didn't tell him the truth. But ....
7. I don't know anything about plumbing, so I didn't fix the leak in the sink myself. But ....
8. I received a good job offer from the oil company, so I won't seriously consider taking the job with the electronics firm. But ....

20-7 OMITTING IF

(a) Were I you, I wouldn't do that.
(b) Had I known, I would have told you.
(c) Should anyone call, please take a message.

With were, had (past perfect), and should, sometimes if is omitted and the subject and verb are inverted.

In (a): Were I you = if I were you.
In (b): Had I known = if I had known.
In (c): Should anyone call = if anyone should call.
EXERCISE 17. Omitting IF. (Chart 20-7)

Directions: Create sentences with the same meaning by omitting if.

1. If you should need more money, go to the bank before six o'clock.
   → Should you need more money, go to the bank before six o'clock.
2. If I were you, I wouldn't do that.
3. If they had realized the danger, they would have done it differently.
4. If I were your teacher, I would insist you do better work.
5. If you should change your mind, please let me know immediately.
6. She would have gotten the job if she had been better prepared.
7. Your boss sounds like a real tyrant. If I were you, I would look for another job.
8. I'll be out of the country until June 12. If you should need to reach me, I'll be at the Hilton Hotel in Seoul.
9. The artists and creative thinkers throughout the history of the world have changed all of our lives. If they had not dared to be different, the history of civilization would have to be rewritten.
10. If there should be a global nuclear war, life on earth as we know it would end forever.

EXERCISE 18. Implied conditions. (Chart 20-8)

Directions: Identify the implied conditions by creating sentences using if-clauses.

1. I would have visited you, but I didn’t know that you were at home.
   → I would have visited you if I had known you were at home.
2. It wouldn’t have been a good meeting without Rosa.
   → It wouldn’t have been a good meeting if Rosa hadn’t been there.
3. I would have answered the phone, but I didn’t hear it ring.
4. I couldn’t have finished the work without your help.
5. I like to travel. I would have gone to Nepal last summer, but I didn’t have enough money.
6. I stepped on the brakes. Otherwise, I would have hit the child on the bicycle.
7. Olga turned down the volume on the tape player. Otherwise, the neighbors probably would have called to complain about the noise.
8. Tarek would have finished his education, but he had to quit school and find a job in order to support his family.
EXERCISE 19. Implied conditions. (Chart 20-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with your own words.

1. I would have . . . , but I didn't have enough time.
2. I couldn't have . . . without my parents' help.
3. I would . . . , but I don't have enough money.
4. I ran out of time. Otherwise, I would have . . .
5. I could . . . , but I don't want to.
6. I would have . . . , but I didn't know about it.
7. Without water, all life on earth would . . .
8. I set my alarm for six every day. Otherwise, I would . . .
9. I set my alarm for six this morning. Otherwise, I would have . . .
10. I would have . . . , but I didn't . . .

EXERCISE 20. Review: conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Some of the verbs are passive.

1. If I could speak Japanese, I (spend)_________________________ next year studying in Japan.
2. Had I known Mr. Jung was in the hospital, I (send) __________________ him a note and some flowers.
3. We will move into our new house next month if it (complete) ________________ by then.
4. It's too bad that it's snowing. If it (snow, not) _____________________, we could go for a drive.
5. I was very tired. Otherwise, I (go) ______________________ to the party with you last night.
6. I'm glad I have so many friends and such a wonderful family. Life without friends or family (be) ______________________ lonely for me.
7. My grandfather is no longer alive, but if he (be) ____________, I'm sure he (be) ______________________ proud of me.
8. If you (sleep, not) __________________________ last night when we arrived, I would have asked you to go with us, but I didn't want to wake you up.
9. Bill has such a bad memory that he (forget) ______________________ his head if it (be, not) ______________________ attached to his body.
10. According to one report, the average hen lays 247 eggs a year, and the average person eats 255 eggs a year. If hens (outnumber, not) ____________________ people, the average person (eat, not) ____________________ 255 eggs a year.

11. A: What would you be doing right now if you (be, not) ________________ in class?
   B: I (sleep) ____________________

12. A: Boy, is it ever hot today!
   B: You said it! If there (be) ________________ only a breeze, it (be, not) ____________________ quite so unbearable.

13. A: Why isn't Peggy Anderson in class today?
   B: I don't know, but I'm sure she (be, not) ________________ absent unless * she (have) ________________ a good reason.

   B: That's okay.
   A: I (be) ________________ here sooner, but I had car trouble.

15. A: Want to ride on the roller coaster?
   B: No way! I (ride, not) ________________ on the roller coaster even if you paid me a million dollars!

   B: Oh, I didn't know you had company.
   A (come, not) ________________ if (I, know) ________________ someone was here.
   A: That's okay. Come in and let me introduce you to my friends.

17. A: Are you coming to the party?
   B: I don't think so, but if I change my mind, I (tell) ________________ you.

D EXERCISE 21. Review: conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-8)
Directions: Complete the sentences. Add commas where necessary.

1. If it hadn't rained . . . .
2. If it weren't raining . . . .
3. You would have passed the test had . . . .

*unless = if not (See Chart 17-8, p. 370.)
4. It’s a good thing we took a map with us. Otherwise . . . .
5. Without electricity modern life . . . .
6. If you hadn’t reminded me about the meeting tonight . . . .
7. Should you need any help . . . .
8. If I could choose any profession I wanted . . . .
9. If I were at home right now . . . .
10. Without your help yesterday . . . .
11. Were I you _____
12. What would you do if . . . .
13. If I had the chance to live my childhood over again . . . .
14. Had I known . . . .
15. Can you imagine what life would be like if . . . .

EXERCISE 22. Activity: conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-8)
Directions: Explain what you would do in these situations. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): Suppose the student sitting next to you drops her pen. What would you do?
SPEAKER B (book dosed): I would pick it up for her.

1. Suppose (pretend) there is a fire in this building right now. What would you do?
2. Suppose there is a fire in your room or apartment or house. You have time to save only one thing. What would you save?
3. Suppose you go to the bank to cash a check for (twenty dollars). The bank teller cashes your check and you leave, but when you count the money, you find she gave you (thirty dollars) instead of (twenty). What would you do?
4. Same situation, but she gave you only (fifteen dollars) instead of (twenty).
5. John was cheating during an examination. Suppose you were the teacher and you saw him. What would you have done?
6. You are at a party. A man starts talking to you, but he is speaking so fast that you can’t catch what he is saying. What would you do?
7. Late at night you’re driving your car down a deserted street. You’re all alone. In an attempt to avoid a dog in the road, you swerve and hit a parked car. You know that no one saw you. What would you do?
8. ( . . . ) goes to a friend’s house for dinner. Her/His friend serves a dish that ( . . . ) can’t stand, doesn’t like at all. What if you were ( . . . )?
9. My friend borrowed (ten dollars) from me and told me he would repay it in a couple of days, but it’s been three weeks. I think he has forgotten about it. I really need the money, but I don’t want to ask him for it. Give me some advice.
10. John was driving over the speed limit. A police car began to chase him, with lights flashing. John stepped on the accelerator and tried to escape the police car. Put yourself in his position.
11. Suppose you are walking down the street at night all by yourself. A man suddenly appears in front of you. He has a gun. He says, "Give me your money!" Would you try to take his gun away?
12. Suppose you go to (Chicago) to visit a friend. You have never been there before. Your friend said he would meet you at the airport, but he's not there. You wait a long time, but he never shows up. You try to call him, but nobody answers the phone. Now what?

ExERCISE 23. Activity: conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-8)

Directions: Discuss the situations. Use the given information to make conditional sentences.

Example:

Jan is working for a law firm, but she has been trying to find a different job for a long time. She doesn't like her job at the law firm. Recently she was offered a job with a computer company closer to her home. She wanted to accept it, but the salary was too low.

→ If Jan liked her job at the law firm, she wouldn't be trying to find a different job.
→ Jan would have accepted the job at the computer company if the salary hadn't been too low.
→ Etc.

1. Jim: Why don't we go to the ball game after work tonight?
   Ron: I'd like to, but I can't.
   Jim: Why not?
   Ron: I have a dinner meeting with a client.
   Jim: Well, maybe some other time.

2. Tommy had a pet mouse. He took it to school. His friend Jimmy put the mouse in the teacher's desk drawer. When the teacher found the mouse, she jumped in surprise and tried to kill it with a book. Tommy ran to the front of the room and saved his pet mouse. Tommy and Jimmy got into a lot of trouble with their teacher.

3. Ivan's axe was broken, and he wanted to borrow his neighbor Dan's axe so that he could chop some wood. Then Ivan remembered that he had already borrowed Dan's saw and had never returned it. He has since lost the saw, and he's too embarrassed to tell Dan. Because of that, Ivan decided not to ask Dan for his axe.

Directions: Discuss and/or write about one or more of the topics.

1. If, beginning tomorrow, you had a two-week holiday and unlimited funds, what would you do? Why?
2. If you had to teach your language to a person who knew nothing at all about your language, how would you begin? What would you do so that this person could learn your language as quickly and easily as possible?
3. If you were Philosopher-King of the world, how would you govern? What would you do? What changes would you make? (A "Philosopher-King" may be defined as a person who has ideal wisdom and unlimited power to shape the world as s/he wishes.)
4. Suppose you had only one year to live. What would you do?
5. Describe your activities if you were in some other place (in this country or in the world) at present. Describe your probable activities today, yesterday, and tomorrow. Include the activities of other people you would be with if you were in that place.

20-9 USING AS IF/AS THOUGH

| (a) It looks like rain. | Notice in (a): like is followed by a noun object. |
| (b) It looks as if it is going to rain. | Notice in (b) and (c): as if and as though are followed by a clause. |
| (c) It looks as though it is going to rain. | Notice in (d): like is followed by a clause. This use of like is common in informal English, but is not generally considered appropriate in formal English; as if or as though is preferred. |
| (d) It looks like it is going to rain. (informal) | (a), (b), (c), and (d) all have the same meaning. |

"TRUE" STATEMENT (FACT) | VERB FORM AFTER AS IF/AS THOUGH | Usually the idea following as if/as though is "untrue." In this case, verb usage is similar to that in conditional sentences.
---|---|---
(e) He is not a child. | She talked to him as if he were a child. |
(f) She did not take a shower with her clothes on. | When she came in from the rainstorm, she looked as if she had taken a shower with her clothes on. |
(g) He has met her. | He acted as though he had never met her. |
(h) She will be here. | She spoke as if she wouldn't be here. |

EXERCISE 25. Using AS IF/AS THOUGH. (Chart 20-9)

Directions: Using the given idea, complete each sentence with as if/as though.

1. I wasn't run over by a ten-ton truck.
   I feel terrible. I feel as if (as though) I had been run over by a ten-ton truck.

2. English is not her native tongue.
   She speaks English

3. You didn't see a ghost.
   What's the matter? You look

430 CHAPTER 20
4. *His animals aren't people.*
   I know a farmer who talks to his animals

5. *His father is not a general in the army.*
   Sometimes his father gives orders

6. *I didn't climb Mt. Everest.*
   When I reached the fourth floor, I was
   winded. I felt

   instead of just three flights of stairs.

7. *He does have a brain in his head.*
   Sometimes he acts

8. *We haven't known each other all of our lives.*
   We became good friends almost immediately. After talking to each other for only a
   short time, we felt

9. *A giant bulldozer didn't drive down Main Street.*
   After the tornado, the town looked

10. *I don't have wings and can't fly.*
    I was so happy that I felt

11. *The child won't burst.*
    The child was so excited that he looked

12. NOTE: The following sentiments were expressed by Helen Keller, a woman who was
    both blind and deaf but who learned to speak and to read (Braille*). Complete these
    sentences.

    Use your eyes as if tomorrow you become blind. Hear the music
    of voices, the song of a bird, as if you become deaf tomorrow. Touch
    each object as if tomorrow you never be able to feel anything again.
    Smell the perfume of the flowers and taste with true enjoyment each bite of food as if
    tomorrow you never be able to smell and taste again.

*A system of writing for the blind devised by the Frenchman Louis Braille. Blind people read Braille by
placing the tips of their fingers on raised dots that represent letters, punctuation, etc.*
20-10 VERB FORMS FOLLOWING WISH

Wish is used when the speaker wants reality to be different, to be exactly the opposite.

| "TRUE" STATEMENT | VERB FORM FOLLOWING WISH | Wish is followed by a noun clause. (See Chart 12-5, p. 248.) Past verb forms, similar to those in conditional sentences, are used in the noun clause. For example, in (a): would, the past form of will, is used to make a wish about the future. In (d): the simple past (knew) is used to make a wish about the present. In (g): the past perfect (had come) is used to make a wish about the past.

A wish about the future
(a) She will not tell me. I wish (that) she would tell me.
(b) He isn’t going to be here. I wish he were going to be here.
(c) She can’t come tomorrow. I wish she could come tomorrow.

A wish about the present
(d) I don’t know French. I wish I knew French.
(e) It is raining right now. I wish it weren’t raining right now.
(f) I can’t speak Japanese. I wish I could speak Japanese.

A wish about the past
(g) John didn’t come. I wish John had come
(h) Mary couldn’t come. I wish Mary could have come.

*Sometimes in very informal speaking: / wish John would have come.*

EXERCISE 26. Verb forms following WISH. (Chart 20-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with an appropriate verb form.

1. Our classroom doesn’t have any windows. I wish our classroom had windows.

2. The sun isn’t shining. I wish the sun _____ right now.

3. I didn’t go shopping. I wish I _____ shopping.

4. I don’t know how to dance. I wish I _____ how to dance.

5. You didn’t tell them about it. I wish you _____ them about it.

6. It’s cold today. I’m not wearing a coat. I wish I _____ a coat.

7. I don’t have enough money to buy that book. I wish I _____ enough money.

8. Elena is tired because she went to bed late last night. She wishes she _____ to bed earlier last night.

9. I can’t go with you tomorrow, but I wish I _____.

10. My friend won’t ever lend me his car. I wish he _____ me his car for my date tomorrow night.

11. Mrs. Takasawa isn’t coming to dinner with us tonight. I wish she _____ to dinner with us.
12. The teacher is going to give an exam tomorrow. I wish he ____________
______________ us an exam tomorrow.

13. You can’t meet my parents. I wish you ________________ them.

14. Khalid didn’t come to the meeting. I wish he ____________ to the meeting.

15. I am not lying on a beach in Hawaii. I wish I ________________ on a beach in Hawaii.

D EXERCISE 27. Activity: verb forms following WISH. (Chart 20-10)
Directions: Discuss the questions.

1. What is something you can’t do, but you wish you could do?
2. What do you wish you were doing right now?
3. What is something you don’t have but wish you had?
4. What is something that didn’t happen yesterday, but that you wish had happened?
5. What is something that has never happened in your life, but that you wish would happen?
6. What is something that happened in your life, but that you wish had not happened?
7. What is something you have to do but wish you didn’t have to do?
8. What is something that will not happen tomorrow, but that you wish would happen?
9. What is something you don’t know but wish you knew?
10. What is something you were unable to do yesterday, but you wish you could have done?

D EXERCISE 28. Verb forms following WISH. (Chart 20-10)
Directions: Complete the sentences with an appropriate auxiliary verb.

1. I’m not at home, but I wish I ____________.
2. I don’t know her, but I wish I ____________.
3. I can’t sing well, but I wish I ____________.
4. I didn’t go, but I wish I ____________.
5. He won’t talk about it, but I wish he ____________.
6. I didn’t read that book, but I wish I ____________.
7. I want to go, but I can’t. I wish I ____________.
8. I don’t have a bicycle, but I wish I ____________.
9. He didn’t buy a ticket to the game, but he wishes he ____________.
10. She can’t speak English, but she wishes she ____________.
11. It probably won’t happen, but I wish it ____________.
12. He isn’t old enough to drive a car, but he wishes he ____________.
13. They didn't go to the movie, but they wish they ____________.

14. I don't have a driver's license, but I wish I ____________.

15. I'm not living in an apartment, but I wish I ____________.

---

**20-11 USING WOULD TO MAKE WISHES ABOUT THE FUTURE**

| (a) It is raining. I wish it would stop. (I want it to stop raining.) | Would is usually used to indicate that the speaker wants something to happen or someone other than the speaker to do something in the future. The wish may or may not come true (be realized). |
| (b) I'm expecting a call. I wish the phone wouldn't ring. (I want the phone to ring.) |

(c) It's going to be a good party. I wish you would come.

**D EXERCISE 29. Using WOULD to make wishes. (Chart 20-10 and 20-11)**

*Directions:* Use the given information to answer the questions.

*Example:*

TOM: Why are you watching the telephone?
SUE: I'm waiting to hear from Sam. I want him to call me. I need to talk to him right now. We had an argument. I need to make sure everything's okay.

TOM: Watching the phone won't make it ring, you know.

(a) What does Sue want to happen in the near future? (Use wish + would.)

> She wishes the phone would ring.

(b) What else does Sue wish?

> She wishes Sam would call her. She wishes she could talk to Sam right now. She probably wishes she and Sam hadn't had an argument.

---

1. RITA: It's raining. I want to go for a walk, but not in the rain.

YOKO: I want the rain to stop, too.

(a) What does Rita want to happen in the near future? (Use wish + would.)

(b) What does Yoko wish?

2. ANNA: Can't you come to the concert? Please change your mind. I'd really like you to come.

YOKO: No, I can't. I have to work.

(a) What does Anna want Yoko to do? (Use wish + would.)

(b) What else does Anna wish?

3. BOB'S MOTHER: Do you really like how you look with a beard?

BOB: Yes.

BOB'S MOTHER: Don't you want to shave it off?

BOB: No.

(a) What does Bob's mother want Bob to do? (Use wish + would.)

(b) What does Bob probably wish?
Helen is a neat and orderly person. Judy, her roommate, is messy. Judy never picks up after herself. She leaves dirty dishes in the sink. She drops her clothes all over the apartment. She clutters the apartment with her stuff everywhere. She never makes her bed. Helen nags Judy to pick up after herself.

(a) What does Helen want Judy to do? (Use wish + would.)
(b) What does Judy probably wish?

EXERCISE 30. Using WISH. (Charts 20-10 and 20-11)
Directions: Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. We need some help. I wish Alfred (be) here now. If he (be) here, we could finish this work very quickly.

2. We had a good time in Houston over vacation. I wish you (come) with us. If you (come) with us, you (have) a good time.

3. I wish it (be, not) so cold today. If it (be, not) so cold, I (go) swimming.

4. I missed part of the lecture because I was daydreaming, and now my notes are incomplete. I wish I (pay) more attention to the lecturer.

5. A: Did you study for that test?
   B: No, but now I wish I (have) because I flunked it.

6. A: Is the noise from the TV in the next apartment bothering you?
   B: Yes. I'm trying to study. I wish he (turn) it down.

7. A: What a beautiful day! I wish I (lie) in the sun by a swimming pool instead of sitting in a classroom.
   B: I wish I (be) anywhere but here!

8. A: I wish we (have, not) to go to work today.
   B: So do I. I wish it (be) a holiday.

9. A: He couldn't have said that! That's impossible. You must have misunderstood him.
   B: I only wish I (have), but I'm sure I heard him correctly.

10. Alice doesn't like her job as a nurse. She wishes she (go, not) to nursing school.

11. A: I know that something's bothering you. I wish you (tell) me what it is. Maybe I can help.
    B: I appreciate it, but I can't discuss it now.
12. A: My feet are killing me! I wish I (wear) ___________________________ more comfortable shoes.
B: Yeah, me too. I wish I (know) ___________________________ that we were going to have to walk this much.

D EXERCISE 31. Using WISH. (Charts 20-10 and 20-11)
Directions: Answer the questions. Use wish. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

1. Where do you wish you were right now? What do you wish you were doing?
2. Are you pleased with the weather today, or do you wish it were different?
3. Look around this room. What do you wish were different?
4. Is there anything you wish were different about the place you are living?
5. What do you wish were different about this city/town?
6. What do you wish were different about this country?
7. What do you wish were different about a student's life? about a worker's life?
8. Where do you wish you could go on your next vacation?
9. Your friend gave you his phone number, but you didn't write it down because you thought you would remember it. Now you have forgotten the number. What do you wish?
10. (...) kept all of his money in his wallet instead of putting it in the bank. Then he lost his wallet. What does he probably wish?
11. You didn't eat breakfast/lunch/dinner before you came to class. Now you are hungry. What do you wish?
12. (...) stayed up very late last night. Today she is tired and sleepy. What does she probably wish?

D EXERCISE 32. Using WISH. (Charts 20-10 and 20-11)
Directions: Using the given ideas, create sentences with wish. Add something that explains why you are making that wish.

Examples:
be different
→ I wish my name were different. I've never liked having "Daffodil" as my first name.
go to the moon
→ I wish I could go to the moon for a vacation. It would be fun to be able to leap long distances in the moon's lighter gravity.

1. be different
2. know several world leaders personally
3. speak every language in the world
4. be more patient and understanding
5. interview some great people in history
6. travel by instant teleportation
7. remember everything I read
8. be a big movie star
9. read people's minds
10. be born in the last century
EXERCISE 33. Activity: conditionals and wishes. (Chapter 20)

Directions: Answer the questions. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

1. If you could have free service for the rest of your life from a chauffeur, cook, housekeeper, or gardener, which would you choose? Why?

2. If you had to leave your country and build a new life elsewhere, where would you go? Why?

3. If you had control of all medical research in the world and, by concentrating funds and efforts, could find the cure for only one disease in the next 25 years, which disease would you select? Why?

4. If you could stay one particular age for a span of 50 years, what age would you choose? Why? (At the end of the 50 years, you would suddenly turn 50 years older.)

5. You have promised to spend an evening with your best friend. Then you discover you have the chance to spend the evening with (supply the name of a famous person). Your friend is not invited. What would you do? Why?

6. Assume that you have a good job. If your boss told you to do something that you think is wrong, would you do it? Why or why not? (You understand that if you don't do it, you will lose your job.)

7. If you had to choose among perfect health, a loving family, and wealth (and you could have only one of the three during the rest of your life), which would you choose? Why?

8. Just for fun, what do you wish were or could be different in the world? What about animals being able to speak? people being able to fly? there being only one language in the world? being able to take a vacation on the moon? speed of transportation?

9. Is there anything in your past life that you would change? What do you wish you had or had not done? Why?

10. Suppose you were offered the opportunity to be a crew member on a spaceship that would travel to far points in the universe. There would be no guarantee that you would ever return to earth. Would you go? Why or why not?
UNIT A: Basic Grammar Terminology

A-1 SUBJECTS, VERBS, AND OBJECTS

Almost all English sentences contain a subject (s) and a verb (v). The verb may or may not be followed by an object (o).

VERBS: Verbs that are not followed by an object, as in (a) and (b), are called "intransitive verbs." Common intransitive verbs: agree, arrive, come, cry, exist, go, happen, live, occur, rain, rise, sleep, stay, walk.

Verbs that are followed by an object, as in (c) and (d), are called "transitive verbs." Common transitive verbs: build, cut, find, like, make, need, send, use, want.

Some verbs can be either intransitive or transitive.

intransitive: A student studies.
transitive: A student studies books.

SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS: The subjects and objects of verbs are nouns (or pronouns). Examples of nouns: person, place, thing, John, Asia, pen, information, appearance, amusement.
EXERCISE 1. Subjects, verbs, and objects. (Chart A-1)

Directions: Underline the subject (s), verb (v), and object of the verb (o) in each sentence.

1. The politician supported new taxes.
2. The mechanic repaired the engine.
3. Those boxes contain old photographs.
4. The teacher canceled the test.
5. An earthquake destroyed the village.
6. All birds have feathers.

List all of the nouns in the above sentences.

politician, taxes

EXERCISE 2. Transitive vs. intransitive verbs. (Chart A-1)

Directions: Underline each verb in the sentences. Write VT if it is transitive. Write VI if it is intransitive.

1. Mr. West repeated his question.
2. Smoke rises.
3. The children divided the candy.
4. I sneezed.
5. A strange thing happened.
6. The customer bought some butter.
7. Our team won the game.
8. Our team won yesterday.
10. Omar boiled some water. We made tea and drank it.
COMMON PREPOSITIONS

- about
- at
- beyond
- into
- since
- up
- above
- before
- by
- like
- throughout
- upon
- across
- behind
- despite
- near
- throughout
- with
- after
- below
- down
- of
- off
- till
- within
- against
- beneath
- during
- on
- toward(s)
- without
- along
- beside
- for
- in
- under
- within
- among
- besides
- from
- on
- outside
- upon
- around
- between
- over
- without

An important element of English sentences is the prepositional phrase. It consists of a preposition (PREP) and its object (o). The object of a preposition is a noun or pronoun. In (a): **in the library** is a prepositional phrase.

- **(a)** The student studies in the library.
- **(b)** We enjoyed the party at your house.
- **(c)** We went to the zoo in the afternoon.
- **(d)** In the afternoon, we went to the zoo.

**EXERCISE 3. Identifying prepositions.** (Chart A-2)

*Directions:* Underline the prepositional phrases in the following. Identify the preposition (P) and the noun that is used as the object of the preposition (o of p).

1. Grasshoppers destroyed the wheat in the field.
2. The waiter cleared the dirty dishes from our table.
3. I parked my car in the garage.
4. Trees fell during the violent storm.
5. Cowboys depended on horses for transportation.
6. We walked to the park after class.

**EXERCISE 4. Sentence elements.** (Charts A-1 and A-2)

*Directions:* Underline the subjects (S), verbs (VT or VI), objects of verbs (o), and prepositional phrases (PP) in the following sentences.

1. Alex needs new batteries for his camera.
2. A bomb exploded in the road.
3. Sally wore her blue suit to the meeting.
4. Beethoven wrote nine symphonies.

5. Bells originated in Asia.

6. Plants need a reliable supply of water.

7. We enjoyed the view of snowy mountains from the window of our hotel room.

8. The child sat between her parents on the sandy beach. Above her, an eagle flew across the cloudless sky.

A-3 ADJECTIVES

(a) Ann is an **intelligent** student.

(b) The **hungry** child ate fruit.

(c) I saw some **beautiful** pictures.

An adjective is neither singular nor plural. A final -s is never added to an adjective.

A-4 ADVERBS

(a) He walks **quickly**.

(b) She opened the door **quietly**.

(c) I am **extremely** happy.

(d) Ann will come **tomorrow**.

Adverbs modify verbs. Often they answer the question "How?" In (a):

**How does he walk?** Answer: **Quickly**.

Adverbs are often formed by adding -ly to an adjective.

**adjective:** quick

**adverb:** quickly

Adverbs are also used to modify adjectives, i.e., to give information about adjectives, as in (c).

Adverbs are also used to express time or frequency. Examples: tomorrow, today, yesterday, soon, never, usually, always, yet.

MIDSENTENCE ADVERBS

(e) Ann **always** comes on time.

(f) Ann is **always** on time.

(g) Ann has **always** come on time.

(h) **Does she always** come on time?

Some adverbs may occur in the middle of a sentence. **Midsentence** adverbs have usual positions; they

1. come in front of simple present and simple past verbs (except be), as in (e);
2. follow be (simple present and simple past), as in (f);
3. come between a helping verb and a main verb, as in (g).

In a question, a midsentence adverb comes directly after the subject, as in (h).

COMMON MIDSentence ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ever</th>
<th>usually</th>
<th>generally</th>
<th>seldom</th>
<th>never</th>
<th>already</th>
<th>finally</th>
<th>just</th>
<th>probably</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>rarely</td>
<td>not ever</td>
<td>frequently</td>
<td>occasionally</td>
<td>hardly ever</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 5. Nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs. (Charts A-1 → A-4)
Directions: Underline the adjectives (ADJ) and adverbs (ADV) in the sentences.

AW  ADV  AW
1. A terrible fire spread rapidly through the old house.

2. A small child cried noisily in the third row of the theater.

3. The eager player waited impatiently for the start of the game.

4. An unusually large crowd came to the concert.

5. Arthur carefully repaired the antique vase with special glue.

6. On especially busy days, the telephone in the main office rings constantly.

The above six sentences have 10 adjectives and 7 adverbs.

Count the total number of nouns in the above six sentences:

Count the total number of verbs in the above six sentences:

EXERCISE 6. Adjectives and adverbs. (Charts A-3 and A-4)
Directions: Choose the correct adjective or adverb in parentheses.

1. George is a (careless, carelessly) writer. He writes (careless, carelessly).

2. Frank asked me an (easy, easily) question. I answered it (easy, easily).

3. Sally speaks (soft, softly). She has a (soft, softly) voice.

4. I entered the classroom (quiet, quietly) because I was late.

5. Ali speaks English very (good, well). He has very (good, well) pronunciation.*

EXERCISE 7. Midsentence adverbs. (Chart A-4)
Directions: Put each adverb in parentheses in its usual midsentence position.

1. (never) Erica has seen snow. > Erica has never seen snow.

2. (often) Ted studies at the library in the evening.

3. (often) Ann is at the library in the evening, too.

4. (already) Fred has finished studying for tomorrow's test.

5. (seldom) Jack is at home.

6. (always) Does he stay there?

7. (often) He goes into town to hang around with his buddies.

8. (always) You should tell the truth.

*The word well can be either an adverb or an adjective.

Ron writes well, well = an adverb meaning "in a good manner." It describes how Ron writes.

Mary was sick, but now she is well, well = an adjective meaning "healthy, not sick." It follows the verb be and describes the subject "she"; i.e., Mary is a well person, not a sick person.

NOTE: After the linking verb feel, either good or well may be used:
I feel good and I feel well have essentially the same meaning. However, well usually refers specifically to health, whereas good can refer to one's physical and/or emotional condition.
A-5 THE VERB BE

(a) John is a student.
(b) John is intelligent.
(c) John was at the library.
(d) Mary is writing a letter.
(e) They were listening to some music.
(f) That letter was written by Alice.

A sentence with *be* as the main verb has three basic patterns:
- In (a): *be + a noun*
- In (b): *be + an adjective*
- In (c): *be + a prepositional phrase*

Be is also used as an auxiliary verb in progressive verb tenses and in the passive.

In (d): is = auxiliary; *writing* - main verb

TENSE FORMS OF BE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE PRESENT</th>
<th>SIMPLE PAST</th>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I was</td>
<td>I have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>you were</td>
<td>you have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he, she, it is</td>
<td>he, she, it was</td>
<td>he, she, it has been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we, you, they are</td>
<td>we, you, they were</td>
<td>we, you, they have been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A-6 LINKING VERBS

(a) The soup smells good.
(b) This food tastes delicious.
(c) The children feel happy.
(d) The weather became cold.

Other verbs like *be* that may be followed immediately by an adjective are called "linking verbs." An adjective following a linking verb describes the subject of a sentence.*

Common verbs that may be followed by an adjective:
- feel, look, smell, sound, taste
- appear, seem
- become (and get, turn, grow when they mean "become")

*COMPARE:
1. The man looks angry. → An adjective (angry) follows *look*. The adjective describes the subject (the man). *Look* has the meaning of "appear."
2. The man looked at me angrily. → An adverb (angrily) follows *look at*. The adverb describes the action of the verb. *Look at* has the meaning of "regard, watch."

□ EXERCISE 8. Linking verbs. (Charts A-3 > A-6)

*Directions:* Choose the correct adjective or adverb in parentheses.

1. This math problem looks (*easy, easily*). I'm sure I can do it (*easy, easily*).
2. That chair looks (*comfortable, comfortably*).
3. I looked at the problem (*careful, carefully*) and then solved it.
4. I felt (*sad, sadly*) when I heard the news.
5. Susan smiled (*cheerful, cheerfully*). She seemed (*cheerful, cheerfully*).
6. I tasted the soup (*careful, carefully*) because it was hot. The soup tasted (*good, well*).
7. The room got (*quiet, quietly*) when the professor entered. The students sat (*quiet, quietly*) at their desks.
8. The sky grew (*dark, darkly*) as the storm approached.
EXERCISE 9. Nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions. (Charts A-1 → A-6)  

Directions: Identify each underlined word as a noun, verb, adjective, adverb, or preposition.

1. Through the centuries, many people have confused whales with fish.

2. Whales are mammals, not fish. They breathe air and give birth to live young.

3. Some species of whales dive deeply beneath the surface of the ocean in order to feed and can stay under the water for more than an hour. All whales, however, must come to the surface for air.

4. Whales make the longest migrations known among mammals. Gray whales swim from the Pacific coast of Mexico, where they give birth in winter, to the icy Arctic for the summer.

5. Orca whales, which are black and white, are highly trainable. They are also called "killer whales," but trainers tell us that these whales are intelligent and sensitive. One time, a newly captured male orca refused to eat for a long time. Finally, he took a fish from the trainer. However, he didn't eat the fish immediately; he took it to another recently captured whale, a female who had also refused to eat, and shared it with her.

6. Whales have no sense of smell and poor eyesight. Their senses of touch and hearing, however, are highly developed. They can hear an extremely wide range of sounds and use sound to locate objects.
7. Whales do not have vocal chords, but they can communicate with each other. They have a wide range of clicks, whistles, and songs. When a whale is captured in a net, other whales gather around it and communicate through the net. They follow the captured whale for long distances.

UNIT B: Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B-1 FORMS OF YES/NO AND INFORMATION QUESTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A yes/no question = a question that may be answered by yes or no.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Does he live in Chicago?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: Yes, he does. OR No, he doesn’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An information question = a question that asks for information by using a question word.
A: Where does he live?
B: In Chicago.

Question word order = (Question word) + helping verb + subject + main verb
Notice that the same subject-verb order is used in both yes/no and information questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(QUESTION WORD)</th>
<th>HELPING VERB</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>MAIN VERB</th>
<th>(REST OF SENTENCE)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Where</td>
<td>Does she</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td>If the verb is in the simple present, use does (with he, she, it) or do (with I, you, we, they) in the question. If the verb is simple past, use did. Notice: The main verb in the question is in its simple form; there is no final -s or -ed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Where</td>
<td>does she</td>
<td>live?</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Where</td>
<td>Do they</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Where</td>
<td>did he</td>
<td>live?</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Where</td>
<td>Is he</td>
<td>living</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td>If the verb has an auxiliary (a helping verb), the same auxiliary is used in the question. There is no change in the form of the main verb. If the verb has more than one auxiliary, only the first auxiliary precedes the subject, as in (m) and (n).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Where</td>
<td>is he</td>
<td>living?</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Where</td>
<td>Have they</td>
<td>lived</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Where</td>
<td>Can Mary</td>
<td>live?</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Where</td>
<td>Will he</td>
<td>be living?</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j) Where</td>
<td>can Mary</td>
<td>be living?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) Where</td>
<td>Who O comes</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td>If the question word is the subject, usual question word order is not used; does, do, and did are not used. The verb is in the same form in a question as it is in a statement. Statement: Tom came. Question: Who came?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l) Where</td>
<td>Who can O</td>
<td>come?</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m) Where</td>
<td>Who can O</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n) Where</td>
<td>Who can O</td>
<td>come?</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(o) Who</td>
<td>Are they?</td>
<td>O O</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td>Main verb be in the simple present (am, is, are) and simple past (was, were) precedes the subject. It has the same position as a helping verb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(p) Who</td>
<td>Was Jim?</td>
<td>O O</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(q) Where</td>
<td>Are they?</td>
<td>O O</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(r) Where</td>
<td>Was Jim?</td>
<td>O O</td>
<td>there?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A8 APPENDIX
EXERCISE 10. Forms of yes/no and information questions. (Chart B-1)

Directions: For each of the following, first make a yes/no question. Then make an information question using where.

Example: They can stay there.
Yes/no question: Can they stay there?
Information question: Where can they stay?

1. She stays there.
2. She is staying there.
3. She will stay there.
4. She is going to stay there.
5. They stayed there.
6. They will be staying there.
7. They should stay there.
8. He has stayed there.
9. He has been staying there.
10. John is there.
11. John will be there.
12. John has been there.
13. Judy will have been there.
14. Ann and Tom were married there.
15. This package should have been taken there.

B-2 QUESTION WORDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION WORDS</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>ANSWER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WHEN</td>
<td>(a) When did they arrive? When will you come?</td>
<td>Yesterday. Next Monday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHERE</td>
<td>(b) Where is she? Where can I find a pen?</td>
<td>At home. In that drawer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHY</td>
<td>(c) Why did he leave early? Why aren't you coming with us?</td>
<td>Because he's ill. I'm tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOW</td>
<td>(d) How did you come to school? How does he drive?</td>
<td>By bus. Carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(f) How old are you? How cold is it? How soon can you get here? How fast were you driving?</td>
<td>Twelve. Ten below zero. In ten minutes. Five miles an hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(g) How long has he been here? How often do you write home? How far is it to Miami from here?</td>
<td>Two years. Every week. 500 miles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When is used to ask questions about time.
Where is used to ask questions about place.
Why is used to ask questions about reason.
How generally asks about manner.
How is used with much and many.
How is also used with adjectives and adverbs.
How long asks about length of time.
How often asks about frequency.
How far asks about distance.
| WHO           | (h) Who can answer that question?  
|               | Who came to visit you?            | I can. Jane and Eric. | Who is used as the subject of a question. It refers to people. |
|               | (i) Who is coming to dinner tonight?  
|               | Who wants to come with me?        | Ann, Bob, and Al. We do. | Who is usually followed by a singular verb even if the speaker is asking about more than one person. |
| WHOM          | (j) Who(m) did you see?           
|               | Who(m) are you visiting?          | I saw George. My relatives. The secretary. | Whom is used as the object of a verb or preposition. In everyday spoken English, whom is rarely used; who is used instead. Whom is used only in formal questions. Note: Whom, not who, is used if preceded by a preposition. |
|               | (k) Who(m) should I talk to?      
|               | To whom should I talk? (formal)   | | |
| Whose         | (1) Whose book did you borrow?    
|               | Whose key is this?                | David's. It's mine. | Whose asks questions about possession. |
| WHAT          | (m) What made you angry?          
|               | What went wrong?                  | His rudeness. Everything. | What is used as the subject of a question. It refers to things. |
|               | (n) What do you need?             
|               | What did Alice buy?               | I need a pencil. A book. His vacation. | What is also used as an object. |
|               | (o) What did he talk about?       
|               | About what did he talk? (formal)  | | |
|               | (p) What kind of soup is that?    
|               | What kind of shoes did he buy?    | It's bean soup. Sandals. | What kind of asks about the particular variety or type of something. |
|               | (q) What did you do last night?   
|               | What is Mary doing?               | I studied. Reading a book. | What + a form of do is used to ask questions about activities. |
|               | (r) What countries did you visit? 
|               | What time did she come?           | Italy and Spain. Seven o'clock. Dark brown. | What may accompany a noun. |
|               | What color is his hair?           | | |
|               | (s) What is Ed like?              | He's kind and friendly. Hot and humid. | What + be like asks for a general description of qualities. |
|               | (t) What is the weather like?     | | |
|               | (u) What does Ed look like?       | He's tall and has dark hair. It's a two-story,* red brick house. | What + look like asks for a physical description. |
|               | (v) What does her house look like?| | |
| WHICH         | (w) I have two pens.              
|               | Which pen do you want? {          
|               | Which one do you want? }          
|               | Which do you want?                | The blue one. That one. | Which is used instead of what when a question concerns choosing from a definite, known quantity or group. |
|               | (x) Which book should I buy?      | | |
|               | (y) Which countries did he visit? 
|               | What countries did he visit?      | Peru and Chile. This class. In some cases, there is little difference in meaning between which and what when they accompany a noun, as in (y) and (z). |
|               | (z) Which class are you in?       
|               | What class are you in?            | | |

British English: a two-storey house.
EXERCISE 11. Information questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.
Speaker A: Give the cues in the text. The first of the two cues is the answer to the question you want Speaker B to form. Your book is open.
Speaker B: Make an appropriate question for the answer Speaker A gives you. Your book is closed.

Examples:

SPEAKER A (book open): The teacher. The teacher opened the door.
SPEAKER B (book closed): Who opened the door?
SPEAKER A (book open): Opening the door. The teacher is opening the door.
SPEAKER B (book closed): What is the teacher doing?

1. My friend. That letter is from my friend.
2. Maria. Maria wrote that letter.
3. My mother's. That is my mother's coat.
4. In August. Alice and John are going to get married in August.
5. Gray. Her eyes are gray.
6. Black. Her hair is black.
7. Herb tea. I'd like some herb tea.
8. Coffee. I usually drink coffee with my breakfast.
9. The soap bubbles. The soap bubbles made her sneeze.
10. Ten minutes. It usually takes me ten minutes to eat breakfast.
11. By taxi. I got to the airport by taxi.
12. A ball. The boy has a ball in his pocket.*
13. Four. I have four brothers and sisters.
15. Five hours. It takes five hours to get there by plane.
16. Historical novels. I like to read historical novels.
17. Chapters 2 and 3. The test will cover Chapters 2 and 3.
18. Because the traffic was heavy. I was late because the traffic was heavy.**
19. For three days. She's been sick for three days.
20. Twenty. I'm going to invite twenty people to my party.
21. This one. You should buy this camera, not that one.
22. Marie Curie. Marie Curie discovered radium.
23. Practicing asking questions. We're practicing asking questions.

*A form of do is usually used in questions when the main verb is have (especially in American English but also commonly in British English); e.g. Do you have a car? Using have without a form of do is also possible but less common; e.g., Have you a car?

NOTE: Especially in British English but also in American English, the idiom have got is used to indicate possession instead of have alone; e.g., Bob has got a car. Have you got a car?

**In informal spoken English, another way of asking why is how come. Usual question word order is not used with how come; instead, the subject comes in front of the verb.

Example: John isn't here (because he is sick). → Why isn't John here? OR How come John isn't here?
EXERCISE 12. Activity: asking questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Pair up with another student. Together create a dialogue for one or more of the situations. One of you is Speaker A, and the other is Speaker B. If you don't have a partner, write a dialogue as you would imagine the conversation to go. The beginning of each dialogue is given.

1. This conversation takes place after class is over.
   Speaker A: You are a student. You have a problem.
   Speaker B: You are a teacher. You try to solve the problem.
   SPEAKER A: Excuse me, _________________. Do you have a few minutes?
   SPEAKER B: Certainly.
   SPEAKER A: I'd like to talk to you about _________________.
   SPEAKER B: ___________________.
   Etc.

2. This conversation takes place on the telephone.
   Speaker A: You work for a travel agency.
   Speaker B: You want to take a trip.
   SPEAKER A: Hello. Worldwide Travel Agency. May I help you?
   SPEAKER B: Yes. I need to make arrangements to go to _________________.
   Etc.

3. This conversation takes place at a job interview.
   Speaker A: You are the interviewer.
   Speaker B: You are the interviewee.
   SPEAKER A: Mr./Ms. ________________, isn't it?
   SPEAKER B: Yes.
   SPEAKER A: I'm Mr./Ms. ________________. It's nice to meet you. Come in and have a seat.
   Etc.

4. Choose a situation that involves one person asking another person a series of questions. Assign yourselves roles and make up a conversation.

B-3 SHORTENED YES/NO QUESTIONS

(a) Going to bed now? = Are you going to bed now?
(b) Finish your work? = Did you finish your work?
(c) Want to go to the movie with us? = Do you want to go to the movie with us?

Sometimes in spoken English, the auxiliary and the subject you are dropped from a yes/no question, as in (a), (b), and (c).

EXERCISE 13. Shortened yes/no questions. (Chart B-3)

Directions: Find the shortened questions, then give the complete question form.

1. A: Need some help? → Do you need some help?
   B: Thanks.

2. A: Why do you keep looking out of the window? Expecting someone?
   B: I'm waiting for the mail to come.
   B: I am.
   A: Stay up late last night?
   B: Yup.

4. A: I'm looking forward to going to Colorado over spring vacation.
   B: Ever been there before?

5. A: Why are you pacing the floor? Nervous?
   B: Who me?

6. A: Want a cup of coffee?
   B: Only if it's already made.

7. A: Heard any news about your scholarship?
   B: Not yet.

8. A: Hungry?
   B: Yeah. You?

---

**B-4 NEGATIVE QUESTIONS**

| (a) Doesn't she live in the dormitory? | In a yes/no question in which the verb is negative, usually a contraction (e.g., does + not = doesn't) is used, as in (a). Example (b) is very formal and is usually not used in everyday speech. Negative questions are used to indicate the speaker's idea (i.e., what s/he believes is or is not true) or attitude (e.g., surprise, shock, annoyance, anger). |
| (b) Does she not live in the dormitory? (very formal) |

| (c) Bob returns to his dorm room after his nine o'clock class. Matt, his roommate, is there. Bob is surprised. Bob says, "What are you doing here? Aren't you supposed to be in class now?" | In (c): Bob believes that Matt is supposed to be in class now. Expected answer: Yes. |
| (d) Alice and Mary are at home. Mary is about to leave on a trip, and Alice is going to take her to the airport. Alice says, "It's already two o'clock. We'd better leave for the airport. Doesn't your plane leave at three?" | In (d): Alice believes that Mary's plane leaves at three. She is asking the negative question to make sure that her information is correct. Expected answer: Yes. |

| (e) The teacher is talking to Jim about a test he failed. The teacher is surprised that Jim failed the test because he usually does very well. The teacher says: "What happened? Didn't you study?" | In (e): The teacher believes that Jim did not study. Expected answer: No. |
| (f) Barb and Ron are riding in a car. Ron is driving. He comes to a corner where there is a stop sign, but he does not stop the car. Barb is shocked. Barb says, "What's the matter with you? Didn't you see that stop sign?" | In (f): Barb believes that Ron did not see the stop sign. Expected answer: No. |
EXERCISE 14. Negative questions. (Chart B-4)

Directions: Sometimes the expected answer to a negative question is "yes" and sometimes "no." In the following dialogues, make negative questions from the words in parentheses and determine the expected response.

1. A: Why didn't you come too lunch with us? (be hungry) **Weren't you hungry?**
   B: _______. I had a late breakfast.

2. A: It's almost dinner time, and you haven't eaten since breakfast.
   (you, be) ____________________ hungry?
   B: _______. I'm starving. Let's go eat.

3. A: You look tired this morning. (you, sleep) ________________ well?
   B: _______. I tossed and turned all night.

4. A: Daddy, Tommy said that the sun rises in the west. (it, rise) ________________ in the east?
   B: _______. Annie. You're right. Tommy is a little mixed up.

5. A: See that man over there, the one in the green shirt?
   B: Yes. Who is he?
   A: (you, recognize) ________________________________ him?
   B: _______. Am I supposed to?

6. A: I can't understand why David isn't here yet. (he, say, not) ____________________
   ______________________ he would be here by 4:00?
   B: _______. Something must have delayed him. I'm sure he'll be here soon.

7. A: What's the matter? Everyone else at the party seems to be having fun, but you look
   bored. (you, have, not) ________________________________ a good time?
   B: _______. I'm thinking about going home pretty soon.

8. A: Did you know that the Missouri River is the longest river in the United States?
   B: Are you sure? (the Mississippi, be, not) ________________________________
   the longest?
   A: _______. The Missouri is around 2,565 miles
   (4,130 kilometers) long.
   The Mississippi is around 2,350 miles (3,800 kilometers).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag Questions</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Jack can come, can’t he?</td>
<td>A tag question is a question added at the end of a sentence. Speakers use tag questions chiefly to make sure their information is correct or to seek agreement.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Fred can’t come, can he?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCE + NEGATIVE TAG → AFFIRMATIVE ANSWER EXPECTED**

| Mary is here, isn’t she? | Yes, she is. |
| You like tea, don’t you? | Yes, I do. |
| They have left, haven’t they? | Yes, they have. |

**NEGATIVE SENTENCE + AFFIRMATIVE TAG → NEGATIVE ANSWER EXPECTED**

| Mary isn’t here, is she? | No, she isn’t. |
| You don’t like tea, do you? | No, I don’t. |
| They haven’t left, have they? | No, they haven’t. |

(c) This/That is your book, isn’t it? These/Those are yours, aren’t they? **The tag pronoun for this/that = it.** **The tag pronoun for these/those = they.**

(d) There is a meeting tonight, isn’t there? In sentences with there + be, there is used in the tag.

(e) Everything is okay, isn’t it?
(f) Everyone took the test, didn’t they? **Personal pronouns are used to refer to indefinite pronouns. They is usually used in a tag to refer to everyone, everybody, someone, somebody, no one, nobody.**

(g) Nothing is wrong, is it?
(h) Nobody called on the phone, did they?
(i) You’ve never been there, have you? **Sentences with negative words take affirmative tags.**

(j) I am supposed to be here, am I not?
(k) I am supposed to be here, aren’t I? **In (j): am I not? is formal English.** **In (k): aren’t I? is common in spoken English.**

*A tag question may be spoken:
(1) with a rising intonation if the speaker is truly seeking to ascertain that his/her information, idea, belief is correct (e.g., Ann lives in an apartment, doesn’t she?); OR
(2) with a falling intonation if the speaker is expressing an idea with which s/he is almost certain the listener will agree (e.g., It’s a nice day today, isn’t it?).

**EXERCISE 15. Tag questions. (Chart B-5)**

**Directions:** Add tag questions.

1. They want to come, _don’t they?_ ?
2. Elizabeth is a dentist, _____________?_
3. They won’t be there, _____________?_
4. You’ll be there, _____________?_
5. There aren’t any problems, _____________?_
6. That’s your umbrella, _____________?_
7. George is a student, _____________?_
8. He’s learned a lot in the last couple of years, _____________?_
9. Larry has* a bicycle, ________________?
10. Monkeys can't swim, ________________?
11. Tina will help us later, ________________?
12. Peggy would like to come with us to the party, ________________?
13. Those aren't Tony's books, ________________?
14. You've never been to Paris, ________________?
15. There is something wrong with Jane today, ________________?
16. Everyone can learn how to swim, ________________?
17. Nobody cheated on the exam, ________________?
18. Nothing went wrong while I was gone, ________________?
19. I am invited, ________________?
20. This grammar is easy, ________________?

EXERCISE 16. Tag questions. (Chart B-5)
Directions: Add tag questions. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

Example: (Carlos) is a student . . .
SPEAKER A (book open): (Carlos) is a student . . .
SPEAKER B (book closed): . . . isn't he?

1. That's ( . . .)'s pen . . .
2. ( . . .) is living in an apartment . . .
3. ( . . .) lives on (Main Street) . . .
4. There isn't a test tomorrow . . .
5. ( . . .) has his/her book . . .
6. You had a good time . . .
7. ( . . .) has been invited to the party . . .
8. You didn't forget your key . . .
9. Your parents haven't arrived yet . . .
10. Turtles lay eggs . . .
11. ( . . .) can't speak (Arabic) . . .
12. ( . . .) is never late to class . . .
13. Something will be done about that problem right away . . .
14. These keys don't belong to you . . .
15. You used to live in New York . . .
16. There's a better way to solve that problem . . .
17. ( . . .) is going to come to class tomorrow . . .
18. You should leave for the airport by six . . .
19. ( . . .) doesn't have a car . . .
20. ( . . .) sat next to ( . . .) yesterday . . .
21. We have class tomorrow . . .
22. You've already seen that movie . . .
23. ( . . .) will help us . . .
24. Nobody has told you the secret . . .
25. I am right . . .
26. Class ends at (ten) . . .

*A form of do is usually used in the tag when have is the main verb: Tom has a car, doesn't he? Also possible, but less common: Tom has a car, hasn't he?
### UNIT C: Contractions

#### C CONTRACTIONS

IN SPEAKING: In everyday spoken English, certain forms of *be* and auxiliary verbs are usually contracted with pronouns, nouns, and question words.

IN WRITING: (1) In written English, contractions with pronouns are common in informal writing, but not generally acceptable in formal writing.

(2) Contractions with nouns and question words are, for the most part, rarely used in writing. A few of these contractions may be found in quoted dialogue in stories or in very informal writing, such as a chatty letter to a good friend, but most of them are rarely if ever written.

In the following, quotation marks indicate that the contraction is frequently spoken, but rarely if ever written.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>are</th>
<th>has</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>had</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>will</th>
<th>would</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm reading a book.</td>
<td>She's studying. It's going to rain.</td>
<td>You're working hard. They're waiting for us.</td>
<td>She's been here for a year. It's been cold lately.</td>
<td>I've finished my work. They've never met you.</td>
<td>He'd been waiting for us. We'd forgotten about it.</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>I'll come later. She'll help us.</td>
<td>He'd like to go there. They'd come if they could.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>My &quot;book's&quot; on the table. Mary's at home.</td>
<td>My &quot;books're&quot; on the table. The &quot;teachers're&quot; at a meeting.</td>
<td>My &quot;book's&quot; been stolen! Sally's never met him.</td>
<td>The &quot;books've&quot; been sold. The &quot;students've&quot; finished the test.</td>
<td>The &quot;books'd&quot; been sold. &quot;Mary'd&quot; never met him before.</td>
<td>&quot;What'm I supposed to do?&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Where's Sally? Who's that man?&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;What're you doing? &quot;Where're&quot; they going?&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WITH PRONOUNS</td>
<td>WITH NOUNS</td>
<td>WITH QUESTION WORDS</td>
<td>WITH PRONOUNS</td>
<td>WITH NOUNS</td>
<td>WITH QUESTION WORDS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### D EXERCISE 17. Contractions. (Chart C)

**Directions:** Read the sentences aloud. Practice usual contracted speech.

5. *Example:* The streets are wet. -> "The streets're wet."

#### PART I. CONTRACTIONS WITH NOUNS

1. My friend is here.
2. My friends are here.
3. Tom has been here since two.
4. The students have been here since one.
5. Bob had already left.
6. Bob would like to come with us.
7. Ron will be here soon.
8. The window is open.
9. The windows are open.
10. Jane has never seen a ghost.
11. The boys have been there before.
12. Sally had forgotten her book.
13. Sally would forget her book if I didn't remind her to take it.
PART II. CONTRACTIONS WITH QUESTION WORDS

14. Who is that woman? 20. What did you do yesterday?
15. Who are those people? 21. Why did you stay home?
16. Who has been taking care of your house? 22. When will I see you again?
17. What have you been doing? 23. How long will you be away?
18. What had you been doing before that? 24. Where am I supposed to go?
19. What would you like to do? 25. Where did you stay?

UNIT D: Negatives

D-1 USING NOT AND OTHER NEGATIVE WORDS

(a) AFFIRMATIVE: The earth is round.  
(b) NEGATIVE: The earth is not flat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AUX + NOT + MAIN VERB</th>
<th>Not expresses a negative idea.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I will not go there.</td>
<td>Not immediately follows an auxiliary verb or be. (Note: If there is more than one auxiliary, not comes immediately after the first auxiliary: I will not be going there.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have not gone there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am not going there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was not there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I do not go there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He does not go there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I did not go there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS OF AUXILIARY VERBS WITH NOT

are not = aren’t*  
cannot — can’t  
could not = couldn’t  
did not = didn’t  
does not = doesn’t  
do not = don’t  
has not = hasn’t  
have not - haven’t  
had not = hadn’t  
is not = isn’t  
must not - mustn’t  
should not = shouldn’t  
was not = wasn’t  
were not = weren’t  
will not — won’t  
would not = wouldn’t

(d) I almost never go there.  
I have hardly ever gone there.
(e) There’s no chalk in the drawer.

In addition to not, the following are negative adverbs:  
never, rarely, seldom  
hardly (ever), scarcely (ever), barely (ever)

No also expresses a negative idea.

COMPARE: NOT VS. NO

(f) I do not have any money.  
No is used to make a verb negative, as in (f).
(g) I have no money.  
No is used as an adjective in front of a noun (e.g., money), as in (g).  
Note: (f) and (g) have the same meaning.

*Sometimes in spoken English you will hear "ain’t." It means "am not," "isn’t," or "aren’t." Ain’t is not considered proper English, but many people use ain’t regularly, and it is also frequently used for humor.

☐ EXERCISE 18. Using NOT and NO. (Chart D-1)

Directions: Complete the sentences with not or no.

1. There are ______ mountains in Iowa. You will ______ see any mountains in Iowa.
2. Fish have ______ eyelids. They are ______ able to shut their eyes, and although they rest, they do ______ actually go to sleep in the same way mammals do.
3. Automobiles are permitted in the park on Sundays.
4. I can do it by myself. I need ______ help.
5. The operation was ______ successful. The patient did ______ survive.
6. When I became ill, I had ______ choice but to cancel my trip.
7. The opera Rigoletto was ______ composed by Mozart; it was composed by Verdi.
8. I have ______ patience with cheaters.
9. Ask me ______ questions, and I'll tell you ______ lies.
10. You should ______ ask people embarrassing questions about their personal lives.
11. "Colour" is spelled with a "u" in British English, but there is ______ “u” in the American English spelling ("color").
12. I excitedly reeled in my fishing line, but the big fish I had expected to find did ______ appear. Instead, I pulled up an old rubber boot.
D-2 AVOIDING DOUBLE NEGATIVES

(a) INCORRECT: I don't have no money.
(b) CORRECT: I don't have any money.
CORRECT: I have no money.

(a) is an example of a "double negative," i.e., a confusing and grammatically incorrect sentence that contains two negatives in the same clause. One clause should contain only one negative.*

*NOTE: Negatives in two different clauses in the same sentence cause no problems; for example:
A person who doesn't have love can't be truly happy.
I don't know why he isn't here.

□ EXERCISE 19. Error analysis: double negatives. (Chart D-2)
Directions: Correct the sentences, all of which contain double negatives.
1. I don't need no help.  > I don't need any help.  OR  I need no help.
2. I didn't see nobody.
3. I can't never understand him.
4. He doesn't like neither coffee nor tea.
5. I didn't do nothing.
6. I can't hardly hear the radio. Would you please turn it up?
7. The beach was deserted. We couldn't see nothing but sand.
8. Methods of horse training haven't barely changed at all in the last eight centuries.

D-3 BEGINNING A SENTENCE WITH A NEGATIVE WORD

(a) Never will I do that again!
(b) Rarely have I eaten better food.
(c) Hardly ever does he come to class on time.

When a negative word begins a sentence, the subject and verb are inverted (i.e., question word order is used).*

*Beginning a sentence with a negative word is relatively uncommon in everyday usage, but is used when the speaker/writer wishes to emphasize the negative element of the sentence and be expressive.

□ EXERCISE 20. Negative words. (Chart D-3)
Directions: Change each sentence so that it begins with a negative word.
1. We rarely go to movies.  > Rarely do we go to movies.
2. I seldom sleep past seven o'clock.
3. I hardly ever agree with her.
4. I will never forget the wonderful people I have met here.
5. I have never known Rosa to be dishonest.
6. The mail scarcely ever arrives before noon.
### UNIT E: Preposition Combinations

#### E PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS WITH ADJECTIVES AND VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>be absent from</th>
<th>be done with</th>
<th>be opposed to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
<td>dream of, about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be dressed in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>be engaged in, to</td>
<td>be jealous of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>be envious of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>be equipped with</td>
<td>be excited about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>escape from</td>
<td>be excited about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be excited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be made of, from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be married to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>be familiar with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>feel like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fight for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be friendly to, with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be frightened of, by</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be furnished with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>be faithful to</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>be fond of</td>
<td>forget about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>forgive for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>grateful to, for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>guilty of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>innocent of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>jealous of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>keep from</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*Supplementary Grammar Units A21*
EXERCISE 21. Prepositions. (Chart E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions.

1. Do you believe ________ ghosts?
2. Anthony is engaged ________ my cousin.
4. I can't distinguish one twin ________ the other.
5. Did you forgive him ________ lying to you?
6. Children rely ________ their parents for food and shelter.
7. Tim wore sunglasses to protect his eyes ________ the sun.
8. Chris excels ________ sports.
9. Andrea contributed her ideas ________ the discussion.
10. I hope you succeed ________ your new job.
11. I'm very fond ________ their children.
12. The firefighters rescued many people ________ the burning building.
14. Charles doesn't seem to care ________ his bad grades.
15. Sometimes Bobby seems to be jealous ________ his brother.

EXERCISE 22. Prepositions. (Chart E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions.

1. Max is known ________ his honesty.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Jones have always been faithful ________ each other.
3. Do you promise to come? I'm counting ________ you to be here.
4. Trucks are prohibited ________ using residential streets.
5. The little girl is afraid ________ an imaginary bear that lives in her closet.
6. Do you take good care ________ your health?
7. I'm worried ________ this problem.
8. I don't agree ________ you.
9. We decided ________ eight o'clock as the time we should meet.
10. Who did you vote ________ in the last election?
11. How many students were absent ________ class yesterday?
12. It is important to be polite ________ other people.
13. The farmers are hoping ________ rain.
14. Jason was late because he wasn’t aware ________ the time.
15. We will ________ our rights.

☐ EXERCISE 23. Prepositions. (Chart E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions.

1. I am not familiar ________ that author’s works.
2. He doesn’t approve ________ smoking.
3. I subscribe ________ several magazines.
5. I became uncomfortable because she was staring ________ me.
6. She hid the candy ________ the children.
7. He never argues ________ his wife.
8. I arrived ________ this country two weeks ago.
9. We arrived ________ the airport ten minutes late.
10. Has Mary recovered ________ her illness?
11. I pray ________ peace.
12. I am envious ________ people who can speak three or four languages fluently.
13. Why are you angry ________ me? Did I do something wrong?
14. They are very patient ________ their children.
15. The students responded ________ the questions.

☐ EXERCISE 24. Prepositions. (Chart E)

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions.

1. I am grateful ________ you ________ your assistance.
2. The criminal escaped ________ prison.
3. Elizabeth is not content ________ the progress she is making.
4. Paul’s comments were not relevant ________ the topic under discussion.
5. Have you decided ________ a date for your wedding yet?
6. My boots are made ________ leather.
7. I’m depending ________ you to finish this work for me.
8. Patricia applied ________ admission ________ the university.
9. Daniel dreamed ________ some of his childhood friends last night.
10. Mr. Miller dreams ________ owning his own business someday.
11. The accused woman was innocent ________ the crime with which she was charged.
12. Ms. Sanders is friendly ___________ everyone.
13. Benjamin was proud ___________ himself for winning the prize.
14. The secretary provided me ___________ a great deal of information.
15. Ivan compared the wedding customs in his country ___________ those in the United States.

UNIT F: Connectives to Give Examples and to Continue an Idea

F-1 CONNECTIVES TO GIVE EXAMPLES

(a) There are many interesting places to visit in the city. **For example,** the botanical garden has numerous displays of plants from all over the world.
(b) There are many interesting places to visit in the city. The art museum, **for instance,** has an excellent collection of modern paintings.
(c) There are many interesting places to visit in the city, **e.g.,** the botanical garden and the art museum.
(d) There are many interesting places to visit in the city, **for example,** the botanical garden or the art museum.
(e) I prefer to wear casual clothes, **such as** jeans and a sweatshirt.
(f) Some countries, **such as** Brazil and Canada, are big.
(g) Countries **such as** Brazil and Canada are big.
(h) **Such** countries as Brazil and Canada are big.

*Punctuation note: Periods are used with *e.g.* in American English. Periods are generally not used with *eg* in British English.

**Punctuation note:
(1) When the "such as" phrase can be omitted without substantially changing the meaning of the sentence, commas are used.  
*Example:* Some words, such as *know* and *see*, are verbs.  
(Commas are used.)
(2) No commas are used when the "such as" phrase gives essential information about the noun to which it refers.  
*Example:* Words such as *know* and *see* are verbs.  
(No commas are used.)

EXERCISE 25. Giving examples. (Chart F-1)

Directions: Add examples to the given sentences.

1. There are many simple kinds of exercise you could include in your life to improve your health. For example . . .
   - > For example, you could walk briskly for half an hour three times a week.
2. Some rock stars have international fame, for example, . . .
3. The names of some newspapers are internationally known, e.g., . . .
4. Some English words have the same pronunciation but different spelling, e.g., . . .
5. Many English words have more than one meaning. For example, . . .
6. If you are working too hard and not making time for pleasurable activities in your life, you should consciously schedule in relaxation time. For example, . . .
7. Some natural phenomena, such as spring showers or moonlight, do not endanger human life. Other natural phenomena, however, have the potential to be life-threatening to humans, for example, . . .

**EXERCISE 26. Using SUCH AS. (Chart F-1)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with your own words. Use such as.

1. You need a hobby. There are many hobbies you might enjoy, **such as** _ceramics or stamp collecting._

2. There are certain products that almost everyone buys regularly, _

3. You should buy a small, economical car, _

4. Medical science has made many advances, yet there are still serious diseases that have not been conquered, _

5. Some countries, _and_ _are rich in oil.__

6. I enjoy such sports _

7. Such inventions _have contributed greatly to the progress of civilization. However, other inventions, _have threatened human existence._

8. There are certain times when I wish to be alone, _or when _

9. Some subjects have always been easy and enjoyable for me, _However, other subjects, _

10. In certain situations, _when __or when _, my English still gives me a little trouble._

11. Numbers _are odd numbers, whereas numbers _

12. Some languages, _and_, are closely related to English, while others, _and_, are not.
(a) The city provides many cultural opportunities. It has an excellent art museum. 

Moreover, furthermore, and in addition mean "also." They are transitions. (See Chart 19-3, p. 389.)

Moreover, furthermore, and in addition mean "also." They are transitions. (See Chart 19-3, p. 389.)

(b) The city provides many cultural opportunities. 

In addition to an excellent art museum, it has a fine symphony orchestra.

In addition to and besides are used as prepositions. They are followed by an object (museum), not a clause.

*COMPARE: Besides means "in addition to." Beside means "next to"; e.g., I sat beside my friend.

- EXERCISE 27. Connectives to continue the same idea. (Chart F-2)

Directions: Combine the ideas in these sentences by using moreover, furthermore, in addition (to), besides, or also where appropriate.

1. I like to read that newspaper. One reason is that the news is always reported accurately. It has interesting special features.
2. There are many ways you can work on improving your English outside of class. For example, you should speak English as much as possible, even when you are speaking with friends who speak your native language. You should read as many magazines in English as you have time for. Watching television can be helpful.
3. Along with the increase in population in the city, there has been an increase in the rate of crime. A housing shortage has developed. There are so many automobiles in the city that the expressways are almost always jammed with cars, regardless of the time of day.
4. Good health is perhaps one's most valuable asset. To maintain good health, it is important to eat a balanced diet. The body needs a regular supply of vitamins, minerals, protein, carbohydrates, and other nutrients. Physical exercise is essential. Sleep and rest should not be neglected.

- UNIT G: Verb Form Review Exercises

- EXERCISE 28. General review of verb forms. (Chapters 1 → 20)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Some of the students (speak, never) ________________________________________ English before they came here last fall.
2. I wish I (come, not) ___________________________________________ here last year.
3. It is essential that you (be) ___________________________________________ here tomorrow.
4. Had I known Dan wouldn't be here, I (come, not) ____________________________
5. My passport (stamp) ___________________________________________ at the airport when I arrived.
6. My seventy-year-old grandfather, who owns his own business, (continue, probably) ___________________________________________ to work as long as he (live) _____________________.

8. Before (go) ______________ to bed, I have to finish my homework.

9. (Hear) ______________________that story many times before, I got bored when Jim began to tell it again.

10. Do you know that man (sit) ______________ in the brown leather chair?

11. Many of the goods that (produce) ____________________________ since the beginning of the twentieth century are totally machine-made.

12. The instructor said that she (give) ______________ an exam next Friday.

13. I (know) ______________________Beth for six years. When I (meet) ______________ her, she (work) ____________________________ in a law office.

14. If you (be) ______________ here yesterday, you (meet) ______________ my father and mother.

15. This evening the surface of the lake is completely still. It looks as if it (make) ____________________________ of glass.

16. I don’t know why the food service has to be so slow. We (stand) ____________________________ here in the cafeteria line for over half an hour, and there (be) ______________ still a lot of people in front of us.

17. Sue says she can’t come on the picnic with us. I wish she (change) ____________________________ her mind and (decide) ______________ to come with us.

18. My dog turned her head toward me and looked at me quizzically, almost as if she (understand) ____________________________ what I said.

19. (Be) ______________ an excellent researcher, Dr. Barnes (respect) ____________________________ by the entire faculty.

20. Without the sun, life as we know it (exist, not) _____________________________.

□ EXERCISE 29. General review of verb forms. (Chapters 1 → 20)
Directions: Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Since (come) ____________________________ to the United States six months ago, Maria (learn) ____________________________ a lot of English.

2. Mrs. McKay (give, already) ____________________________ birth to the child by the time her husband arrived at the hospital.

3. I recommended that he (apply) ____________________________ to at least three universities.
4. Thank you for your help. I never (be) __________________able to finish this work without it.

5. Peggy told me she (be) __________________here at six tomorrow.

6. (Sit) __________________on a park bench and (watch) __________________the brightly colored leaves fall gently to the ground, he felt at peace with the world.

7. Why didn't you tell me about this before? I certainly wish I (inform) __________________earlier.

8. The large dormitory (destroy, completely) __________________by fire last week. Since all of the students (go) __________________home for the holidays, there was no loss of life.

9. James blushed when his friend asked him an (embarrass) __________________question.

10. Anna is grown up now. You shouldn't speak to her as if she (be) __________________a child.

11. I asked all of the people (invite) __________________to the party to RSVP.

12. When the (puzzle) __________________student could not figure out the answer to the (puzzle) __________________problem, she demanded that I (give) __________________her the correct answer, but I insisted that she (figure) __________________it out for herself.

13. Ever since I can remember, mathematics (be) __________________my favorite subject.

14. The people (work) __________________to solve the problems of urban poverty are hopeful that many of these problems (solve) __________________within the next ten years.

15. It's a funny story. I'll tell you the details when I (call) __________________you tomorrow.

EXERCISE 30. General review of verb forms. (Chapters 1 → 20)

Directions: This exercise is based on compositions written by students who were members of a multicultural class. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses.

to school with people from various parts of the world and with people from different cultures. I like to share some of my experiences and thoughts with you.

When I first arrived, I knew no one and I didn't know all of my fineers what I was trying to say in English. All of the international students were in the same situation. When we couldn't find the right word, we communicated our meaning. I knew some common phrases, such as "How are you?", "Fine, thank you, and you?" and "What country are you from?", enough in the beginning for us to make friends with each other. The TV room in the dormitory became our common meeting place every evening after dinner. I hope our English, many of us tried to watch television and understand what the people say on the screen, but for the most part their words were just a strange mumble to us. After a while, and a little sad, we slowly began to disappear to our separate rooms. I thought that all of us experienced some homesickness. However, despite my loneliness, I had a good feeling within myself because I wanted to do for many years: live in a foreign country.

After a few days, classes began and we knew quite what the first day of class, I was a bit nervous, but also the right building and the
right room, I walked in and an empty seat. I an empty seat. I

myself to the person next to me, and we sat to each other for a few minutes. Since we from different countries, we

in English. At first, I was afraid that the other student

what I , but I when she to my questions easily. Together we the first steps toward a friendship.

As the semester , I out more and more about my fellow students. Students from some countries were reticent and shy in class.

They almost never questions and very softly.

Others of different nationalities just the opposite: they spoke in booming voices and never questions, and sometimes they the teacher. I in a classroom with such a mixture of cultures before. I learned by anything my classmates might say or do. The time spent our ideas with each other and about each other's customs and beliefs valuable and fun. As we progressed in our English, we slowly learned about each other, too.

Now, several months after my arrival in the United States, I able to understand not only some English but also something about different cultures. If I here, I able to attain these insights into other cultures. I wish everyone in the world the same experience.

Perhaps if all the people in the world more about cultures different from their own and the opportunity friends with people from different countries, peace secure.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index Entry</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Able to, 198, 200</td>
<td>The numbers following the words listed in the index refer to page numbers in the main text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be, A6</td>
<td>The index numbers preceded by the letter &quot;A&quot; (e.g., A6) refer to pages in the Appendix, which is found in the last part of the text. The main text ends on page 437, and the appendix immediately follows. Page 438 is followed by page A1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous tenses, 3fn.</td>
<td>Information given in the footnotes to charts and exercises is noted by the page number plus the abbreviation fn.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**A**

A/an, 107, 112, 115
Able to, 198, 200
Accustomed to, 298
A couple of, 119
Active verbs, 208, 235
Adjective(s), defined, A4
   following being (e.g., being foolish), 17
   followed by infinitive (e.g., happy to meet), 328
   with linking verbs (e.g., taste good), A6
   with get (e.g., get hungry), A6
   nouns used as (e.g., vegetable soup), 105
   used as nouns (e.g., the poor), 92
   participial (e.g., amusing/amused), 235
   passive verbs (stative), used as, 225
   possessive (my, your, etc.), 132
   preposition combinations with, A21
Adjective clauses, defined, 267
   expressions of quantity in, 285
   object pronouns (whom, which, that), 132, 270
   used to modify pronouns, 280
   with noun + of which, 286
   punctuation of, 281
   reduction to adjective phrases, 290

Adverb(s), defined, A4
   conjunctive (e.g., therefore), 387
   mid-sentence, A4
   placement in future perfect, 62fn, A3
Adverb clauses, defined, 70
   cause and effect (because, etc.), 362, 376
   condition (if, unless, etc.), 367, 369–371, 401
   contrast (although, etc.), 395
   direct contrast (whereas, while), 366
   purpose (so that), 393
   punctuation of, 70, 359, 389
   reduction to modifying phrases, 374-376, 380
   summary (cause and effect, contrast, condition), 402
   time (after, before, etc.), 55, 70, 375
   words used to introduce, 363

A few, 123
Affirmative, A15
After, 45, 72
A great deal of, 119, 125
Agreement:
pronoun with noun, 134-136
subject-verb, 88-90, 92
verb with paired conjunctions, 353
Ain't, A18
A little, 123
All of, 126
A lot of, 107
Although, 395
Always, 30
progressive verbs with, 30
Am, is, are being + adjective, 17
And, but, or, nor, 348, 355
Another, 142
Antecedent, 132
Any, 119, A20
A number of, 89.
Apostrophe:
in contractions with not, A18
in contractions with pronouns and nouns, 132
possessive nouns, 103
Appositives (SEE Adjective phrases)
Articles, 112, 115
As, 72
As if/asthough, 430
As so long as, 72
As soon as, 72
Auxiliary verbs (SEE Be; Contractions of verbs;
Do/does/did; Have/has/had; Modal
auxiliaries; Questions)
B
Be, A6
auxiliary, 3, 208
Be able to, 198, 200
Be accustomed to, 298
Be going to, 51–52, 200
Be supposed to, 166, 199
Be used to, 298
Because, 362
Because of, 385
Before, 45, 72
Being + adjective, 17
Beside/besides, A26
Both . . . and, 353

Both (of), 126
But, 348, 395, 398
By:
with passive (the "by phrase"), 211, 225
with reflexive pronouns, 138
By the time, 72
C
Can, 200
ability/possibility, 193
degree of certainty, 176, 178, 181
permission, 152
in polite requests, 152
Causative verbs (make, have, get), 339
Clauses, defined, 239, 267 (SEE ALSO Adjective
clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Collective nouns, 136
Commands (SEE Imperative sentences)
Commas:
in contractions with adjective clauses, 281
in contractions with adjective phrases, 290
in contractions with adverb clauses, 70, 359, 389
in combining independent clauses, 355
in parallel structure, 287
with transitions, 389
Complex sentences (SEE Adjective clauses;
Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Compound sentences, 355
Conditional sentences, 412–415, 418, 423, 425
Conjunctions:
combining independent clauses with, 348, 355
coordinating, 348, 355
paired (correlative), 353
punctuation with, 389
subordinating, 359
Conjunctive adverb, 387 (SEE ALSO Transitions)
Consequently, 387
Continuous tense, 3 fn.
Contractions of verbs:
 auxiliaries with not, A18
 auxiliaries with pronouns and nouns, A17
Contrary-to-fact (SEE Conditional sentences)
Coordinating conjunctions, 348, 355
Correlative conjunctions, 353 fn.
Could, 200
degree of certainty, 176, 178, 181, 184
past ability, 193
in polite requests, 152
For example (e.g.), A24
Forget/remember, 311
Frequency adverbs, A4
Full stop, 355fn.
Furthermore, A26
Future time, 51-62
  using modals to express, 199-200
  using present tenses to express, 57
  expressing in time clauses, 55
  (SEE ALSO Be going to; Verb tenses; Will)

G
Generic noun, 112, 134
Gerunds, defined, 297
  following need, 333
  as objects of prepositions, 298
  passive/past, 331
  possessive modifier with, 334
  preposition combinations followed by, 299
  as subjects, 323
  verbs followed by, 302, 311
  list, 318-319
Get:
  causative (e.g., get them to do it), 339
  linking (e.g., get hungry), A6
  passive (e.g., get worried), 232
Go + gerund (e.g., go shopping), 303
Going to, 51-52, 55, 60, 200
Good/well, A5fn.

H
Habitual past, 195, 200
Had better, 160, 199
Had to, 157
Have/has/had:
  auxiliary, 4-5
  causative, 339
  contracted, 46fn., A17–A18
  as main verb, use of do with:
    in negative, 18fn.
    in questions, A11fn.
    in tag questions, A16fn.
Have got, 40fn.
Have got to, 157, 199
Have to:
  lack of necessity, 158
  necessity, 157
  phrasal modal, 198, 199

INDEX 3
How, A9
However:
- everyword, 265
  transition, 395, 398
Hyphen, 105
I
If, 245, 248 (SEE ALSO Adverb clauses, conditions; Conditional sentences; Noun clauses)
If-clauses, 367
Imperative sentences, 254
Impersonal pronouns, 140, 212fn.
In addition (to), A26
In the event that, 369
Indefinite nouns, articles with, 112, 115
Indefinite pronouns, 134
modified by adjective clauses, 280
Independent clauses, defined, 239, 267
  combining with conjunctions, 348, 355
Indirect object, as passive subject, 213
Indirect speech, 251fn.
Infinitives, defined, 307
  following adjectives, 328
  following be, 166, 199-200
  with causative get, 339
  with it, 323
  with modal auxiliaries, 151
  following need, 333
  negative form, 307
  past, passive, 331
  purpose (in order to), 326
  with question words, 247
  in reported speech, 254fn.
  as subjects, 323
  with tool enough, 330
  verbs followed by, 307, 311
  list, 318
Information questions, A8–A10
-ing forms:
go + -ing, 303
  special expressions followed by (e.g., have fun doing), 304
spelling, 10
upon + -ing, 380
verbs of perception + -ing (e.g., see her walking), 336
(SEE ALSO Gerunds; Present participles)
In order that, 393fn.
In order to, 302, 326, 393
In spite of, 395
In the event that, 369
Intransitive verbs, defined, A1
  not used in passive, 208
Inverted commas, 251fn.
Inverted word order:
  after negative, A20
  after only if, 371
Irregular plural nouns, 100
Irregular verbs, 19
  list, 22.
It: with infinitives, 323
  its vs. it's, 132
  with noun clauses, 248
  personal pronouns, 132
L
Lay, lie, 26
Let + simple form, 338
Let's, 169
Like, 430
Linking verbs, A6
(A) Little/a few, 123
Lots of, 119, 125.
-Ly, adverb form, A4
M
Main clauses (SEE Independent clauses)
Make, causative (e.g., make them do it), 339
Many/much, 107
May, 199
  degree of certainty, 176, 178, 181, 184
  permission, 152
  in polite requests, 152
Maybe vs. may be, 176fn.
Mid-sentence adverbs, A4
Might, 199
  degree of certainty, 176, 178, 181, 184
  in polite requests, 152
  in reported speech, 254
Modal auxiliaries, defined, 151
  passive, 218
  progressive, 188
  in reported speech, 254
  summary chart, 199
Modify, defined, A4
O

Objects, defined, A1

of a preposition, 298

of a verb, direct/indirect, 213

Of, in expressions, direct/indirect, 213

Once, 72

One, impersonal pronoun, 140

One of (+ plural noun), 89, 128

Only if, 371

On the other hand, 398

Or, 348

Or else, 401

Other, forms of, 142, 145

Otherwise, 401

Ought to, 160, 184, 199

Paired conjunctions (e.g., both . . . and), 353

Parallel structure, 348

Participial adjectives (e.g., confusing vs. confused), 235

Participial phrases (SEE Modifying phrases)

Participles (SEE Modifying phrases; Past participle; Present participle)

Passive, form, 208

"by phrase," 211

with causative verbs (e.g., have it done), 339

with get (e.g., get worried), 232

with gerunds (e.g., being done), 331

infinitives (e.g., to be done), 331

modal auxiliaries, 218

participial adjective (e.g., amused children), 235

stative (e.g., the door is locked), 225

Past habit, 195

Past participle, 19

as adjective (e.g., amused children), 235

irregular, 19

in passive, 208, 218, 232

in verb tenses, 4

(SEE ALSO -Ed forms)

Past time (SEE Verb tenses)

Perfect/perfect progressive verbs, 4-5, 36

(SEE ALSO Verb tenses)

Periods, 355

Personal pronouns, 132

agreement with nouns, 134, 136

Phrasal modals, defined, 151
Phrases, defined, 239fn.
  prepositional, A3
  reduction of adjective clauses, 290
  reduction of adverb clauses, 374–376, 380
  reduction of noun clauses, 254
Place expressions with progressive verbs, 31
**Plenty of**, 119
Polite requests, 152–153
Possessive:
  in adjective clauses (whose), 274, A10
  with gerunds, 334
  nouns (e.g., John's book), 103
  pronouns/adjectives (mine, my, etc.), 132, 274
  in questions (whose), A10
**Prefer**, 31 fn
Preposition(s):
  combinations with adjectives and verbs, A21
  combinations followed by gerunds, 299
  list, A3
  following stative passive verbs, 228
Prepositional phrases, A3
Present participle, 19
  as adjective (e.g., amusing story), 235
  vs. gerund, 297fn.
  in reduction of adjective clauses, 290
  in reduction of adverb clauses, 375
  special expressions followed by (e.g., have fun doing), 304
  spelling of -ing forms, 10
  with verbs of perception (e.g., watch someone doing), 336
  in verb tenses, 3, 5
Present time (SEE Verb tenses)
Principle parts of verbs, 19
Progressive verbs, 3, 13, 31 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses)
  vs. stative, 15
Pronouns:
  impersonal, 140, 212fn.
  indefinite, 134, 280
  object, 132, 270
  personal, 132
    agreement with nouns, 134, 136
    possessive, 132, 274
    reflexive, 138
    relative (SEE Adjective clauses)
    subject, 31fn., 132, 268
Pronunciation:
  -ed, 20
  -s/-es, 84

---

Punctuation:
  adjective clauses, 281
  adjective phrases, 290
  adverb clauses, 70, 359, 389
  independent clauses, 355
  parallel structure, 287
  quoted speech, 251
  transitions, 387, 389
  (SEE ALSO Apostrophe; Commas; Hyphens; Periods; Quotation marks; Semicolon)

**Q**
Quantity (SEE Expressions of quantity)
Questions:
  information, A8–A10
  negative, A13
  tag, A15, A16fn.
  word order in, A8
  yes/no, A8, A12
Question words:
  with infinitives, 247
  in noun clauses, 240
  in questions, A9–A10
Quotation marks, 251
Quoted speech, 251

**R**
**Raise/rise**, 26
Reduction:
  of adjective clauses, 290
  of adverb clauses, 374–376, 380
  of noun clauses, 254
Reflexive pronouns, 138
Regular plural nouns, 100
Regular verbs, 19
Relative clauses, 267 (SEE ALSO Adjective clauses)
Relative pronouns, 267
**Remember/forget**, 311
Repeated action in the past (would, used to), 195
Reported speech, 254
Restrictive/nonrestrictive, 28\fn.
Run-on sentence, 355

**S**
-Sl-es, 84, 88, 100, 103, 107
-Self-selves, 138
Semicolon, 389fn.

Sentences:
affirmative, A18
complex (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
compound (SEE Conjunctions, combining independent clauses with)
conditional, 412-415, 418, 423, 425
inverted word order in, 424
imperative, 254
interrogative (SEE Questions)
negative, A20
simple (SEE Subjects, verbs, objects)
Sequence of tenses in noun clauses, 254
Set, sit, 26
Several, 119, 125
Shall, 200
future, 51fn.
for suggestions, 169
Should, 199
advisability, 160
in conditional sentences, 414
degree of certainty, 184
past form, 163
in reported speech, 254
for suggestions, 171
Simple form of a verb, 19
with causative verbs, 339
in imperative sentences, 254
following let and help, 338
with modal auxiliaries, 151
subjunctive, 263
with verbs of perception, 336
Simple tenses, 2, 13, 27 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses)
Since:
meaning because, 362
duration of time, 72
Since vs. for, 36
Singular/plural (SEE Agreement; Count/noncount nouns; Nouns, regular and irregular plurals; Nouns, used as adjectives; -S/-es)
So, conjunction, 355
So long as, 72
Some, 107, 112
So that, 393
So ... that/such ... that, 391
Spelling:
-ed/-ing, 10
-s/-es, 84
Stative passive, 225
followed by prepositions, 228
Stative verbs, 15
Subjects, verbs, objects, A1
Subject-verb agreement, 88-90, 92
Subjunctive, 263
Subordinate clauses (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Subordinating conjunctions, 359fn.
Such as, A24
Such ... that, 391
Superlative, 126fn.
Supposed to, 166, 199

T
Tag questions, A15, A16fn.
in imperative sentences, 254
Tenses (SEE Verb tenses)
Than, 31fn.
That:
in adjective clauses, 268, 270
in noun clauses, 248
The, 112, 115
There + be, 90
Therefore, 387
They, impersonal pronoun, 140
Though, 395
Till, 72
Time clauses, 70, 375
future, tense use in, 55
Too, 330
Transitions, 387, 389, A26
Transitive/intransitive, defined, A1
in passive, 208
troublesome (e.g., lay/lie), 26
Try, 311

U
Uncountable nouns (SEE Noncount nouns)
Unless, 370
Until, 72
Upon + -ing, 380
Used to, 195, 200

V
Verbs, defined, A1
Verbals (SEE Gerunds; Infinitives, verbs followed by)
Verb tenses:
continuous, 3fn.
future perfect, 4, 62
future perfect progressive, 5, 62
future progressive, 3, 60
overview, 1
in passive, 208, 211, 218, 225, 228, 232
past perfect, 4, 45
past perfect progressive, 5, 47
past progressive, 3, 28
present perfect, 4, 36
present perfect progressive, 5, 42
present progressive, 3, 13, 57
sequence of in noun clauses, 254
simple future, 2
simple past, 2, 19, 27
simple present, 2, 13, 57
summary, 6-7
Very/too, 330
Voiced and voiceless sounds, 20

W
Was/were in conditional sentences, 415
Well, adjective and adverb, A5fn.
What, A10
What + a form of do, A10
Whatkindof, A10
When, 27, 72, 277, A9
Whenever, 72
Where, 277, A9
Whereas, 366, 398

Whether, 245
Whether or not, 368
Which, 268, 270, 286, A10
While, 72, 366, 398
Why, A9
Will, 52, 199
conditional, 414
degree of certainty, 184
future, 51
in polite requests, 152
Who/whom, 268, 270, A10
Whose, 274, A10
Why don't, 169
Wish, 432, 434
Would, 200
in conditional sentences, 413
in polite requests, 152
repeated action in the past, 195
in reported speech, 254
with wish, 434
Would rather, 197
Would you mind, 153

Y
-Y, final, spelling:
with -ed, -ing, 10
with -es/-es, 84
Yes/no questions, A8, A12
Yet, conjunction, 355, 395
You, impersonal pronoun, 140